



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

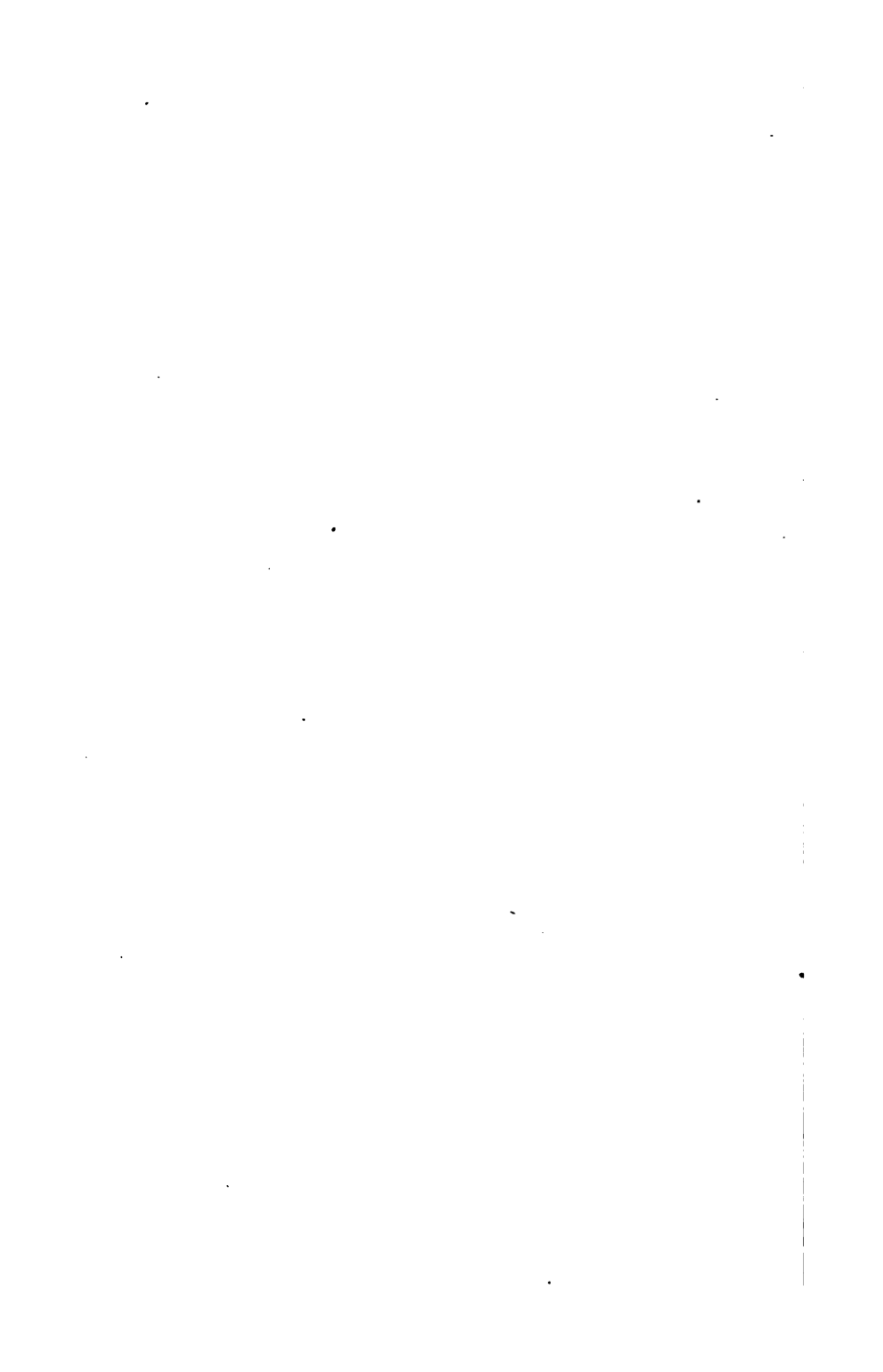
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



49.1094







THE
ELEMENTS
OF
LATIN GRAMMAR,
FOR THE
USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY RICHARD HILEY,

AUTHOR OF "AN ENGLISH GRAMMAR,"
ETC. ETC.

THIRD EDITION, CONSIDERABLY IMPROVED.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,
PATERNOSTER-ROW.
1849.



The late Rev. JAMES TATE, Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London, in a letter to the Author at the commencement of his labours, states, " I consider the common *Eton Latin Grammar* (notwithstanding some recent improvements) *a disgrace to our National Literature*. Hence, the necessity of another written *de novo*."

The present Grammar, which is written in English, embraces all that is really valuable in the Eton, with a selection from Zumpt, Kühner, Krebs, Scheller, Crombie, Ruddiman, and Adam, of the most important rules and observations which may be required by advanced students. These have been condensed, illustrated, and arranged in such a manner, as materially to assist the memory in the acquisition and permanent retention of them.

The late learned Dr. SAMUEL BUTLER, formerly Head Master of Shrewsbury Grammar School, and afterwards Lord Bishop of Lichfield and Coventry, — to whom the first edition of this Grammar was, by permission, dedicated, — was pleased to honour the work by the following opinion : —

" I think your book, wherever I have examined it, done with *care and ability* ; it is short, clear, and well selected, and likely to be *very* useful."

Dr. ALEXANDER CROMBIE, the eminent author of the "*Gymnasium*," passes an equally flattering opinion : —

" I have read your volume," says the Doctor, " and shall have no hesitation in recommending it as an excellent compendium of the principles of Latin Grammar. It contains much useful matter, well arranged, and comprised in a small compass. It does equal credit to your industry and your judgment."

The Head Master of the Camberwell Collegiate School, London, expresses himself to the same effect : —

" It is only recently that I have become acquainted with your Latin Grammar ; and after a careful comparison of its contents and system of arrangement with those of other Latin Grammars, and particularly of that which had hitherto been used in this institution, I am fully convinced of its superiority as a Manual for Boys, and have accordingly introduced it into this school. I have deemed it right to give you this information as a slight tribute due to your intelligence and industry, as well as to the very considerable service which you have thereby rendered to the profession. I have likewise adopted your English Grammar and Exercises for my classes."



LONDON :
SPOTTISWOODE AND SHAW,
New-street-Square.

ADVERTISEMENT
TO
THE THIRD EDITION.

IN this Third Edition the Author has carefully revised the whole, and introduced such additional remarks and illustrations as experience suggested would be advantageous to the Classical Student in the advanced stages of his scholastic career.

Leeds, November, 1848.

PREFACE

TO

THE SECOND EDITION.

THE present edition has undergone a most careful revision ; several portions, in which the Rules and Definitions appeared to admit either a more natural arrangement, or a greater compactness and perspicuity of expression, have been entirely rewritten. Much additional matter has likewise been incorporated, and the few typographical errors existing in the former edition have been rectified. The work has now assumed its *permanent* form, and may, with propriety, be said to possess the following characteristics.

1. *Comprehensiveness of Plan.*—Numerous Rules, essentially necessary for understanding and correctly rendering even the easier Classics, are entirely omitted in the common Latin Grammars. Such, for instance, are the proper use of Moods and Tenses, the proper Connexion of Tenses, Arrangement of Words, &c. A knowledge of these, if acquired at all, is acquired under great disadvantages. The faithful Tutor, therefore, will be most judiciously consulting the real and solid improvement of his pupila, by using a comprehensive digest of the leading principles of Latin composition.

2. *A lucid and natural Arrangement.*—In the adjustment of the different portions of the work, great attention has been paid to what appeared the *natural* development of each subject, so that the general principle should form the prominent parent of all its branches. It is scarcely possible to overrate the advantages arising from a felicitous arrangement, as the mind, by this means, is materially assisted in the acquisition and application of knowledge. Nor are these advantages confined to mere boyhood ; but, in maturer age, the additional Rules which may be suggested in the course of reading, need not be evanescent, nor allowed to bewilder by their multiplicity, but may be classified according to their specific nature, and amalgamate with preceding stores, ready to be applied as occasion may require.

3. *Perspicuity combined with conciseness of Expression.*—In the enunciation of Grammatical Definitions, some instructors either misapply or lay too much stress on the well-known sentiment of Horace :

“ Quidquid praecipies, esto brevis ; ut cito dicta
Percipiant animi dociles, teneantque fideles.”

However applicable this advice may be to Poetry, it requires considerable modification in a didactic treatise ; for no individual can accurately comprehend what is inadequately expressed. A Definition, to be correct, must be comprehensive ; a Rule, to be useful, must be complete ; otherwise, by labouring to be brief, we may become obscure, — “ Brevis esse laboro, obscurus fio.” In the construction, therefore, of the Rules and Definitions throughout this work, whatever conciseness perspicuity would admit, has been carefully observed. Such portions as required peculiar care in the construction of the sentences were read to several sensible youths, in order that the perspicuity of the sentences might be fully tested.

4. *Accuracy as to the Knowledge communicated.* — In adopting any Rule, the authority on which it rests has been carefully weighed. In determining in cases of difficulty, the author was not entirely guided by the opinions of even the most distinguished Philologists, but sedulously consulted the original writers themselves, and deduced such conclusions as a careful comparison seemed to suggest. This process frequently entailed a wearisome toil ; but, as truth and utility were his object, he felt bound to persevere. Instances of this careful scrutiny will appear in the portion on the Perfects and Supines. Our common Grammars, without the slightest comment, frequently assign to Verbs, Perfects and Supines which either do not exist, or are used on very doubtful authority.

5. *The work is printed on beautiful paper, and in two different types,*—the larger intended to be faithfully committed to memory, and the smaller to be carefully read, and rendered familiar to the mind. The illustrations and additional facts given in the smaller type, instead of being thrown, as is too commonly the case, to the foot of the page, are here placed under their appropriate heads, that their intimate connexion may be obvious, and the information more easily acquired and retained.

Leeds, July, 1842.

PREFACE

TO

THE FIRST EDITION.

THE object which the Author has had in view, in publishing the present manual, is to furnish the classical student, at a trifling expense, with a good First and Second Latin Grammar.

Instead of considering Grammar, as is too commonly the case, as a mere *necessary evil*—a something to be endured for an ulterior advantage—he has, on the contrary, regarded it as a *positive good*,—the basis of all sound scholarship. In this light it is held by the Germans; and perhaps, to this circumstance alone, is to be attributed their superiority over us in Classical Literature.

True it is, that in several of the most respectable Schools and Academies, the introductory compendium is succeeded by the perusal of some larger work on the subject; but as there seldom exists any connexion between the two, the different Rules are not easily retained and, consequently, time is wasted, and little advantage derived. But with respect to the vast majority of Schools, no other work than the common Grammar is adopted or even known. In such instances, the pupil, in preparing his lessons, has to encounter so many idioms and peculiarities of construction unexplained in his Grammar, that he is rarely enabled, after years of toil, to translate with even tolerable certainty, much less with facility. By an attentive application, however, of the information contained in the present treatise, he will be materially assisted both in translation and composition, as most of the peculiarities of construction occurring in the Authors usually read in Schools are here explained under appropriate heads.

The greatest attention has been paid throughout, both to the Definitions and to the Classification of the different Rules. In the former, brevity has been studiously combined with perspicuity; and in the latter, an arrangement has been adopted which appeared most conducive to facilitate the retention and ready application of the whole.

In closing these remarks, the Author most cheerfully acknowledges great obligations to the works of Kenrick's Zumpt, Walker's Scheller, Crombie, Grant, Valpy, Ruddiman, and Adam.

Leeds, February, 12. 1836.

CONTENTS.

I. ORTHOGRAPHY.

Letters	-	1
Syllables	-	2
Abbreviations	-	3

II. ETYMOLOGY.

Parts of Speech	-	4
Substantives	-	5
First Declension	-	7
Second Declension	-	8
Third Declension	-	9
Fourth Declension	-	14
Fifth Declension	-	14
Greek Nouns	-	15
Irregular Substantives	-	17
Gender of Nouns	-	18
Adjectives	-	22
Numerals	-	25
Comparison	-	26
Pronouns	-	29
Verbs	-	34
Moods and Tenses	-	35
Gerunds, Supines, Participles	-	36
Conjugation of the <i>Verb Sum</i>	-	38
Formation of the Tenses	-	40
Active Voice	-	40
First Conjugation	-	41
Second Conjugation	-	44
Third Conjugation	-	46
Fourth Conjugation	-	48
Passive Voice	-	50
First Conjugation	-	51
Second Conjugation	-	54
Third Conjugation	-	56
Fourth Conjugation	-	58
Capto	-	60
Deponents conjugated	-	61
Formation of the Perfects and Supines	-	63
Deponents	-	78
Redundants	-	79
Irregular Verbs	-	80
Defectives	-	86
Impersonals	-	88

	Page
Adverbs - - - - -	- 89
Prepositions - - - - -	- 89
Conjunctions - - - - -	- 92
Interjections - - - - -	- 93
Table of Concord - - - - -	- 94
Table of Government - - - - -	- 95

III. SYNTAX.

Syntactical Definitions - - - - -	- 98
Nominative and Verb - - - - -	- 100
Substantive and Adjective - - - - -	- 102
Relative and Antecedent - - - - -	- 104
A Noun with a Noun - - - - -	- 106
Pronouns - - - - -	- 107
Interrogative Sentences - - - - -	- 110
Government of Substantives - - - - -	- 112
— Adjectives - - - - -	- 114
Comparison - - - - -	- 118
Government of Verbs: Accusative - - - - -	- 119
— Nominative - - - - -	- 120
— Genitive - - - - -	- 121
— Dative - - - - -	- 124
— Ablative - - - - -	- 127
— Passive, Neuter, and Impersonals - - - - -	- 130
— Participles, Gerunds, Supines - - - - -	- 131
— Time, Space, Measure - - - - -	- 134
— Adverbs - - - - -	- 137
— Prepositions - - - - -	- 138
— Conjunctions and Interjections - - - - -	- 140
Use of the Moods: Indicative - - - - -	- 141
— Imperative - - - - -	- 142
— Potential - - - - -	- 143
— Subjunctive - - - - -	- 143
— Form of Direct and Indirect Discourse - - - - -	- 148
— Government of <i>Qui, quae, quod</i> - - - - -	- 148
— Infinitive Mood - - - - -	- 151
Use of the Tenses - - - - -	- 154
— Succession of Tenses - - - - -	- 158
Arrangement of Words - - - - -	- 159
English Particles - - - - -	- 161
Figures of Speech - - - - -	- 164

IV. PROSODY.

Quantity of First and Middle Syllables - - - - -	- 169
— Derivative Words - - - - -	- 170
— Final Syllables - - - - -	- 172
Scanning - - - - -	- 174
Figures of Scanning - - - - -	- 175
Different Kinds of Verse - - - - -	- 176
Roman Calendar - - - - -	- 179
Parsing Table - - - - -	- 180

L A T I N G R A M M A R .

1. *a.* L A T I N G R A M M A R is a methodical collection of those rules of inflection, construction, and pronunciation of the words in the Latin Language, which were observed by the best Latin authors.

b. It is divided into four Parts ; namely, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

I. ORTHOGRAPHY.

2. *Orthography* treats of letters, syllables, and the just method of spelling words.

3. *a.* *Letters* are *marks* or *characters* used to represent the elementary sounds of a language.

b. The letters of the Latin language, called the Latin *Alphabet*, are *twenty-five* in number ; namely, A, a ; B, b ; C, c ; D, d ; E, e ; F, f ; G, g ; H, h ; I, i ; J, j ; K, k ; L, l ; M, m ; N, n ; O, o ; P, p ; Q, q ; R, r ; S, s ; T, t ; U, u ; V, v ; X, x ; Y, y ; Z, z.

c. In Latin there is no *W*. The smaller *y* occurs only in words derived from the Greek.

J and *v* were written by the Latins with the same letters as the vowels *i* and *u*, namely *I* and *V*, but were distinguished in pronunciation.

4. *a.* Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

b. A *vowel* is a letter that forms a perfect sound when uttered alone ; as, *a, e, o*.

c. A *consonant* makes only an *imperfect* sound of itself ; as, *b, c, d*, which cannot be distinctly articulated unless joined to a vowel.

d. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The consonants are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*.

e. The consonants are sometimes divided into *mutes* and *semivowels*. The *mutes* are those letters which entirely, and at once, obstruct the sound of the vowel, and prevent its continuation; they are *b, d, k, p, q, t*, and *c* and *g* hard.

f. The *semivowels*, or half-vowels, are those letters which do not entirely obstruct the voice, but whose sounds may be continued at pleasure, and thus they partake of the nature of vowels. The semivowels are *f, l, m, n, r, s, v*, and *c* and *g* soft.

g. Four of the semivowels, namely, *l, m, n, r*, are called *liquids*, because, after a *mute*, their sound is in some measure *liquidated* or diminished, so as easily to unite with a *mute* in the same syllable.

h. *J, x, z* are called double letters. *J* stands for *dg*; *X* stands for *cs* or *gs*; and *Z* for *ds* or *is*.

i. *C*, before *e, i*, and *y*, is pronounced like *s*; before *a, o*, and *u*, and before *consonants*, like *k*. *Ch* is pronounced like *k*.

j. *C* was anciently pronounced like *k*, before all vowels.

k. *G*, before *e, i*, and *y*, is pronounced like *j*; before *a, o*, and *u*, and before *consonants*, it is hard, as in the word *gone*.

l. In some Hebrew words, *g* is pronounced hard before *e* and *i*; as in *Gethsémane*, *Gideon*; so also in Greek words, before *y*, as, *Gyges*, *gymnasium*, *gypsum*; and in some few Latin words, as, *gibber*, *gibbus*, &c.

m. *Gw*, before a vowel in the same syllable, is sounded like *gw*, as, *lingua*. *Ph* is sounded like our *f*, as in *pharëtra*; *Rh* as simple *r*, as in *Rhea*; *Qu* like *kw*, as in *aqua*; *Su* before a vowel like *sw*, as in *suadeo*; *sch* like *sk*, as in *schola*. *Ti*, before a vowel, is sounded like *shi*, as in *actio*; but in *ti* long the hissing sound disappears, as in *toïtus*. Also in *ti, sti, xti*, and in Greek words, *ti* is pronounced without the hissing sound; as in *Attius*, *ostium*, *mistio*, *Mitiädes*, *tiära*; and also when it is followed by the termination of the infinitive passive *er*, as in *nütier*.

5. A *diphthong* is the union of two vowels in one sound. There are eight diphthongs; *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ui*.

The diphthongs *ae* and *oe* are generally pronounced as the vowel *e*, and are sometimes joined and written thus: *Æ, œ*; *OE, œ*. *Ui* is sounded like *i* long, as in *huic*; *ei* as a diphthong occurs in only a very few words.

6. a. A *syllable* is one distinct sound, consisting either of one letter, as, *I*; or, of two or more letters pronounced at once, as, *mine, just*.

b. In Latin there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; as, *do-num, Ae-ne-as*. When *u*, with any other vowel, comes after *g, q, or s*, as in *lingua, quis, suades*, the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong. In these instances, *u* has the sound of *w*.

7. *Words* are articulate sounds, used as *signs* to convey our ideas. A word of *one* syllable, is termed a *monosyllable*; a word of *two* syllables, a *dissyllable*; a word of *three* syllables, a *trisyllable*; and a word of *four* or *more* syllables, a *polysyllable*.

8. *Spelling* is the method by which we express a word by its proper letters, and rightly divide it into syllables.

9. RULES FOR THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

Rule 1. A single consonant between two vowels must be joined to the latter, as, *ma-ter*; except the letter *x*, which must be joined to the former vowel, as, *rex-it*.

Rule 2. Two consonants between two vowels must be separated; as, *il-le*, *an-nus*. But those consonants which can together begin a word, may be joined to the latter vowel; as, *tr* in *pa-tris*, *br* in *li-bris*.

Rule 3. Compounded words must be divided so as to keep the elementary parts distinct; as, *inter-eram*, and not *intereram*, because the word is compounded of *inter* and *eram*. When *d* is inserted to prevent an hiatus, it goes with the former vowel; as, *red-eo*, *prod-eo*.

10. *a.* The measure of time in pronouncing a syllable is termed its *quantity*; if the syllable is long, it is marked thus ¯, as in *amāre*; or sometimes with a circumflex accent thus ^, as in *amāris*; if short, it is marked thus ˇ, as in *omnibus*.

b. A syllable having this mark ' over it, shows that it is accented, as, *mi* in *amicus*. Words of two syllables have the *accent* or stress of the voice on the first syllable, as, *do* in *dōnum*; words of three or more syllables, on the last syllable but one when it is long, as, *gis* in *magister*; and on the last but two, when the last but one is short, as, *le* in *légere*.

c. The last syllable but one in a word is called the *penultima*; the last but two is called the *antepenultima*.

The most common Abbreviations.

A. Aulus.	I.O.M. Jovi optimo Maximo.
A.C. Ante Christum.	Kal. Kalendae, Kalendis, &c.
A.D. Anno Domini.	L. Lucius.
a.d. ante diem.	M. Marcus.
A.M. Ante Meridiem; Anno Mundi.	M'. Manius; Mam. Mamercus.
Ap. or App. Appius.	N. Numerius.
A.R.C. Ante Romam conditam.	Non. Nonae, Nonis, &c.
A.U.C. Ab urbe condita.	P. Publius, Pater.
Aug. Augustus.	P.C. Patres Conscripti.
B.V. Bene vale.	P.M. Post Meridiem.
C. Calus.	P.M. Pontifex Maximus.
Cal. Kalendae, Kalendis.	P.R. Populus Romanus.
Cl. Claudius; Cn. Cnaeus or Cneius.	Proc. Proconsul.
Cos. Consul.	qv. or q.v. quod vide.
Coss.* Consulibus, Consules, &c.	Q. Quintus, Quirites, Quaestor.
C.D. Consul designatus.	R.P. Respublica.
D. Decimus, Divus.	S. Sestertium or Sestertius.
D.D.D. Dat, dicat, dedicat.	S. or Sex. Sextus.
Des. Designatus; Dess. Designati.	S. Salūtem, in <i>epistolis</i> .
D.O.M. Deo optimo Maximo.	Sc. Scilicet.
e. g. or ex. gr. exempli gratia.	S.C. Senātus Consultum.
etc. et cetera.	S.P.Q.R. Senātus Populusque Romanus.
F. Filius.	Sp. Spurius.
Id. Idūs, Idibus, &c.	S.V.B.E.E.V. Si vales, bene est, ego valeo.
i.e. id est.	T. Titus, Tullius.
Imp. Imperator; Imp. Imperatores.	Ti. or Tib. Tiberius.

* Doubling the last letter of the contraction denotes the plural; as, *Coss. Imp. Augg.* consules, imperatores, Augusti.

II. ETYMOLOGY.

11. *Etymology* treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

Classification is the *arrangement* of words into their different sorts, called parts of speech.

Inflection is the *change of termination* which words undergo to express their various relations.

Derivation is that part which treats of the *origin* and *primary* signification of words.

12. *a.* There are, in Latin, *eight classes* or *sorts* of words, called parts of speech ; namely,

b. The Substantive or Noun, the Adjective, and the Pronoun, *declined* ; and the Verb, which is *conjugated*.

c. The Adverb, the Preposition, the Conjunction, and the Interjection, *undeclined*.

d. In Latin, there is no *Article*. A word is said to be *declined* when it undergoes any change, particularly in the *end*, or, as it is usually called, the *termination*. Grammatical *Accidents* denote the *changes* made on words. *Accidence* denotes the Rudiments, or the Orthography and Etymology of Grammar.

13. 1. A *Substantive* or *Noun* is the *name* of any person, place, or thing ; as, *puer*, a boy ; *schola*, a school ; *liber*, a book ; *spes*, hope.

2. An *Adjective* is a word which expresses the *quality*, *size*, *shape*, *colour*, *number*, *quantity*, or any other *property* or *accident* of a noun to which it is joined ; as, “a *good* man ;” “a *bad* heart ;” “a *large* hill ;” “a *square* table ;” “the *green* grass ;” “*twenty* horses ;” “*much* noise ;” “*this* hat.”

3. A *Pronoun* is a word used to supply the place of a noun ; as, “When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, *he* turned *his* arms against *his* country.”

4. A *Verb* is a word which *affirms* or expresses the *state*, *action*, or *suffering* of some person or thing ; as, “*I am* ;” “*I teach* ;” “*I am taught*.” It is also used to *command*, *exhort*, *request*, or *ask a question* ; as, “*Be* silent ;” “*Study* diligently ;” “*Spare* me ;” “*Lend* me the book ;” “*Have* you *written* the letter ?”

5. An *Adverb* is a word which qualifies a *verb*, an *adjective*, or another *adverb*, by expressing some circumstance of *time*, *place*, or *manner* respecting it ; as, “He writes *cor-*

rectly ;" "A remarkably diligent boy ;" "He speaks very fluently."

6. A *Preposition* is a word placed before nouns and pronouns to show the *relation* which they bear to each other, or to some verb ; as, "He went *from* London *to* York ;" "She is *above* disguise ;" "They are instructed *by* him."

7. A *Conjunction* joins words and sentences together ; as, "One *and* one make two ;" "He *and* I must go."

8. An *Interjection* expresses a sudden passion or emotion of the mind ; as, *ah ! vae ! O !*

SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

14. *a.* A *Substantive* or *Noun* is the *name* of any person, place, or thing ; as, *puer*, a boy ; *schola*, a school ; *liber*, a book ; *spes*, hope.

b. Substantives are either *common* or *proper*.

c. *Common* nouns are the names given to a *whole class* or *species*, and are applicable to every individual of that class ; as, *homo*, a man ; *urbs*, a city ; *arbor*, a tree.

d. *Proper* nouns are the names given only to *individuals* ; as the particular names of persons, places, seas, rivers, mountains, &c. ; as, *Georgius*, George ; *Britannia*, Britain ; *Tamēsis*, the Thames.

e. A *Patronymic* noun is derived from a proper substantive, signifying one's extraction ; as, *Priāmidēs*, the son of Priāmus.

f. A *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun is derived from a proper substantive, signifying one's country ; as, *Tros*, a Trojan.

g. A *Diminutive* noun is derived from another, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification ; as, *libellus*, a little book, from *liber*. Diminutives generally end in *us*, *ia*, or *um*.

h. The properties belonging to substantives are, *gender*, *number*, *person*, and *case*.

15. *a.* *Gender* is the distinction of nouns either with regard to sex or the want of sex. There are three genders ; the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

b. Properly speaking, there can be only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*. The *neuter* means neither sex nor gender. — Particular Rules on this subject will be given hereafter.

16. *a.* *Number* is the inflection of a noun, to indicate *one* object, or *more* than one.

b. There are two *numbers*, the *singular* and the *plural*.

The *singular* denotes *one* object, as, *pomum*, an apple; the *plural* denotes *more* objects than one, as, *poma*, apples.

17. Nouns have three *persons*; the first, the second, and the third. The *first* person is the speaker; as, "I, *John Thompson*, do promise." The *second* person is the person spoken *to*; as, "*Boys*, attend to your lessons." The *third* person is the person spoken *of*; as, "That *girl* is diligent."

18. *a. Case* is the form or state of a noun or pronoun, to express the *relation* which it bears to another word.

b. Case from *casus*, a falling, so called, because cases were supposed to fall or decline from the nominative or first form, called the *upright* (*rectus*). All the forms of the noun, except the nominative, were called *cases* or *casus obliqui*, oblique cases.

c. There are six cases; the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

19. 1. The *Nominative* case is that form of the noun which simply expresses the *name* of the person or thing denoting the *subject*; and is generally placed before a verb.

2. The *Genitive* is that form which expresses *origin, cause, or ownership*; and generally has the sign *of*.

3. The *Dative* is that form which expresses *acquisition, loss, or for what end*; and has the signs *to, for, against*.

4. The *Accusative* is that form which expresses the *direct object* or *effect* of an action; and is governed by a verb or preposition denoting the action.

5. The *Vocative* is the form used in *addressing* persons or things; and seldom differs from the Nominative.

6. The *Ablative* is the form which denotes the *cause, agent, means, instrument, or manner, removing, liberating, and various other modes of circumstance*; and is always governed by some preposition expressed or understood. When the preposition is not expressed, its most frequent signs are, *by, from, in, than, with*.

Nominative comes from *nomino* to name; *Genitive* from *gigno*, to produce; *Dative* from *do, datum*, to give; *Accusative* from *accuso*, to accuse; *Vocative*, from *voco*, to call; *Ablative* from *aufero, ablatum*, to take away.

DECLENSIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

20. *a. Declension* is the varying of a noun in its cases and numbers.

b. There are five Declensions, distinguished from each other by the ending of the genitive case singular.

c. The first Declension makes the genitive singular in *ae*, the second in *i*, the third in *is*, the fourth in *ūs*, the fifth in *ei*.

d. A Tabular View of the Terminations of the Five Declensions.

First Declen.		Second Declen.		Third Declen.		Fourth Declen.		Fifth Declen.	
Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
N. a. ae.		r, us, um. i. a.		various	es, a, ia.	us.	us.	es.	es.
G. ae. arum.		l. orum.		is	um, ium.	ūs. •	uum.	ei.	erum.
D. ae. is.		o.	is.	i	ibus.	ui.	ibus.	ei.	ebus.
Ac. am. as.		um.	os, a.	em, im.	es, a, ia.	um.	us.	em.	es.
V. a. ae.		r, e, um. i. a.		like Nom.	es, a, ia.	us.	us.	es.	es.
Ab. ā. is.		o.	is.	e, i.	ibus.	u.	ibus.	e.	ebus.

FIRST DECLENSION.

21. *a.* Nouns of the first Declension end in *a*, and are generally of the feminine gender, except the names of men or male beings.

Singular.

N. Mens-ā, *a table.*
 G. Mens-ae, *of a table.*
 D. Mens-ae, *to or for a table.*
 Ac. Mens-am, *a table,*
 V. Mens-ā, *O table!*
 Ab. Mens-ā, *by, from, in,*
 with a table.

Plural.

N. Mens-ae, *tables.*
 G. Mens-ārum, *of tables.*
 D. Mens-is, *to or for tables.*
 Ac. Mens-as, *tables.*
 V. Mens-ae, *O tables!*
 Ab. Mens-is, *by, from, in,*
 with tables.

b. That part of a word which undergoes no variation may be called the *radix* or root of a word. To decline a word is to affix to the root its several terminations; thus, in the word *musa*, a muse, *mus* is the root, and *a, ae, &c.* the terminations.

c. The Poets frequently make the genitive singular in *ai* for *ae*; as, *aulai, aurai*, for *aulae, aurae*. The noun *familia* generally makes *as* in the genitive case, when joined to *pater, mater, filius, filia*; thus, in the singular, *pater-familias*, the father of the family; *pateris-familias*, of the father of the family, &c.; plural, *patres-familias*, fathers of the family, &c. The regular forms, *familiae* in the genitive singular, and *familiarum* in the genitive plural, are, however, not uncommon.

d. The genitive plural in the first, as well as in the second and third declensions, is frequently contracted by the Poets; as, *terrigenāum* for *terrigenarum*, *Deūm* for *Deorum*, *serpentūm* for *serpentium*. This contraction is uncommon in prose.

e. *Anima*, the soul, the life, *asina*, a she-ass, *dea*, a goddess, *domina*, a lady, *egua*, a mare, *famula*, a maid-servant, *filia*, a daughter, *liberia*, a freed-woman, *mula*, a she-mule, *nata*, a daughter, *serva*, a female-slave, *socia*, a she-companion, frequently make the dative and ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from *animis, asinis, deis, &c.* the masculines in *us* of the second declension. When the distinction is clear from the context, or from having the adjectives *duabus, ambabus* annexed, the termination *is* is more common, as, *filis duabus*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

22. Nouns of the second Declension end either in *er*, *us*, or *um*. Nouns in *er* and *us* are generally masculine ; those in *um* are neuter.

23. Nouns in *er* generally reject, sometimes retain, the *e* before *r*.

Singular.

N. Māgīst-er, *a master.*
 G. Māgīst-rī, *of a master.*
 D. Māgīst-ro, *to a master.*
 Ac. Māgīst-rum, *a master.*
 V. Māgīst-er, *O master !*
 Ab. Māgīst-ro, *by a master.*

Plural.

N. Māgīst-rī, *masters.*
 G. Māgīst-rōrum, *of masters,*
 D. Māgīst-rīs, *to masters.*
 Ac. Māgīst-rōs, *masters.*
 V. Māgīst-rī, *O masters !*
 Ab. Māgīst-rīs, *by masters*

Singular.

N. Pūēr, *a boy.*
 G. Puer-i, *of a boy.*
 D. Puer-o, *to a boy.*
 Ac. Puer-um, *a boy.*
 V. Puer, *O boy !*
 Ab. Puer-o, *by a boy.*

Plural.

N. Pūēr-ī, *boys.*
 G. Puer-ōrum, *of boys.*
 D. Puer-īs, *to boys.*
 Ac. Puer-ōs, *boys.*
 V. Puer-ī, *O boys !*
 Ab. Puer-īs, *by boys.*

24. *a.* The nominative and vocative are alike in both numbers ; except nouns in *us* of the second declension, which make *e* in the vocative ; as, *dominus, domine*. Also, *Proper* names in *ius*, with these common nouns, *genius*, a genius, and *filius*, a son, form the vocative in *i* by dropping *us* of the nominative ; as, *Virgilius, Virgili* ; *filius, genius, fili, geni*. Other common nouns in *ius* have *e* in the vocative ; as, *gladie*.

b. Proper nouns used as adjectives, make *e* in the voc. ; as, *Delie* ; also proper nouns in *ius*, from the Greek *ιος*, as in *Arius, Arie*.

Singular.

N. Dōmīn-ūs, *a lord.*
 G. Domin-ī, *of a lord.*
 D. Domin-ō, *to a lord.*
 Ac. Domin-um, *a lord.*
 V. Domin-ē, *O lord !*
 Ab. Domin-ō, *by a lord.*

Plural.

N. Domin-ī, *lords.*
 G. Domin-ōrum, *of lords.*
 D. Domin-īs, *to lords.*
 Ac. Domin-ōs, *lords.*
 V. Domin-ī, *O lords !*
 Ab. Domin-īs, *by lords.*

c. Deus, God, is thus declined : —

Singular.

N. Deūs.
 G. Del.
 D. Deo.
 Ac. Deum.
 V. O Deūs !
 Ab. Deo.

Plural.

N. Del, Dī, Dī.
 G. Deorum, Deūm.
 D. Deīs, Dīīs, Dīs.
 Ac. Deos.
 V. Del, Dī, Dī.
 Ab. Deīs, Dīīs, Dīs.

25. Nouns in *um*, and all other neuter nouns, of whatever declension they may be, have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike in both numbers ; and in the plural these cases end in *a*.

Singular.

N. Bell-um, *a war*.
G. Bell-i, *of a war*.
D. Bell-o, *to a war*.
Ac. Bell-um, *a war*.
V. Bell-um, *O war!*
Ab. Bell-o, *by a war*.

Plural.

N. Bell-a, *wars*.
G. Bell-orum, *of wars*.
D. Bell-is, *to wars*.
Ac. Bell-a, *wars*.
V. Bell-a, *O wars!*
Ab. Bell-is, *by wars*.

26. Nouns. *a*. The nouns that retain the *e* before *r* in the genitive and the other oblique cases are the following : — *puer*, a boy ; *adulter*, an adulterer ; *socer*, a father-in-law ; *gener*, a son-in-law ; *Liber*, Bacchus ; *Mulciber*, Vulcan ; *presbyter*, an elder ; *liberi*, children ; *vesper*, the evening. *Iber* and *Celtiber* make the *e* long ; as, *Ibēri*, *Celtibēri*. The compounds of *fero* and *gero* retain the *e* ; as, *Lucifer*, the morning star ; *furcifer*, a knave ; *frugifer*, bearing fruit ; *armiger*, an armour-bearer ; *corniger*, a bull, &c. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e* in the oblique cases ; as, *ager*, *agri*, *agro*, &c.

b. *Vir*, a man, and its compounds, retain the *i* before *r* ; as, Gen. *virī*, of a man ; *leviri*, of a brother-in-law.

c. The Poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative ; as, *O fluvius*, *O Latinus*, for *O fluvie*, *O Latine*. This sometimes, but more rarely, occurs in prose. The Poets also sometimes change *er* into *us* ; as, N. *Evander* or *Evandrus*, V. *Evander* or *Evandre*.

d. The genitive of words in *tus* and *ium* was originally formed in *i* ; as, *Tuli*, *men-cipi*. Later writers use *ii*. The Poets frequently contract *ii* of the genitive singular into *i* for the sake of euphony, as *ingēni*, for *ingenii*.

e. The genitive plural of some words, in poetry, as well as those which denote value, measure, and weight, is frequently contracted into *um* instead of *orum* ; as, *Delūm*, *Teucrūm*, for *Deorum*, *Teucrorum* ; and *nummūm*, *sestertiūm*, *modiūm*, for *nummorum*, &c.

THIRD DECLENSION.

27. *a*. Nouns of the third Declension have various endings. They form the genitive plural either in *um* or *ium*.

b. Nouns *increasing** in the genitive case generally make *um* in the genitive plural.

Sermo, *a speech*, masculine.

Singular.

N. *Sermo*, *a speech*.
G. *Sermō-nis*, *of a speech*.
D. *Sermō-ni*, *to a speech*.
Ac. *Sermō-nem*, *a speech*.
V. *Sermo*, *O speech!*
Ab. *Sermō-ne*, *by a speech*.

Plural.

N. *Sermō-nes*, *speeches*.
G. *Sermō-num*, *of speeches*.
D. *Sermō-nibus*, *to speeches*.
Ac. *Sermō-nes*, *speeches*.
V. *Sermō-nes*, *O speeches!*
Ab. *Sermō-nibus*, *by speeches*.

* In this declension, many nouns *increase* in the genitive case singular ; that is, they have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative case ; thus, *lapis*, *lapidis*, has *two* in the nominative and *three* in the genitive. When the number of syllables is the same both in the nominative and genitive cases, the noun is said not to increase ; as, N. *nubes*, G. *nubis*.

Lāpis, a stone, masculine.

Singular.

N. Lāp-is, *a stone.*
G. Lāp-īdis, *of a stone.*
D. Lāp-īdi, *to a stone.*
Ac. Lāp-īdem, *a stone.*
V. Lāp-is, *O stone!*
Ab. Lāp-īde, *by a stone.*

Plural.

N. Lāp-īdes, *stones.*
G. Lāp-īdum, *of stones.*
D. Lāp-īdibus, *to stones.*
Ac. Lāp-īdes, *stones.*
V. Lāp-īdes, *O stones!*
Ab. Lāp-īdibus, *by stones.*

Ōpus, a work, neuter.

Singular.

N. Ōp-ūs, *a work.*
G. Ōp-ēris, *of a work.*
D. Ōp-ēri, *to a work.*
Ac. Ōp-us, *a work.*
V. Ōp-us, *O work!*
Ab. Ōp-ēre, *by a work.*

Plural.

N. Ōp-ērā, *works.*
G. Ōp-ērūm, *of works.*
D. Ōp-ērībus, *to works.*
Ac. Ōp-ērā, *works.*
V. Ōp-ērā, *O works!*
Ab. Ōp-ērībus, *by works.*

28. The following nouns make *ium* in the genitive plural:—

1. *a.* Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in the genitive singular, have *ium* in the genitive plural.

b. Except *canis*, a dog; *juvenis*, a young man; *mugilis*, a sea-mullet; *opes* (plural), riches; *panis*, bread; *strigilis*, a scraper; *strues*, a heap; *vates*, a prophet; which make *um* in the genitive plural. *Apis* and *volucris* generally make *um*, sometimes *ium*. *Senex* makes *senum*.

Singular.

N. Nūb-es, *a cloud.*
G. Nub-is, *of a cloud.*
D. Nub-i, *to a cloud.*
Ac. Nub-em, *a cloud.*
V. Nub-es, *O cloud!*
Ab. Nub-e, *by a cloud.*

Plural.

N. Nūb-es, *clouds.*
G. Nub-īum, *of clouds.*
D. Nub-ībus, *to clouds.*
Ac. Nub-es, *clouds.*
V. Nub-es, *O clouds!*
Ab. Nub-ībus, *by clouds.*

2. Nouns in *er*, not increasing, make the genitive plural in *ium*, as, *imber*, *imbrium*; but *pater*, *mater*, *frater*, and *accipiter*, make the genitive plural in *um*.

3. Nouns of one syllable in *as*, *is*, as, *mas*, *lis*; or in *s* or *x* after a consonant, as, *mons*, *arx*; have *ium* in the genitive plural.

But *lynx* and other words of Greek origin have generally *um*; as, *lynx*, *lyncum*; *Arabs*, *gryps*, *Arabum*, *gryphum*.

Those ending in *x*, preceded by a vowel, have *um*; except

fauz, the jaws, *nix*, snow, *nox*, night, and *strix*, a groove, which have *ium*.

Words of one syllable ending in *s*, preceded by other vowels than *a* or *i*, generally have *um*; except *cos*, a whetstone, *dos*, a dowry, *fraus*, fraud, *mus*, a mouse, and *os*, *ossis*, a bone, which make *ium*.

4. Nouns of *two* or *more* than two syllables in *ns*, *rs*, (and *as*, genitive *ātis*,) generally make *ium*, but frequently *um*; as, *cliens*, a client, *clientium* or *clientum*. Also those which are properly participles; as, *adolescens*, *adolescentium*, or *adolescentum*.

Penātes, *optimātes*, and the names of nations in *as*, as, *Fidēnas*, *Arpinas*, have *ium*.

Mons, a mountain, masculine.

Singular.

N. Mons, a mountain.
G. Mon-tis, of a mountain.
D. Mon-ti, to a mountain.
Ac. Mon-tem, a mountain.
V. Mons, O mountain!
Ab. Monte, by a mountain.

Plural.

N. Mon-tes, mountains.
G. Mon-tium, of mountains.
D. Mon-tibus, to mountains.
Ac. Mon-tes, mountains.
V. Mon-tes, O mountains!
Ab. Mon-tibus, by mountains.

5. The following nouns also make *ium* in the genitive plural:—

Caro, flesh.	Lar, a household	Quiris, a Roman.
Cor, the heart,	god.	Samnis, a Samnite.

The component parts of *uncia* and *as* have likewise *ium*; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *sextans*, two ounces, *sextantium*.

6. Neuters of the third declension in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative singular, *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and *ium* in the genitive.

But these words,—*baccar*, an herb called lady's glove, *far* (*farris*), corn, *hepar* (*hepātis*), the liver, *jubar* (*jubāris*), a sunbeam, *nectar* (*nectāris*), nectar, *sal*, salt, and towns in *e*, as, *Praeneste*, have *e* in the ablative. *Sal* (*salis*) has no neuter plural, but makes N. *sales*, G. *salium*. *Far* makes N. plural *farra*, G. *farrum*. *Hepar*, *jubar*, and *nectar*, have no plural. *Par* has ablative singular *pāre*, and genitive plural *parium*, like the adjective.

Singular.
 N. Rēt-e, *a net.*
 G. Ret-is, *of a net.*
 D. Ret-i, *to a net.*
 Ac. Ret-e, *a net.*
 V. Ret-e, *O net!*
 Ab. Ret-i, *by a net.*

Plural.
 N. Rēt-ia, *nets.*
 G. Ret-ium, *of nets.*
 D. Ret-ibus, *to nets.*
 Ac. Ret-ia, *nets.*
 V. Ret-ia, *O nets!*
 Ab. Ret-ibus, *by nets.*

IRREGULARS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

29. *a. Genitive Singular.* Cicero, and other writers of the best age, sometimes form from Greek proper names in *es*, and especially from those in *cles*, a genitive in *t*, instead of *is*; as, *Achilli, Themistocli*. In nouns in *is* (*idēs*), the Poets frequently use the Greek termination *os* for *is*; as, *Daphnis, Daphnidos*. But the Greek form is not common in prose.

b. The Dative Singular. The dative singular anciently ended in *e*.

Accusative Singular.

30. 1. The regular ending of the accusative singular is *em*. But the following are exceptions:—

2. The following nouns in *is* form the accusative in *im*:—

Amussis, f. a mason's rule.

Basis, f. a base.

Buris, f. the beam of a plough.

Cannabis, f. hemp.

Cucūmris, m. a cucumber.

Gummi, f. gum.

Mephitis, f. foul air.

Paraphrasis, f. a paraphrase.

Poësis, f. the art of poetry.

Ravis, f. a hoarseness.

Sinapis, f. mustard.

Sitis, f. thirst.

Tussis, f. a cough.

Vis, f. strength.

3. Proper names in *is* have *im* in the accusative; as—*First*, Names of cities and other places; as, *Bilbilis, f.* a city in Spain; *Syrta, f.* a quicksand on the coast of Africa.

Secondly, Names of rivers; as, *Tyberis, m.* the Tiber; *Baetis, m.* the Guadalquivir.

Thirdly, Names of Gods; as, *Anubis, m.* *Osiris, m.* Egyptian deities.

The preceding nouns have sometimes *in* in the accusative; as, *Bilbilin, Tyberin, Anubin*.

4. The following nouns in *is* have *em* or *im* in the accusative:—

Aqualls, m. a water-pot.

Clavis, f. a key.

Cutis, f. the skin.

Febris, f. a fever.

Lens, f. lentil.

Navis, f. a ship.

Pelvis, f. a basin.

Puppis, f. the stern of a ship.

Restis, f. a rope.

Securis, f. an axe.

Sementis, f. a sowing.

Strigilis, f. a curry-comb or scraper.

Turris, f. a tower.

Febris, pelvis, puppis, restis, securis, and turris, have much more frequently *im*; the others have commonly *em*.

5. Nouns which have been adopted from the Greek sometimes retain *a* in the accusative; as, *heros, m.* a hero, *heroa*. This form, however, is seldom employed by the best prose writers, and is chiefly confined to proper names, except in *aër, m.* the air; *aether, m.* the sky; *dēphin, m.* a dolphin; and *Pan*; which commonly make *aëra, aethëra, dēphina, and Pana*.

Ablative Singular.

31. 1. The regular ending of the ablative singular is in *e*. But nouns in *is* which have *im* in the accusative have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi*.

But *cannābis*, *Bactis*, *sināpis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*; also, Greek words which have *i* in the genitive have *e* in the ablative.

2. Nouns in *is*, which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *navis*, *nave*, or *navi*.

But *cutis* and *restis* have *e* only; *securis*, *sementis*, and *strigilis*, have seldom *e*.

3. The following nouns, which have *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative:—

Amnis, m. a river.
Anguis, m. and f. a snake.
Avis, f. a bird.
Civis, c. a citizen.
Classis, f. a fleet.
Finis, m. and f. an end.
Fustis, m. a staff.
Ignis, m. a fire.
Imber, m. a shower.
Mugilis, m. a sea-mullet.
Occiput, n. the hind part of the head.

Orbis, m. a circle.
Pars, f. a part.
Postis, m. a door-post.
Pugil, c. a pugilist.
Rus, n. the country.
Sors, f. a lot.
Supellex, f. furniture.
Unguis, m. a nail.
Vectis, m. a lever.
Vesper, m. evening.

Finis, *mugilis*, *occiput*, *pugil*, *rus*, *supellex*, and *vectis*, have indifferently *e* or *i*; but the others have much more frequently *e*. *Rure* means from the country; *ruri*, in the country.

4. Names of towns, when they denote the place *in* or *at* which any thing is done, take *e*, sometimes *i*; as, *Carthagine*, *Carthagini*.

Canalis, m. or f. a water-pipe, has *canali* only.

5. Names of months in *is* or *er* have the ablative in *i*; as, *Aprilis*, *September*, *Aprilis*, *Septembri*; and those nouns in *is* which were originally adjectives; as, *acclitis*, *affinis*, *bipennis*, *familiaris*, *sodalis*, *volucris*, &c. When such adjectives become *proper names*, they always make the ablative in *e*; as, *Juvenile*. *Rudis*, a rod, and *juvenis*, a youth, have *e* only.

Genitive, Dative, and Accusative Plural.

32. *a. Genitive.* All nouns that end in *i*, or in *e* or *i*, in the ablative, make the genitive plural in *ium*. *Bos*, an ox, makes the genitive plural in *boŕum*. The noun *aks*, and the plural noun *coŕtes*, make *um* and *uum* in the genitive plural. The genitive of festivals in *alia* in the nominative plural, is *ium* or *orum*; as, *Bacchanalia*, *Bacchanalium*, *Bacchanaliorum*.

b. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Macedo*, *Macedonium*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the plural in *on*; as, *epigramma*, *epigrammatum*, or *epigrammaton*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *ium*, or *con*.

33. *a. Dative.* See observations under Dative of the Third Declension in Greek Nouns.

b. *Bos* makes the dative and ablative in *bobus* or *bubus*; *sus* has *suisbus* or *subus*.

34. *a. Accusative.* Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural formed the accusative originally in *is*, also written *cis*, instead of *es*; as, accusative plural, *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

b. If the accusative singular ends in *a*, the accusative plural ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampadem* or *lampada*, *lampades*, *lampadas*. This form, however, is rarely used in prose.

35. *a. Jupiter* is thus declined: N. *Jupiter*, G. *Jovis*, D. *Jovĭ*, Ac. *Jovem*, V. *Jupiter*, Ab. *Jove*.

b. Vis, *bos*, and *jus-jurandum*, are thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
N. <i>Vis</i> ,	<i>bos</i> ,	<i>jus-jurandum</i> .	N. <i>Vires</i> ,	<i>boves</i> ,	<i>jura-juranda</i> .
G. <i>Vis</i> ,	<i>bovĭs</i> ,	<i>juris-jurandi</i> .	G. <i>Virium</i> ,	<i>boŕum</i> ,	<i>jurum-jurandorum</i> .
D. <i>Vi</i> ,	<i>bovi</i> ,	<i>juri-jurando</i> .	D. <i>Viribus</i>	{ <i>bobus</i> ,	{ <i>juribus-jurandis</i> .
Ac. <i>Vim</i> ,	<i>bovem</i> ,	<i>jus-jurandum</i> .	Ac. <i>Vires</i> ,	{ <i>bubus</i> ,	
V. <i>Vis</i> ,	<i>bos</i> ,	<i>jus-jurandum</i> .	V. <i>Vires</i> ,	<i>boves</i> ,	<i>jura-juranda</i> .
Ab. <i>Vi</i> ,	<i>bove</i> ,	<i>jure-jurando</i> .	Ab. <i>Viribus</i> ,	{ <i>bobus</i> ,	{ <i>juribus-jurandis</i> .
				{ <i>bubus</i> ,	

FOURTH DECLENSION.

36. *a.* Nouns of the fourth Declension end in *us* or *u*.

b. Nouns in *us* are generally masculine, but sometimes feminine.

Singular.

N. Grad-ūs, *a step*.
G. Grad-ūs, *of a step*.
D. Grad-ūi, *to a step*.
Ac. Grad-um, *a step*.
V. Grad-ūs, *O step!*
Ab. Grad-ū, *by a step*.

Plural.

N. Grad-ūs, *steps*.
G. Grad-ūum, *of steps*.
D. Grad-ibus, *to steps*.
Ac. Grad-ūs, *steps*.
V. Grad-ūs, *O steps!*
Ab. Grad-ibus, *by steps*.

c. Nouns in *u* are neuter, and are undeclined in the singular, except in the genitive case; in the plural they follow the rule of neuter nouns; as,

Singular.

N. Corn-ū, *a horn*.
G. Corn-ūs or *u**, *of a horn*.
D. Corn-ū, *to a horn*.
Ac. Corn-ū, *a horn*.
V. Corn-ū, *O horn!*
Ab. Corn-ū, *by a horn*.

Plural.

N. Corn-ūā, *horns*.
G. Corn-ūum, *of horns*.
D. Corn-ibus, *to horns*.
Ac. Corn-ua, *horns*.
V. Corn-ua, *O horns!*
Ab. Corn-ibus, *by horns*.

37. *a.* *Iesus* or *Jesús* makes, in the accusative, *Iesum* or *Jesum*; and *Iesu* or *Jesu* in all other cases.

b. Sometimes the genitive ended in *i*, as in the second declension. *Us* is a contraction of *uis*, the original genitive.

c. The dative singular is sometimes, by the Poets, contracted into *u*, and frequently in *Cæsar*; as, *equitatu*.

d. *Acus*, a needle, *arcus*, a bow, *artus*, a joint, *ficus*, a fig, *lacus*, a lake, *partus*, a birth, *pecu*, cattle, *quercus*, an oak, *specus*, a den, *tribus*, a tribe, and *verus*, a spit, make the dative and ablative cases plural in *ibus*. *Genu*, the knee, *portus*, a harbour, *tonitru*, thunder, make *ibus* or *ubus*.

38. *a.* *Domus*, a house, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension; thus,

Sing. N. *Domus*,—G. *Domūs* or *mi*,—D. *Domui* or *mo*,—Ac. *Domum*,—V. *Domus*,—Ab. *Domo*.

Plu. N. *Domūs*,—G. *Domuum* or *ōrum*,—D. *Domibus*,—Ac. *Domūs* or *os*,—V. *Domūs*,—Ab. *Domibus*.

b. *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies *of a house*; and *domi* is used only to signify *at home* or *of home*.

39. *a.* These are feminine: *acus*, *anus*, *domus*, *manus*, *nurus*, *socrus*, *porticus*, *tribus*, *quercus*, *idus*, *quingentus*, and *ficus*.

b. The fourth declension is merely a contraction of the third: thus, N. *Fructus*; G. *Fructus*, *fructūs*; D. *Fructui*; Ac. *Fructum*, *fructum*; V. *Fructus*; Ab. *Fructu*, *fructu*; N. P. *Fructus*, *fructus*, &c. Hence *us* is long in all the contracted cases.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

40. *a.* Nouns of the fifth Declension end in *es*; and are all feminine except *dies*, which is common in the singular, and masculine in the plural.

* Both Zumpt and Kuhner give *ūs* and *u* for the gen. sing. of *cornus* and other neuter nouns.

Singular.
 N. Di-ēs, *a day.*
 G. Di-ēi, *of a day.*
 D. Di-ēi, *to a day.*
 Ac. Di-ēm, *a day.*
 V. Di-ēs, *O day!*
 Ab. Di-ē, *by a day.*

Plural.
 N. Di-ēs, *days.*
 G. Di-ērūm, *of days.*
 D. Di-ēbus, *to days.*
 Ac. Di-ēs, *days.*
 V. Di-ēs, *O days!*
 Ab. Di-ēbus, *by days.*

b. Three nouns, *fides*, faith, *res*, a thing, and *spes*, hope, make the genitive singular in *ēi* short.

c. *Dies*, *res*, and *species*, are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are complete in both the singular and plural; *acies*, *effigies*, *facies*, *series*, and *spes*, are complete in the singular, but have only the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in the plural; the other nouns have no plural.

41. *a.* *Meridies*, the mid-day or noon, is masculine, and does not occur in the plural.

b. The Poets frequently make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, end in *e*.

c. *Res-publica* is thus declined:

<i>Sing.</i>	N. & V. Res-publica, Ac. Rem-publicam,	G. Rel-publicae, Ab. Re-publicā.	D. Rel-publicae,
<i>Plur.</i>	N. & V. Res-publicae, Ac. Res-publicas,	G. Rerum-publicarum, Ab. Rebus-publicis.	D. Rebus-publicis,

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. *a.* Greek words of this declension end in *as*, *e*, *es*, and are declined in the plural like *mensa*; but in the singular, according to the following examples:—

<i>Sing.</i>	N. Aenēas, G. Aeneae, D. Aeneae, Ac. Aeneam or an, V. Aeneā, Ab. Aeneā.	Penēlōpē, Anchisae, Penelōpē, Penelopēn, Penelopē, Penelopē.	Anchisēn, Anchisae, Anchisae, Anchisēn or ēn, Anchisē, Anchisē.
--------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

b. To the termination in *es* belong patronymics in *des*; as, *Pelides*, the son of Peleus, with the following proper names:—*Acestes*, *Achates*, *Agyries*, *Antiphates*, *Bootes*, *Bates*, *Laertes*, *Leucates*, *Menaetes*, *Philoctetes*, *Polites*, *Procrustes*, *Thersites*, *Thyestes*, *Zetes*. Add names of jewels and wines; as, *achates*, *aromatics*. Other names in *es* belong to the third declension.

c. It is a general rule, that all Greek nouns in *s* form the vocative by dropping that letter. Nouns in *es* have sometimes *d* in the vocative, and more rarely *ā*. Nouns in *stes* have *sta* in the vocative. They also sometimes form the accusative in *em*, and the ablative in *ā*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

43. *a.* Greek nouns in *os* and *on* are generally Latinised in *us* or *um*; yet they frequently, especially among the Poets, retain one or more cases from the Greek: thus,

N. Andrō-gēōs,	Pa-phōs,	Pan-thūs,	Pell-on or um,
G. Andro-geō or gel,	Pa-phi,	Pan-thi,	Pell-i,
D. Andro-geo,	Pa-phō,	Pan-tho,	Pell-o,
Ac. Andro-geōn,	Paphōn,	{ Pan-thum, }	Pell-on or um,
V. Andro-geōs or geō,	Pa-phe,	Pan-thu,	Pell-on or um,
Ab. Andro-geō.	Pa-phō.	Pan-tho.	Pell-o.

b. In the vocative, *chorus* has *chore* or *chorus*; *chaōs* and *Athōs* have *chaos* and *Athōs*. When Greek nouns of this declension have a plural, it is declined like Latin nouns of this declension. The genitive plural of neuters is sometimes in *ōn*; as, *georgica*, *georgicōn*.

c. Greek proper names in *os*, contracted from *oos*, end in Latin either in *us* or *us*; *Alcinōus*, *Panithūs*. The vocative is in *a*. *Athos*, *Ceos*, *Cos*, *Teos*, are either declined N. *Athos*, G. and D. *Atho*, Ac. *Atho* and *Athon*, or take the Latin form.

44. *a.* Greek nouns in *eus* (*ως*) are declined two ways. Either the *eus* is pronounced as one syllable, and then the declension belongs to the third; or else *eus* is pronounced as *ēs*, two syllables, and the manner of declining is like that of Latin nouns in *us*. In both modes of inflecting, however, the vocative ends in *eu*. Thus,

N.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	V.	Ab.
Orphēus,	ēi,	ēo,	{ ēon, ēum, }	eu,	ēō; of the second.
Orpheus,	ēos,	ēi,	ēa,	eu,	ēō; of the third.
Oedipus,	{ i, ōdis,	{ o, ōdi,	{ um, ōdem,	{ u, u,	{ o; ōde; of the third.

b. Proper names in *es* of the third declension sometimes take this form; as,

N. Achilles,	G. Achillēs, Achilleos;	of the third.
Achillēus,	Achillēi;	of the second.

THIRD DECLENSION.

45. *a.* Nouns increasing *impure*, that is, such as have a consonant before *is* or *os* of the genitive; as, *Lampas*, Gen. *lampādīs*, *Poema*, Gen. *poemātis*; are declined as below.

So also are *Minos*, *Tros*, and *heros*, though increasing *pure*, that is, in *is* after a vowel; as, *Minos*, *Minois*.

In the accusative, { *Pan*, *delphin*, *āer*, *acther*, have generally *a*.
Men's names in *is* have *im*, *in*, or *idem*,
Women's have *ida* or *idem* (never *im* or *in*); so also *chlamys*.
Cities have *im*, *ida*, *idem*.

N.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	V.	Ab.
<i>Sing.</i> Lamp-as,	{ ādis, ādos, }	ādi,	{ ādem, āda, }	as,	āde.
<i>Plu.</i> Lamp-ādes,	ādum,	ādibus,	{ ādes, ādas, }	ādes,	ādibus.
<i>Sing.</i> Tro-as,	{ ādis, ādos, }	ādi,	{ ādem, āda, }	as,	āde.
<i>Plu.</i> Tro-ādes,	ādum,	{ ādibus, āsi or āsin,	{ ādes, ādas, }	ādes,	{ ādibus, āsi or āsin.
<i>Sing.</i> Tros,	Trois,	Troi,	{ Troem, Troa, }	Tros,	Troe.
<i>Sing.</i> Pan,	Panos,	Pani,	Pana,	Pan,	Pane.
<i>Sing.</i> Par-is,	Idis or Idos,	Idi,	{ im, in, Idem,	i,	Ide.
<i>Sing.</i> Hec-tor,	tōros,	tōri,	tōra,	tor,	tōre.
<i>Sing.</i> Phyll-is,	Idis or Idos,	Idi,	Idem or Ida,	i or is	Ide.
<i>Sing.</i> Chlam-ys,	ŷdis or ŷdos,	ŷdi,	ŷdem or ŷda,	y,	ŷde.
<i>Sing.</i> Aul-is,	Idis,	Idi,	im, Ida, Idem,	is,	Ide.

b. Nouns which have *is* in the genitive, of the same number of syllables as the nominative, are declined in the following manner; also, those which increase *pure*; the names of cities in *polis*, as, *Pentāpōlis*; and also, *Atys*, *basis*, *ciddāris*, *crisis*, *Cōiys*, *metamorphōsis*, *synaxis*, *synthēsis*. Thus,

N.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	V.	Ab.
<i>Sing.</i> Haeres-is,	is, ios, eos,	i,	im, in,	i,	i.
<i>Plu.</i> Haeres-es,	ium, eōn,	esi,	es,	es,	esi.
<i>Sing.</i> Cap-ys,	yls or yos	yi,	ym, or yn,	y,	ye or y.

c. Nouns in *eus* (monosyllable) have in the genitive *eos*, and in the accusative *ea*; as, *Tyd-eus*, *Thes-eus*, Gen. *Tydeos*, Acc. *Tydea*.

d. In the *genitive plural*, Greek nouns have *um* or *on*. Nouns in *is*, increasing *pure*, have *ium*, sometimes *ēon*.

e. The *dative* and *ablative plural* are in *ibus*, or follow the Greek form *si* before a consonant, or *sin* before a vowel; as, *Troāsi* or *Troasin*, for *Troādibus*. The termination in *si* or *sin*, is rarely used except by the Poets.

f. Nouns in *ma*, as *poema*, have *tis* rather than *ibus* in the dative and ablative plural because the ancient Latin writers used them as if of the first declension; *tibus* is, however, used.

g. The *vocative singular* is commonly, in Greek, the same as the nominative, as in Latin. But words in *is* and *ys*, which in Greek reject *s* in the vocative, do so also in poetry in Latin; as, N. *Thais*, V. *Thai*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

46. Nouns of this declension are thus declined; N. *Manto*, G. *Mantūs*, D. *Manto*, Ac. *Mantō*, V. *Mantō*, Ab. *Mantō*. *Dido* is both of the third and fourth declensions; thus, N. *Dido*, G. *Didōnis* or *Didūs*. D. *Didōni* or *Didō*, &c.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE SUBSTANTIVES.

47. An *Irregular* noun is one that is not declined according to the rules.

48. *a.* A *Defective* noun is one that has not all the cases or numbers.

b. Those defectives which have only one case, are called *Monoptōtes*; as, *noctu*, by night.

c. Those which have only two cases, are called *Diptōtes*; as, Gen. *spontis*, Ab. *sponte*, a will.

d. Those which have only three cases, are called *Triptōtes*; as, Dat. *preci*, Acc. *precem*, Ab. *prece*, a prayer. This, however, and many of the same kind, have all the cases in the plural.

49. *a.* Some nouns have no plural, such as most *proper names*; names of *arts, herbs, liquors, metals, virtues, vices*; different kinds of *grain*; and *abstract nouns*.

b. Proper names have a plural, when it is necessary to denote persons of a similar name or character; as, *Catlinæ*, the Catlines. Also, nouns denoting the states of weather, are pluralised to express the repetition of the phenomena; as, *nives*, falls of snow.

c. Some nouns have no singular, particularly such as include several separate things under one name; as, *arma, divitiæ*.

d. The following, among many others, have no singular: *calendæ, nonæ, idus*; the names of festivals and solemn games; as, *Iudi, Bacchanalia, Floralia, Saturnalia*, with *nuptia, sponsalia, natalitia*; many names of cities, as, *Athenæ, Bactra* (orum), *Thebæ*.

50. In some words the plural has a different meaning from the singular; as, Sing. *aedes*, a temple; Plu. *aedes*, a house.

Singular.

Aqua, water.
Auxilium, help.
Bonum, something good.
Carcer, a prison.
Castrum, a fort.
Comitium, a part of the Roman forum.
Copia, abundance.
Fortuna, fortune.
Hortus, a garden.
Litera, a letter of the alphabet.
(Ops, obsol.) Opis, help.
Opera, labour.
Paras, a part.
Rostrum, a beak of a ship.
Sal, salt.

Plural.

Aquæ, medicinal springs.
Auxilia, auxiliary troops.
Bona, property.
Carcères, the barriers of a race course.
Castra, a camp.
Comitia, assembly for election.
Copias, troops.
Fortunæ, goods of fortune.
Horti, pleasure-grounds.
Literæ, an epistle.
Opes, power, wealth.
Operæ, workmen.
Partes (commonly), a party.
Rostra, the raised place from which the orators spoke.
Sales, witticisms.

51. *a.* Some nouns which have different *declensions* either throughout, or in some of their cases, are called *Heteroclites*; as, *laurus*, a laurel, 2nd and 4th declensions, G. *lauri* and

laurus, D. *lauro*, Acc. *laurum*, V. *laure*, Ab. *lauro* and *lauru*.

b. Others have not only different declensions, but also different genders, and are thus called *Heterogēnea*; as, *jocus*, a joke, masculine in the singular; *joci* and *joca*, masculine and neuter in the plural.

GENDER.

52. a. In Latin, there are two ways of distinguishing the gender; first, by the *signification*, and secondly by the *termination*. The gender of *living beings* is principally determined by the signification; but that of *inanimate things*, by the termination.

b. In English, all inanimate objects are neuter; but in Latin, on the contrary, they may be masculine, feminine, or neuter, either according to the *termination* of the genitive, or according to their *declension*; thus, *a stone*, *a cloud*, *a war*, are neuter in English; but in Latin, *lapis*, a stone, is masculine; *nubes*, a cloud, feminine; and *bellum*, a war, neuter; according to the subjoined rules.

RULES TO FIND THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

GENERAL RULES ACCORDING TO THE SIGNIFICATION.

53. a. *Masculine*. The names of *Males*, and nouns denoting the employments of men, are *masculine*; as, *pater*, a father; *scriba*, a scribe. The names also of *winds* and *months*, *rivers* and *mountains*, are masculine.

b. There are some nouns which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave. So, *operæ*, slaves or day-labourers; *vigiliæ*, watches by night; *excubiæ*, watches by day or night; *noxia*, guilty persons; *copiæ*, troops; though applied to men, are always feminine, on account of their termination.

c. Many names of rivers and mountains take their gender from the special rules; thus, *Albula*, *Ætna*, are feminine; *Plennyrium*, *Soracte*, are neuter.

54. a. *Feminine*. The names of *Females* are *feminine*; as, *mater*, a mother; *vacca*, a cow. Also the names of *countries*, *islands*, *cities* or *towns*, *jewels*, *poems*, *trees*, *herbs*, and *ships*, are feminine.

b. *Exceptions*. 1. Of the names of *Countries*, those in *um*, and the plurals in *a*, as, *Latium*, *Bactra*, are neuter, according to their termination. *Bosporus*, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, are masculine. — 2. Of *Islands*, some ending in *um*, and the Egyptian *Delta*, are neuter. *Pharos* is either masculine or feminine. — 3. Of *Towns*, the following are masculine: all plurals in *i*, as, *Veii*, *Delphi*; so also *Croto*, *Hippo*, *Narbo Martius*, *Fruvino*, *Sulmo*, *Tunes* (Tunētis). The following are neuter: those in *um*; as, *Tusculum*; plurals in *a*, genitive *orum*; as, *Susa*, *Arbēla*, *Leuctra*: indeclinables in *i* and *y*; as, *Illiturgi*, *Aty*; the towns *Argos*, *Ansur*, *Gadir*, *Tuder*, *Nepes*, *Hispal* (alls gen.). *Tibur*: the names of Italian towns in *e*, as *Præneste*, are used sometimes as feminines, and sometimes as neuters. — 4. Of *Jewels*, the following are masculine: *carbunculus*, *pyropus*, *opidius*, *beryllus*, *smaragdus*. — 5. Of *Trees*: *styrax*, *pinaster*, and *oleaster*, are masculine; *larix*, *lotus*, *rubus*, *cypressus*, are doubtful, the first two are rather feminine; nouns in *er* of the third declension, as *acer*, *siler*, *suber*, and those ending in *um*, are

neuter, and also *robur* and *thus*.—6. Of *Herbs*: *intybus*, *hellébörus*, *raphānus*, are generally masculine, rarely feminine; *cytisus* is generally masculine. In botany, the names of plants take their gender from the special rules.

55. *a. Common.* Names which signify an office or quality, that may belong either to man or woman, are of the *common* gender, that is, either masculine or feminine; as, *parens*, a father or mother.

b. The following lines comprehend nearly all the nouns of the Common Gender :

Conjux *atque* parens, infans, patruēlis *et* heres,
Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles *et* hostis,
Augur *et* antistes, juvēnis, convīva, sacerdos,
Muniquiceps, vates, adolescens, civis, *et* auctor,
Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, bosque, cānisque,
Interpresque, cliens, princeps, præs, martyr *et* obses,
Atque index, hospes, *queis* adde satelles *et* exul.

To these may be added, *contubernālis*, *artifex*, *incōla*, and *praesul*.

c. Antistes, cliens, and hospes, frequently change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistita*, *cliēnta*, *hospita*. There are some nouns which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advena*, a stranger, *agricola*, a husbandman, &c.

d. Some nouns in *tor* form the feminine in *trix*; as, *victor*, *victrix*. Others in *us* or *er* form their feminine in *a*; as, *coquus*, *coqua*; *magister*, *magistra*.

56. *a. Epicene.* The names of *wild-beasts*, *birds*, *fishes*, and *insects*, are said to be of the *epicene* gender, because they have only one termination to express both sexes; thus *passer*, a sparrow, both male and female. When any particular sex is intended, the word *mas*, *mascula*, or *femina*, is usually added; as *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *feminā passer*, a female sparrow.

b. Words belonging to this gender usually follow the gender of their termination; thus, *passer* is masculine because nouns in *er* are masculine; and *aquila*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a*, of the first declension, are feminine.

57. *Doubtful.* Some few words are of the *doubtful* gender; that is, they are used either as masculine or feminine, without regard to the sex; as, *anguis*, a snake; *dama*, a deer.

58. *Neuter.* The names of letters are *neuter*; as, *O* (*longum*). Also, indeclinable substantives, as, *gummi*; and all infinitives, imperatives, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively, are *neuter*.

SPECIAL RULES FOR THE GENDER ACCORDING TO THE TERMINATION.

THE FIRST SPECIAL RULE.

59. *a.* Nouns not increasing in the genitive; as, *nubes, nubis*, are *feminine*.

Exceptions.

b. MASCULINES. — Nouns in *nis* are masculine: —

Cum *callis, cassis, caulisque, comēta, planēta, Axis, cenchris, collis, follis, fascis, equālis, Fustis, mensis, piscis, postis, sentis et ensis, Orbis, torris, vectis, vepres, vermis et unguis.*

To these may be added, — *Adria*, the Adriatic sea; nouns from the Greek in *as* and *es*; as, *tiāras, acināces*; the compounds of *as*, as, *centussis*.

c. Nouns in *er* and *us* are masculine. But these are *feminine*: —

Vannus, acus, ficusque, colusque, domus, manus, idus, Carbāsus, atque tribus, porticus, alvus, humus.

With many words of Greek origin; as, *abyssus, antīdōtus, atōmus, dialectus, diphthongus, erēmus, exōdus, methōdus, periōdus, pharus, synōdus*, and several others.

d. NEUTERS. — Nouns in *e* of the third declension are neuter.

Nouns in *um* and nouns undeclined are neuter.

Virus and *pelāgus* are neuter. *Vulgus*, neuter, sometimes masculine. *Specus*, masculine, feminine, and neuter.

Cacoēthes, hippōmānes, nepenthes, panāces, chaos, mēlos, ēpos, are neuter.

e. DOUBTFUL. — These are doubtful, that is, masculine or feminine: *anguis*, m. *bd-lānus, barbōtus, canālīs*, m. *clunis*, m. *corbis*, f. *cylīsus*, m. *dama*, f. *finis*, m. (*finis*, borders or territories, is always masculine,) *grossus, linter*, f. *pamptinus*, m. *pēnus, phasēus*, m. *torquis*.

Those words to which *m* is annexed are used in the masculine in preference to the feminine; and those to which *f* is annexed are feminine rather than masculine.

THE SECOND SPECIAL RULE.

60. *a.* Nouns increasing long in the genitive, as, *virtus, virtūtis*, are *feminine*.

Exceptions.

b. MASCULINES. — Nouns in *er, or, and os*, are masculine, except *cos* and *dos*, which are feminine.

Nouns of more than one syllable in *n*, *ens*, (*as*, genitive *antis*,) and the names of numbers and substances in *o*, are masculine. Add,

Sol, *ren*, *splen*, *fons*, *mons*, *pons*, *mus*, *as*, *besque*, *meridies*,
His *dens*, *sermo*, *lebes*, *magnes*, *thoraxque*, *tapesque*.

Likewise the fractional parts of the Roman *as* or pound ;
as, *quadrans*, *dodrans*.

c. NEUTERS. — Nouns of more than one syllable in *al* and *ar* are neuter. Add,

Crus, *jus*, *pus*, *rus*, *thus*, *fel*, *mel*, *vas-vasis* et *alec*,
Æs, *spinther*, *cor*, *lac*, *far*, *ver*, *os* (*oris* et *ossis*).

d. DOUBTFUL. — These are doubtful : *arrhabo*, m. *bubo*, m. *calx*, m. a heel or end, *calx*, f. lime, *limax*, f. *lynx*, f. *perdix*, f. *rudens*, m. *serpens*, *stirps*, the trunk of a tree. *Dies* is doubtful in the singular, masculine in the plural. *Animans* is of all genders.

THE THIRD SPECIAL RULE.

61. a. Nouns increasing short in the genitive, *as*, *sanguis*, *sanguinis*, are masculine.

Exceptions.

b. FEMININES. — Nouns of more than two syllables in *do* and *go* are feminine.

All nouns in *as*, gen. *adis*, and in *is*, gen. *idis*, except *lapis*, which is masculine.

Junge *pecus* (*pecūdis*), *coxendix*, *trabsque*, *supellæque*,
Appendix, *crux*, *fax*, *nex*, *nix*, *nux*, *pixque*, *filix*, *strix*,
Grando, *fides*, *compes*, *forceps*, *seges*, *arbor*, *hyemsque*,
Scobs, *carex*, *forfex*, *res*, *spes*, *sandyxque*, *tegesque*.

These also are feminine : *tomex*, *icis*, a cord ; *merges*, *itis* a handful of corn ; *smilax*, *acis*, a yew tree, or herb. *Sal* (*sālis*) is masculine, sometimes, though rarely, neuter. *Sales* (plural) always masculine, and signifies *witticisms*.

c. NEUTERS. — Nouns in *a*, *ar*, *en*, *put*, *ur*, *us*, and names of plants in *er*, are neuter, except *pecten* and *furfur*, which are both masculine.

His quoque, *marmor*, *ador*, neutris, *jungasque*, *cadaver*.
His *aequor*, *tüber*, *verber* et *uber*, *iter*.

Tüber, a kind of apple-tree, is feminine ; but *tüber*, the fruit of this tree, is masculine.

d. DOUBTFUL. — These are doubtful : *adeps*, m. *cinis*, m. *cortex*, m. *grus*, f. *hystrix*, f. *imbres*, *margo*, m. *natrix*, f. *obex*, m. *onyx*, m. *pulvis*, m. *pumex*, m. *rumex*, m. *sardonyx*, *scrobs*, m. *silex*, f. *varix*, m.

ADJECTIVES.

62. An *Adjective* is a word which expresses the *quality, size, shape, colour, number, quantity*, or any other *property* or *accident* of a noun to which it is joined; as, a *good* man; a *bad* heart; a *large* hill; a *square* table; the *green* grass; *twenty* horses; *much* noise; *this* hat.

63. In Latin there are three sorts of adjectives:—1. Of three terminations; as, *dur-us, dur-a, dur-um*, hard;—2. Of two terminations; as, *dulcis, dulce*, sweet;—3. Of one termination; as, *felix*, happy.

ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

64. *a.* When there are *three* terminations in a case, the first is masculine, the second feminine, and the third neuter.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Dūr-us,	a,	um.	N. Dur-i,	ae,	a.
G. Dur-i,	ae,	i.	G. Dur-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. Dur-o,	ae,	o.	D. Dur-is,	is,	is.
Ac. Dur-um,	am,	um.	Ac. Dur-os,	as,	a.
V. Dur-e,	a,	um.	V. Dur-i,	ae,	a.
Ab. Dur-o,	â,	o.	Ab. Dur-is.	is,	is.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Lib-er,	ĕra,	ĕrum.	N. Libĕr-i,	ae,	a.
G. Liber-i,	ae,	i.	G. Liber-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. Liber-o,	ae,	o.	D. Liber-is,	is,	is.
Ac. Liber-um,	am,	um.	Ac. Liber-os,	as,	a.
V. Lib-er,	ĕra,	ĕrum.	V. Liber-i,	ae,	a.
Ab. Liber-o,	â,	o.	Ab. Liber-is,	is,	is.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Nig-er,	ra,	rum.	N. Nĭgr-i,	ae,	a.
G. Nigr-i,	ae,	i.	G. Nigr-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. Nigr-o,	ae,	o.	D. Nigr-is,	is,	is.
Ac. Nigr-um,	am,	um.	Ac. Nigr-os,	as,	a.
V. Nig-er,	ra,	rum.	V. Nigr-i,	ae,	a.
Ab. Nigr-o,	â,	o.	Ab. Nigr-is,	is,	is.

b. *Aeger, âter, creber, glâber, integer, ludîcer, macer, niger, piger, pulcher, ruber, sacer, scaber, sinister, lacter, vafer*, reject *e* before *r* in the declension. *Dexter* sometimes retains the *e* and sometimes rejects it. *Miser* and the rest retain the *e*.

c. The masculine and neuter genders of adjectives of three terminations are declined like nouns of the second declension; and the feminine gender like nouns of the first declension.

65. *a.* The following adjectives of three terminations form the genitive in *ius*, and the dative in *i*:—*Ūnus*, one; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *sōlus*, alone; *tōtus*, the whole; as, genitive *unius*, dative *unī*.

al-ter, ěra, erum,	{ <i>the other, or</i>	} gen. <i>altĕrius</i> , dat. <i>altĕri</i> .
ŭt-er, ra, rum,	{ <i>one of two,</i>	
neut-er, ra, rum,	{ <i>either,</i>	
	<i>neither,</i>	} genitive <i>rius</i> , dative <i>ri</i> .
ali-us, a, ud,	{ <i>another, i.e.</i>	
	<i>of several,</i>	genitive <i>alius</i> , dative <i>alii</i> .

b. *Unus* has no plural, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular; as, *una literae*, a letter; *una moenia*, a wall. *Alterŭter*, the one or the other, is commonly unchanged in the first part, as, *alterutrum*; but sometimes in the genitive we find *alterius-utrius*. *Uterque, uterlibet, utervis*, &c. follow the same rule as *uter*.

66. *Ambo, ambae, ambo*, both, and *duo, duae, duo*, two, are thus declined:—

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Amb-o,		ae,	o.
G. Amb-ōrum,		ārum,	ōrum.
D. Amb-ōbus,		ābus,	ōbus.
Ac. Amb-os or o,		as,	o.
V. Amb-o,		ae,	o.
Ab. Amb-ōbus,		ābus,	ōbus.

ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

67. *a.* Adjectives of two terminations end in *is*, *e*, or in *er*, *ris*, *re*, and have the first termination masculine and feminine, and the second, neuter. They form the ablative singular in *i*; the genitive plural in *ium*; the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural in *ia*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Dul-cis,	dul-ce.	N. Dul-ces,	dul-ciā.
G. Dul-cis,	dul-cis.	G. Dul-cium,	dul-cium.
D. Dul-ci,	dul-ci.	D. Dul-cibus,	dul-cibus.
Ac. Dul-cem,	dul-ce.	Ac. Dul-ces,	dul-cia.
V. Dul-cis,	dul-ce.	V. Dul-ces,	dul-cia.
Ab. Dul-ci,	dul-ci.	Ab. Dul-cibus,	dul-cibus.

b. The following adjectives,—*ācer*, sharp; *ālācer*, brisk; *campester*, belonging to a plain; *cĕler*, swift; *cĕlēber*, renowned; *ĕquester*, belonging to a horse; *pāluster*, marshy; *pĕdester*, on foot; *puter*, putrid; *saluber*, wholesome; *sylvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *volucer*, swift of wing,—have *three* terminations in the nominative and vocative

singular, but are declined like *dulcis* in all the other cases ; as,

Singular.			Plural.	
<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>		<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. <i>Ā-cer,</i>	<i>ācris,</i>	<i>ācre.</i>	N. <i>Ā-cres,</i>	<i>ācrīā.</i>
G. <i>A-cris,</i>	<i>ācris,</i>	<i>ācris.</i>	G. <i>A-crīum,</i>	<i>acrīum.</i>
D. <i>A-cri,</i>	<i>ācri,</i>	<i>ācri.</i>	D. <i>A-crībus,</i>	<i>acrībus.</i>
Ac. <i>A-crem,</i>	<i>ācrem,</i>	<i>ācre.</i>	Ac. <i>A-cres,</i>	<i>acrīā.</i>
V. <i>A-cer,</i>	<i>ācris,</i>	<i>ācre.</i>	V. <i>A-cres,</i>	<i>acrīā.</i>
Ab. <i>A-cri,</i>	<i>ācri,</i>	<i>ācri.</i>	Ab. <i>A-crībus,</i>	<i>acrībus.</i>

c. Of these adjectives *er* is more frequently masculine than *is* in prose.

68. Comparatives end in *or* and *us*, and make *e* or *i* in the ablative singular (but *e* preferably to *i*), *um* in the genitive plural, and *a* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural ; as,

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. <i>Mēli-or,</i>	<i>mēli-ūs.</i>	N. <i>Mēli-ōres,</i>	<i>mēli-ōra.</i>
G. <i>Mēli-ōris,</i>	<i>mēli-ōris.</i>	G. <i>Mēli-ōrum,</i>	<i>mēli-ōrum.</i>
D. <i>Mēli-ōri,</i>	<i>mēli-ōri.</i>	D. <i>Mēli-ōribus,</i>	<i>mēli-ōribus.</i>
Ac. <i>Mēli-ōrem,</i>	<i>meli-us.</i>	Ac. <i>Mēli-ōres,</i>	<i>mēli-ōra.</i>
V. <i>Mēli-or,</i>	<i>meli-us.</i>	V. <i>Mēli-ōres,</i>	<i>mēli-ōra.</i>
Ab. <i>Mēli-ōre or i,</i>	<i>mēli-ōre or i.</i>	Ab. <i>Mēli-ōribus,</i>	<i>mēli-ōribus.</i>

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

69. When there is but one termination, it includes all genders. The ablative of adjectives of one termination generally ends in *e* or *i*, the genitive plural in *ium*, the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural in *ia* ; as,

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. <i>Fēl-ix,</i>	<i>fēl-ix.</i>	N. <i>Fēl-ices,</i>	<i>fēl-icīā.</i>
G. <i>Fēl-icis,</i>	<i>fēl-icis.</i>	G. <i>Fēl-icīum,</i>	<i>fēl-icīum.</i>
D. <i>Fēl-ici,</i>	<i>fēl-ici.</i>	D. <i>Fēl-icībus,</i>	<i>fēl-icībus.</i>
Ac. <i>Fēl-icem,</i>	<i>fēl-ix.</i>	Ac. <i>Fēl-ices,</i>	<i>fēl-icia.</i>
V. <i>Fēl-ix,</i>	<i>fēl-ix.</i>	V. <i>Fēl-ices,</i>	<i>fēl-icia.</i>
Ab. <i>Fēl-ice or i,</i>	<i>fēl-ice or i.</i>	Ab. <i>Fēl-icībus,</i>	<i>fēl-icībus.</i>

70. The Ablative Singular. Participles used as adjectives make the ablative in *e* or *i*; but only *e* when used as participles.

b. Of the following adjectives, *i* is preferable to *e*:—*anceps*, *duplex*, *ingens*, *memor*, *praeceps*, *simplex*, *volucris*, *triplex*, *vetus*, *par* and its compounds *compar*, *dispar*, *impar*, *separ*; also, *audax*, *atrox*, *discors*, *hebes*, *incers*, *inops*, *pervicax*, *peritax*, *repens*, *recens*, and *teres*, when used in prose. *Artifex*, *consors*, *nutrix*, *ultrix*, *victrix*, when used as adjectives, have *i* in the ablative.

c. The following have only *e* in the ablative:—*coelebs*, unmarried ; *compos*, master of ; *dives*, rich ; *aspeus*, strange ; *impos*, unable ; *impūbis*, beardless ; *juvenis*, young ; *pau-per*, poor ; *pubis*, marriageable ; *senex*, old ; *sospes*, safe ; *superstes*, surviving ; also the compounds of *color*, *corpus*, *cupis*, and *pes* ; as, *concolor*, of the same colour ; *tricorpor*, three-bodied ; *tricuspis*, three-pointed ; *tripes*, three-footed.

71. *a. Neuter Plural.* Adjectives and participles having *i*, or *e* and *i*, in the ablative, have *ia* in the neuter plural, except comparatives.

b. Vetus makes *vetera*; *plures*, *plura* (sometimes *pluria*); *complures*, *complura* and *compluria*; *dives* makes *ditia*; *victrix*, *ultrix*, and *nutrix*, though properly feminine substantives, have a neuter in the plural as well as a feminine; as, *victrices*, *victicia*.

c. All those adjectives that have *e* only in the ablative, have no neuter plural; also, adjectives of one termination in *er*, *es*, *or*, *os*, and *sex*, whether the ablative ends in *i*, or *e* and *i*, have seldom a neuter plural; as, *puber*, *degener*, *uber*; *ales*, *locuples*, *denses*, *reses*; *memor*, *concolor*, *bicorpor*; *compos*, *impos*, *exos*; *artifex*, &c.; also *comis*, *consors*, *exors*, *inops*, *particeps*, *princeps*, *pubis*, *impubis*, *reduz*, *sons*, *insons*, *supplex*, and *vigil*.

72. *a. The Genitive Plural.* Adjectives having *ia* in the neuter plural have *ium* in the genitive plural.

b. But adjectives that have only *e* in the ablative, or have no neuter plural, make *um* in the genitive plural; with these, *dives*, *quadruplex*, *vetus*, *uber*, and the compounds of *caput*, *capio*, *facio*, *genus*, and *color*; as, *anceps*, *praeceps*, *artifex*, *degener*, *concolor*.

c. Caeter or *caetërus*, the rest, is rarely used in the nominative singular masculine.

d. Plus is neuter in the singular and a substantive; in the plural it is an adjective, and of all genders.

Sing. N. V. *Plus*; G. *Pluris*; D. *is wanting*; Ac. *Plus*; Ab. *Plure*.

Plu. N. V. *Plures*, *plura*, seldom *pluria*; G. *Plurium*; D. *Pluribus*; Ac. *Plures*, *plura*, seldom *pluria*; Ab. *Pluribus*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

73. *Numeral* adjectives are of several kinds. The *Cardinal* express a number absolutely (how many, *quot*), and are, as it were, the *kinges* upon which the others turn; as, *unus*, one; *duo*, two. The *Ordinal* numbers (in which order, *quotus*?) denote the *order* or *succession* in which any number of persons or things is mentioned; as, *primus*, the first. The *Distributive* denote how many to each (*quoteni*?) as, *terni*, three at a time. The *Multiplicative* signify how many fold (*quotuplex*?) as, *triplex*, threefold. The *Proportional* signify how many times more (*quotuplus*?) as, *duplo*, by twice as much. The *Adverbial* numerals answer to the question, How many times (*quoties*?) as, *ter*, three times.

74. *a. A List of Adjective and Adverbial Numerals.*

CARDINAL. <i>One, two, &c.</i>	ORDINAL. <i>First, second, &c.</i>	DISTRIBUTIVE. <i>One by one, &c.</i>	ADVERBIAL. <i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
I 1 Unus	Primus	Singul	Semel
II 2 Duo	Secundus	Bin	Bis
III 3 Tres	Tertius	Terni	Ter
IV 4 Quattuor	Quartus	Quaterni	Quater
V 5 Quinque	Quintus	Quini	Quinques
VI 6 Sex	Sextus	Seni	Sexies
VII 7 Septem	Septimus	Septeni	Septies
VIII 8 Octo	Octavus	Octoni	Octies
IX 9 Nove	Nonus	Noveni	Novies
X 10 Decem	Decimus	Deni	Dieces
XI 11 Undecim	Undecimus	Undeni	Undecies
XII 12 Duodecim	Duodecimus	Duodeni	Duodecies
XIII 13 Tredecim	Tertius- Quartus- Quintus- Sextus- Septimus- Octavus- Nonus- } decimus	Terni Quaterni- Quini- Seni- Septeni Octoni- Noveni- } deni	Tredecies Quatuordecies Quindecies Sedecies Decies et septies Duodevicies Undevicies
XIV 14 Quattuordecim			
XV 15 Quindecim			
XVI 16 Sedecim			
XVII 17 Septendecim			
XVIII 18 Octodecim			
XIX 19 Novendecim or Undeviginti			
XX 20 Viginti	Vicesimus	Viceni	Vicies
XXX 30 Triginta	Tricesimus	Triceni	Tricies
XL 40 Quadraginta	Quadragesimus	Quadrageseni	Quadragesies
L 50 Quinquaginta	Quinquagesimus	Quinquageseni	Quinquagesies
LX 60 Sexaginta	Sexagesimus	Sexageseni	Sexagesies
LXX 70 Septuaginta	Septuagesimus	Septuageseni	Septuagesies
LXXX 80 Octoginta	Octogesimus	Octogeseni	Octogesies
XC 90 Nonaginta	Nonagesimus	Nonageseni	Nonagesies

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
IC 99 Undecentum	Undecentesimus	Undecentēni	Undecenties
C 100 Centum	Centesimus	Centēni	Centies
CC 200 Ducenti,* <i>ae, a</i>	Ducentesimus	Ducentēni	Ducenties
CCC 300 Trecenti	Trecentesimus	Trecentēni	Trecenties
CCCC 400 Quadringenti	Quadringentesimus	Quadringentēni	Quadringenties
D or IO 500 Quingenti	Quingentesimus	Quingentēni	Quingenties
DC 600 Sexcenti	Sexcentesimus	Sexcentēni	Sexcenties
DCC 700 Septingenti	Septingentesimus	Septingentēni	Septingenties
DCCC 800 Octingenti	Octingentesimus	Octingentēni	Octingenties
DCCCC 900 Noningenti	Noningentesimus	Nongentēni	Noningenties
M or CIO 1000 Mille	Millesimus	Millēni	Millies

MM or CIO CIO 2000 duo millia or bis mille, IOO 5000 quinque millia, CCIOO 10,000. CCCIOO 100,000 centum millia; centies millesimus, centena millia, centies millies.

b. The C (centum) reversed thus (J) is called apostrophus, and with a perpendicular line preceding it (IO), or drawn together as D, signifies 500. In every multiplication with ten a fresh apostrophus is added; thus IOJ=5000, IOJJ=50,000. When a number is to be doubled, as many C's are put before the horizontal line as there are J's behind it thus IOJ=5000; CCIOJ=10,000.

c. In the combination of cardinal numbers, from twenty to one hundred, the smaller with *et*, or the larger without *et*, precedes; as, *quatuor et viginti*, or *viginti quatuor*. Above one hundred, the larger number precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*, *centum et duo*, *centum duo*. From 11 to 19 the smaller number is placed first without *et*; as, *duodecim*, *sedecim*, &c.

d. *Unde* and *duode* are joined to most even numbers increasing by tens, to express one or two less; as, *undeviginti* for 19; *duodeviginti* for 28; *undequadragesima* for 39.

e. *Mille*, one thousand, is indeclinable; as *cum mille militibus*; but the plural *millia* (always of more than one thousand) is a neuter noun of the third declension, and is followed by a noun in the genitive case; as, "*Tria millia hominum*," "*cum tribus millibus militum*."

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

75. There are *two* degrees of comparison; the *comparative* and the *superlative*.

76. The *positive* state expresses the *simple* quality; as, *durus*, hard; *brevis*, short.

77. a. The *comparative* degree expresses a greater degree of the quality than the positive; as, *durior*, harder; *brevior*, shorter.

b. The comparative is used to denote the superiority of one person or thing over another person or thing, or over several, whether belonging to the *same* class or to *different* classes. When *different* classes are meant, the comparative is followed, in English, by *than*; as, "The Greeks were braver *than* the Persians." When the *same* class is intended, the comparative is followed by *of*; as, "The wiser *of* the two."

c. The comparative is formed from the first case of the positive that ends in *i*, by adding *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter; as,

Durus, G. *duri*, Comparative, *durior*, *durius*.
Brevis, D. *brevi*, Comparative, *brevior*, *brevius*.

78. a. The *superlative* expresses the *highest* degree of the quality; as, *durissimus*, the hardest; *brevissimus*, the shortest.

b. The superlative compares one thing or aggregate with, at least, two others belonging to the same class.

* A shorter form also occurs; thus, *ducēni*, 200; *trecenti*, 300; *quadringēni*, 400; *quingēni*, 500; *sexcenti*, 600; *septingēni*, 700; *octingēni*, 800; *nongenti*, 900.

c. The superlative is formed from the first case of the positive that ends in *i*, by adding *ssimus*, *a*, *um*; as,
 Gen. *Duri*, Superlative, *duri-ssimus*, *a*, *um*, hardest.
 Dat. *Brevi*, Superlative, *brevi-ssimus*, *a*, *um*, shortest.

79. The following are exceptions from this rule:—

1. Adjectives in *er*, form the comparative in the regular manner, but the *superlative* by adding *rĭmus* to the nominative; as, *pulcher*, fair, *pulchri-or*, fairer, *pulcherrimus*, fairest.

2. Some adjectives in *lis* form the superlative in *lĭmus*, *a*, *um*; as,

Difficilis, difficult, *difficillimus*.
Dissimilis, unlike, *dissimillimus*.
Facilis, easy, *facillimus*.
Gracilis, slender, *gracillimus*.

Humilis, low, *humillimus*.
Imbecillis, weak, { *imbecillimus*.
 imbecillissimus
Similis, like, *simillimus*.

The other adjectives in *lis* form the comparative and superlative in the regular manner.

3. Adjectives in *dĭcus*, *fĭcus*, *lŏquus*, and *vŏlus*, form the comparative in *entior*, and the superlative in *entissimus*; as, *maledĭcus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*. But *mirificissimus*, from *mirificus*, is also found in ancient writers. *Veridĭcus* has no comparison.

But those in *dĭcus* (*i* long) are compared regularly; as, *pudĭcus*, bashful, *pudĭcior*, *pudĭcissimus*.

4. The following adjectives are regular in the comparative, but irregular in the superlative:—

Dexter, <i>right</i> ,	dexterior,	dextĭmus.
Exter, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior,	extrĕmus or extĭmus.
Infĕrus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior,	infĭmus or imus.
Matŭrus, <i>ripe</i> ,	maturior,	maturrĭmus or maturissimus.
Posterus, <i>behind</i> ,	posterior,	postrĕmus or postŭmus.
Sinister, <i>left</i> ,	sinisterior,	sinistĭmus.
Supĕrus, <i>high</i> ,	superior,	suprĕmus or summus.

5. The following are compared irregularly:—

Bŏnus, <i>good</i> ,	mĕlior <i>better</i> ,	optĭmus, <i>best</i> .
Dĭves, <i>rich</i> ,	dĭtior, <i>richer</i> ,	dĭtissimus, <i>richest</i> .
Egĕnus, <i>needy</i> ,	egentior, <i>needier</i> ,	egentissimus, <i>neediest</i> .
Magnus, <i>great</i> ,	major, <i>greater</i> ,	maxĭmus, <i>greatest</i> .
Mĕlus, <i>bad</i> ,	pejor, <i>worse</i> ,	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
Multus, <i>much</i> ,	plus (neut.), <i>more</i> ,	plurĭmus, <i>most</i> .
Nĕquam, <i>wicked</i> ,	nequior, <i>more wicked</i> ,	nequissimus, <i>most wicked</i> .
Parvus, <i>little</i> ,	minor, <i>less</i> ,	minĭmus, <i>least</i> .

6. The following are compared by *magis* and *maximè* : — Adjectives in *us* pure, that is, in *us* with a vowel before it ; as, *arduus*, difficult, *magis arduus*, more difficult, *miximè arduus*, most difficult. But adjectives ending in *quus*, and also these words—*assiduus*, *exiguus*, *strenuus*, are formed in the regular manner ; as, *antiquus*, *antiquior*, *antiquissimus*.

A high degree of excess or defect is denoted by *longè*, *multò* ; as, *multò doctior*.
Quàm before the superlative signifies *as much as possible*.

The comparative may frequently be rendered in English by *too*, *very*, *unusually* ; as, " *Quòd et liberius vivebat*," because he was living *too* extravagantly.

Adjectives defective in Comparison.

7. The following adjectives have no *positive* : —

<i>Citerior</i> , nearer, citimus, from citra.	<i>Potior</i> , more powerful, potissimus.
<i>Deterior</i> , worse, deterrimus.	<i>Propior</i> , nearer, proximus, from prope.
<i>Interior</i> , more inward, intimus, from intra.	<i>Ulterior</i> , farther, ultimus, from ultra.
<i>Ocior</i> , swifter, ocissimus.	
<i>Prior</i> , former, primus, from prae.	

8. The following have no *comparative* : —

<i>Bellus</i> , spruce, bellissimus.	<i>Invitus</i> , unwilling, invitissimus. [mus.]
<i>Diversus</i> , different, diversissimus.	<i>Meritus</i> , deserving, meritissimus.
<i>Falsus</i> , false, falsissimus.	<i>Novus</i> , new, novissimus.
<i>Fidus</i> , faithful, fidissimus.	<i>Nuperus</i> , late, nuperrimus.
<i>Inclitus</i> , renowned, inclitissimus.	<i>Par</i> , equal, parissimus.
<i>Invictus</i> , invincible, invictissimus.	<i>Persuasus</i> , persuaded, persuasissimus.
<i>Invisus</i> , unseen, invisissimus.	<i>Sacer</i> , holy, sacerrimus.
	<i>Vetus</i> , old, veterrimus.

9. The following want the *superlative* : —

<i>Adolescens</i> , young, adolescentior.	<i>Longinquus</i> , distant, longinquior.
<i>Agilis</i> , nimble, agilior.	<i>Opimus</i> , rich, opimior.
<i>Arcānus</i> , secret, arcanior.	<i>Proclivis</i> , down-hill, proclivior. [pronior.]
<i>Caecus</i> , blind, caecior.	<i>Pronus</i> , inclined downwards, [rior.]
<i>Declivis</i> , downward, declivior.	<i>Propinquus</i> , near, propinquior.
<i>Diuturnus</i> , lasting, diuturnior.	<i>Salutaris</i> , wholesome, salutarior.
<i>Dēsēs</i> , idle, desidior.	<i>Satur</i> , full, saturior.
<i>Docilis</i> , teachable, docilior.	<i>Senex</i> , old, senior.
<i>Ingens</i> , great, ingentior.	
<i>Juvenis</i> , young, junior.	

Likewise adjectives ending in *ālis*, *ilis*, and verbals in *ilis*, have no superlative; as *regālis*, *civilis*, *febilis*.

To supply the superlative of *juvenis* or *adolescens*, we say, *minimus natus*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natus*, the oldest.

¹⁰. These have only a comparative: *anterior*, former; *satior*, better; *sequior*, worse.

80. Many adjectives admit of no comparison; as,

a. Adjectives whose signification cannot be increased or diminished: Participles in *rus* and *dus*, and adjectives ending in *bundus*, *dicus*, *imus*, *inus*, *ivus*, *orus*, *stus*, and *plex*; as, *amatūrus*, *amandus*, *vagabundus*, *modicus*, *legitimus*, *matūrinus*, *fugitivus*, *canōrus*, *campester*, *supplex*; but *simplex* has both a comparative and superlative. *Tempestivus* has a comparative, and *festivus* both degrees.

b. Adjectives compounded of nouns and verbs; as, *versicolor*, *degener*; — the compounds of *fero* and *gero*; as, *frugifer*, *corniger*; of *animus*, *jugum*, *somnus*, *arma*; as, *magnanimus*, *bifugus*, *incomnis*, *inermis*; of *prae* and *per*; as, *praedives*, *perdoctus*; except *praestans*, *praeclarus*.

c. Diminutives which, in themselves, involve a sort of comparison; as, *parvulus*, very small. Possessives; as, *paternus*, *maternalis*. Gentile adjectives; as, *Romanus*, *Poenus*. Many other adjectives are not compared; as, *albus*, *almus*, *apricus*, *cicur*, *canus*, *claudus*, *crispus*, *dispar*, *jejūnus*, *memor*, *mirus*, *mutus*, *mutulus*, *nefastus*, *praeceps*.

d. The comparison of some words is supplied by words of a kindred meaning; as, *vetus*, *vetustior*; *egenus*, *egentior*, *egentissimus*.

PRONOUNS.

81. A *Pronoun* is a word used to supply the place of a noun; as, "When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, *he* turned *his* arms against *his* country."

82. *a*. In Latin, pronouns are generally divided into

1. <i>Personal</i> .	iste, <i>that</i> . is, <i>he</i> . idem, <i>the same</i> .	4. <i>Gentile</i> or <i>Patrial</i> . nostras, <i>of our country</i> . vestras, <i>of your country</i> . cujas, <i>of what country?</i>
Ego, <i>I</i> . tu, <i>thou</i> . sui, <i>of himself</i> .	3. <i>Possessive</i> . meus, <i>my</i> . tuus, <i>thy</i> . suus, <i>his</i> . noster, <i>our</i> . vester, <i>your</i> .	5. <i>Relative</i> . qui, <i>who</i> .
2. <i>Demonstrative</i> . hic, <i>this</i> . ille, <i>he</i> . ipse, <i>himself</i> .		6. <i>Interrogative</i> . quis, <i>who?</i> cujus, <i>whose?</i>

b. *Personal* pronouns are substitutes for nouns; *demonstratives* point out some person or thing; *possessives* denote possession; *gentiles* or *patrials* denote one's country; *relatives* refer to something going before; *interrogatives* are employed in asking questions.

c. *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, are used for substantives, the rest are properly adjectives.

d. Four only have a vocative, — *tu*, *meus*, *noster*, *nostras*.

e. *Hic*, *ille*, *ipse*, *aliquis*, *quicumque*, *quilibet*, *quisque*, are, in some instances, found in the vocative.

83. Pronouns have *two* numbers, like nouns, and *three* persons in each number, namely,

Singular.

Ego, I, the first person, represents the speaker.

Tu, thou, the second person, represents the person spoken to.

Ille, illa, illud, the third person, represents the person or thing spoken of.

Plural.

Nos, we, is the first person.

Vos, ye or you, is the second person.

Illi, they, is the third person.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

84. *a. Singular.*

N. *Ego, I.*
G. *Mēi, of me.*
D. *Mīhi, to me.*
Ac. *Mē, me.*
V. wanting.
Ab. *Me, from or by me.*

Plural.

N. *Nōs, we.*
G. *Nostrūm, vel -ī, of us.*
D. *Nōbis, to us.*
Ac. *Nos, us.*
V. wanting.
Ab. *Nobis, from or by us.*

b. Nostrūm and estrūm are contractions for nostrōrum, nostrārum, and estrōrum, estrārum. Nostrī and estrī signify belonging to, or towards us; nostrūm and estrūm mean amongst us; as, quis nostrūm, which of us? Nostrūm and estrūm are generally used after partitives, numerals, comparatives, and superlatives; nostrī and estrī after other words. Mīhi is sometimes contracted into mē by the Poets.

85. *Singular.*

N. *Tū, thou.*
G. *Tūi, of thee.*
D. *Tībi, to thee.*
Ac. *Tē, thee.*
V. *O! Tu, O thou!*
Ab. *Te, with thee.*

Plural.

N. *Vōs, you.*
G. *Vestrūm, or -ī, of you.*
D. *Vōbis, to you.*
Ac. *Vos, you.*
V. *O! Vos, O you!*
Ab. *Vobis, with you.*

86. *a. Sūi, of himself, herself, itself, themselves*, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined: —

Singular and Plural.

<p>G. <i>Sui, of himself,</i> D. <i>Sībi, to himself,</i> Ac. <i>Se, himself,</i> Ab. <i>Se, by himself,</i></p>	}	<p><i>herself, itself, themselves.</i></p>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---	--------------------------------------------

b. To the cases of these three pronouns (except the genitive plural and the nominative tu) mei may be added, to express the English self; as, Egomet, I myself, metmet, mihimet, memet, noamet, &c. The pronoun ipse is also frequently added; as, mihimet ipse, &c. The nominative tu does not admit met, tute being used for tuomet.

c. The accusative and ablative singular have a reduplication in the same sense; as, mecum te, &c. Cum, with, is affixed to the ablatives me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quo, quā, &c. as, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, &c.

87. a. *Singular.*

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Hic, <i>this</i> ,	haec,	hōc.
G. Hujus,	hujus,	hujus.
D. Hūic,	hūic,	hūic.
Ac. Hunc,	hanc,	hoc.
V. wanting.		
Ab. Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.

Plural.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Hī, <i>these</i> ,	hae,	haec.
G. Hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum.
D. Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
Ac. Hos,	has,	haec.
V. wanting.		
Ab. Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

b. The force of the demonstrative *hic*, is strengthened by the affixes *ce* and *cine*; as, *hicce*, *haecce*, *hocce*; *hiccine*, *haeccine*, *hoccine*. Of the former, those cases only are in common use which end in *c* or *s* before *ce*: and of the latter, only the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular are in use; and the neuter plural, *haeccine*, which is rare. Of *istic* and *illuc*, declined *istic*, *istae*, *istoc* (or *istuc*); *illic*, *illae*, *illoc* (or *illuc*), only those cases which end in *c*, namely, the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular are in use; and the neuter plural *istaec* (or *isthaec*), and *illaec*.

88. a. *Ille*, he, *illa*, she, *illud*, it, that, and *iste*, that, are thus declined:—

Singular.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Illē,	illā,	illū.
G. Illius,	illius,	illius.
D. Illi,	illi,	illi.
Ac. Illum,	illam,	illud.
V. Illē,	illā,	illū.
Ab. Illō,	illā,	illō.

Plural.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Illi,	illae,	illā.
G. Illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum.
D. Illis,	illis,	illis.
Ac. Illōs,	illās,	illā.
V. Illi,	illae,	illā.
Ab. Illis,	illis,	illis.

b. For *illi* and *illis*, we sometimes find *olli* and *ollis*. *Ille* has a voc. according to Zumpt.

c. In the same manner *is* is declined, *ipse*, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself, except that the nominative and accusative cases singular make *ipsum* in the neuter gender.

89. a. *Singular.*

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Is, <i>he</i> ,	ēā, <i>she</i> ,	id, <i>it</i> .
G. Ejus,	ejus,	ejus.
D. Ei,	ei,	ei.
Ac. Eum,	eam,	id.
V. wanting.		
Ab. Eō,	ēā,	eō.

Plural.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Ii, <i>they</i> ,	eae,	ēā.
G. Eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum.
D. Iis or eis (in all genders).		
Ac. Eōs,	eās,	ea.
V. wanting.		
Ab. Iis or eis (in all genders).		

b. *Idem*, *eādem*, *idem*, the same, is a compound of *is*, *ea*, *id*, and is thus declined:—

Singular.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Īdem,	ēādem,	idem.
G. Ejūsdem,	ejūsdem,	ejūsdem.
D. Eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem.
Ac. Eundem,	eandem,	idem.
V. wanting.		
Ab. Eōdem,	ēādem,	eōdem.

Plural.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Īdem,	eādem,	ēādem.
G. Ēōrundem,	ēārundem,	ēōrundem.
D. Īsdem or eīsdem (all gen.)		
Ac. Eōsdem,	eāsdem,	ēādem.
V. wanting.		
Ab. Īsdem or eīsdem (all gen.)		

90. *a. Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, are declined like *durus*; but *meus*, in the vocative, makes *mi, mea, meum*. *Noster* has a regular vocative, *noster, nostra, nostrum*; but *tuus, suus*, and *vester*, have no vocative.

b. Pte is affixed to the ablative of these possessives, to denote *own*; as, *suapte manus*, with his own hand.

c. Cujus, cuja, cujum, whose, is used only in the nominative and accusative singular.

d. Cujâ, ablative singular, and *cujae*, nominative plural, are found only among old writers.

e. Nostras, vestras, and cujas, are declined, nominative *nostras*, genitive *nostrâtis*, like *felix*.

91. Singular.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Quî, <i>who</i> , quae, quôd.		
G. Cûjus, cûjus, cûjus.		
D. Cûi, cûi, cûi.		
Ac. Quem, quam, quod.		
V. wanting.		
Ab. Quo, quâ, quo or quî.		

Plural.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Quî, quae, quae.		
G. Quorum, quarum, quorum.		
D. Quîbus or queîs (in all gen.)		
Ac. Quos, quas, quae.		
V. wanting.		
Ab. Quîbus or queîs (all gen.)		

Quî is of all genders.

92. *a. Quis, quae, quid* or *quod*, who, which, what? is declined like *quî, quae, quod*; but such of its compounds as end in *quis*, except *quisquis*, have *qua* in the feminine singular and neuter plural; while those which only begin with *quis*, as *quisnam*, have *quae* and not *qua*.

b. Zumot (136) gives both *qua* and *quae* in the fem. sing. and neut. plur. of compounds ending in *quis*.

c. Siquis, nequis, numquis, are frequently used separately; thus, *si quis, ne quis, num quis*.

d. In quidam and quisquam, the *m* is changed into *n* before *d* and *q*; as in the accusative *quendam, quenquam*.

Compounds of <i>qui</i> and <i>quis</i> .			
<i>c.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Quidam,	quedam,	quoddam or quiddam.	G. Cujusdam.
N. Quivis,	quaevis,	quodvis or quidvis.	G. Cuiusvis.
N. Quicunque,	quaecunque,	quodcunque.	G. Cujuscunque.
N. Quilibet,	quaelibet,	quodlibet or quidlibet.	G. Cuiuslibet.
N. Aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid or aliquod.	G. Alicujus.
N. Equis,	ecqua,	ecquid.	G. Eccujus.
N. Quisnam,	quanam,	quidnam or quodnam.	G. Cuiusnam.
N. Quisquis,	quaequae,	quidquid or quicquid.	G. Cujusquae.
N. Quisque,	quaeque,	quodque or quidque.	G. Cujusque.
N. Quisquam,	quaequam,	quidquam or quodquam.	G. Cuiusquam.
N. Quispiam,	quaepiam,	quodpiam, quidpiam, } or quippiam.	G. Cuiuspiam.
N. Unusquis-que. }	unaquaeque,	unumquodque or } unumquidque. }	G. Uniscujus-que.

f. The compounds of *qui*, namely, *quidam, quisvis, quicunque, quilibet*, have generally *quibus*, and not *quicis*, in the dative and ablative plural.

quod, both in the simple and compounds, is used as an adjective agreeing with a ; but *quid* as a substantive governing the genitive: as, *aliquid vinum*, any ; *aliquid vini*, something of wine.

93. Declension of difficult Pronouns combined with Substantives.

a. *Idem vir*, the same man.*Singular.*

N. *Idem vir.*
G. *Ejusdem viri.*
D. *Eidem viro.*
Ac. *Eundem virum.*
V. _____
Ab. *Eodem viro.*

Plural.

N. *Idem viri.*
G. *Eorundem virorum.*
D. *Isdem viris.*
Ac. *Eosdem viros.*
V. _____
Ab. *Isdem viris.*

b. *Eadem puella*, the same girl.

N. *Eadem puella.*
G. *Ejusdem puellae.*
D. *Eidem puellae.*
Ac. *Eandem puellam.*
V. _____
Ab. *Eadem puellâ.*

N. *Eaedem puellae.*
G. *Earundem puellarum.*
D. *Eladem puellis.*
Ac. *Easdem puellas.*
V. _____
Ab. *Eladem puellis.*

c. *Idem tempus*, the same time.

N. *Idem tempus.*
G. *Ejusdem temporis.*
D. *Eidem tempori.*
Ac. *Idem tempus.*
V. _____
Ab. *Eodem tempore.*

N. *Eâdem tempora.*
G. *Eorundem temporum.*
D. *Isdem temporibus.*
Ac. *Eâdem tempora.*
V. _____
Ab. *Isdem temporibus.*

d. *Quod mare*, which sea.*Singular.*

N. *Quod mare.*
G. *Cujus maris.*
D. *Cui mari.*
Ac. *Quod mare.*
V. _____
Ab. *Quo mari.*

Plural.

N. *Quae maria.*
G. *Quorum marium.*
D. *Quibus maribus.*
Ac. *Quae maria.*
V. _____
Ab. *Quibus maribus.*

e. *Quaedam pars*, a certain part.*Singular.*

N. *Quaedam pars.*
G. *Cujusdam partis.*
D. *Cuidam parti.*
Ac. *Quandam partem.*
V. _____
Ab. *Quâdam parte.*

Plural.

N. *Quaedam partes.*
G. *Quarundam partium.*
D. *Quibusdam partibus.*
Ac. *Quasdam partes.*
V. _____
Ab. *Quibusdam partibus.*

f. *Aliqua mulier*, any woman.*Singular.*

N. *Aliqua mulier.*
G. *Allicujus mulieris.*
D. *Allicui mulieri.*
Ac. *Aliquam mulierem.*
V. _____
Ab. *Aliquâ muliere.*

Plural.

N. *Aliquae mulieres.*
G. *Allicumarum mulierum.*
D. *Allicuius mulieribus.*
Ac. *Aliquas mulieres.*
V. _____
Ab. *Allicuius mulieribus.*

g. *Quodnam genus*, what race?*Singular.*

N. *Quodnam genus.*
G. *Cujusnam generis.*
D. *Cuinam generi.*
Ac. *Quodnam genus.*
V. _____
Ab. *Quonam genere.*

Plural.

N. *Quaenam genera.*
G. *Quorumnam generum.*
D. *Quibusnam generibus.*
Ac. *Quaenam genera.*
V. _____
Ab. *Quibusnam generibus.*

h. *Quodque officium*, every duty.*Singular.*

N. *Quodque officium.*
G. *Cujusque officii.*
D. *Cuique officio.*
Ac. *Quodque officium.*
V. _____
Ab. *Quoque officio.*

Plural.

N. *Quaeque officia.*
G. *Quorumque officiorum.*
D. *Quibusque officiis.*
Ac. *Quaeque officia.*
V. _____
Ab. *Quibusque officiis.*

VERBS.

94. A *Verb* is a word which *affirms* or *expresses* the *state*, *action*, or *suffering*, of some person or thing; as, *I am*, *I teach*, *I am taught*. A verb is also used to *command*, *exhort*, *entreat*, *request*, or *ask a question*; as, "*Be silent*;" "*Study diligently*;" "*Spare me*;" "*Lend me the book*;" "*Have you written the letter*?"

95. Verbs have *two* Voices, the *Active* ending in *o*, and the *Passive* in *or*.

96. Verbs in *o* are either *transitive* or *intransitive*.

a. A *Transitive* verb expresses an action passing from an *agent* or *doer* to some *object*; as, "*Praeceptor me docet*," the master teaches me.

Here *praeceptor* is the agent, and *me* the object in the accusative case.

b. An *Intransitive* verb expresses either action *confined* to the agent; as, *Curro*, I run: or neither action nor suffering, but simply *existence* or the *state* of the nominative; as, *Sum*, I am; *Sto*, I stand.

97. a. A *Passive* verb ends in *or*, and generally implies, that the nominative is the *object* or receiver of an action done by some agent expressed or understood; as, "*Johannes a praepatore docetur*," John is taught by the master.

b. *Transitive* verbs have a regular passive voice, but *intransitive* verbs are used only *impersonally* in the passive.

98. a. A *Deponent* verb is that which, under a passive form, has either a transitive or an intransitive signification: as, *Sequor*, I follow; *Glorior*, I boast.

A *Deponent* verb is so called, because it has deposed or *laid aside* the passive sense.

b. A *Defective* verb is one that is used only in some of the moods and tenses.

c. An *Impersonal* verb is one that is used only in the third person singular.

d. *Neuter-passives* are so called from having a passive perfect tense; as, *Audeo*, *ausus sum*, to dare.

e. Some neuter verbs have participles with a passive form but active signification; as, *praeceps*, one who has dined. *Exosus* and *perosus* are active and transitive. *Pertaeus* is used as an impersonal; as, *pertaeus est*.

f. *Frequentatives* express the *repetition* of the act or state denoted by the primitive, and end in *ito*; as, *Clamito*, I cry frequently, from *clamo*, I cry.

g. *Inchoatives* or *inceptives* express the *beginning* of an act or state, and end in *sco*; as, *Calesco*, I grow warm, from *caleo*, I am warm. Some words end in *sco* that are not inchoatives; as, *disco*, I learn.

h. *Desideratives* end in *urio* and express *desire*; as, *Esurio*, I desire to eat, I hunger; but some verbs in *urio*, of the first and fourth conjugations, are not desideratives.

i. *Diminutives* end in *illo*, and denote a *trifling insignificant* action; as, *Cantillo*, I hum, from *cantare*.

j. The properties of Verbs are—Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

Of Moods.

99. The *Mood* of a verb is the particular *form* which it assumes, in order to express the *manner* in which the being, action, or passion, is represented.

100. There are generally reckoned *five* moods; the *Indicative*, the *Imperative*, the *Potential*, the *Subjunctive*, and the *Infinitive*.

1. The *Indicative* mood affirms in a direct and positive manner respecting an action or event; as, *Ille docet*, he teaches; or it asks a question; as, *Docet ille?* does he teach?

2. The *Imperative* mood commands, exhorts, entreats, or requests; as, *Ite*, go; *Studete*, study; *Parce mihi*, spare me; *Eamus*, let us go.

3. The *Potential* mood implies the possibility, liberty, power, will, or duty, to do or suffer an action, and is known by the signs—*may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*; as, *Amem*, I may love, &c.

4. The *Subjunctive* mood has the same terminations as the *Potential*, but generally the signification of the *Indicative*. It is *subjoined* to another verb in the same sentence, with which it is connected by some conjunction or indefinite word, expressed or understood; as, "*Eram miser cum amarem*," I was miserable when I loved.

5. The *Infinitive* mood simply expresses the *action*, *suffering*, or *state of being*, without any number, person, or nominative case, and is generally known, in English, by the sign *to*; as, *Audire*, to hear.

Tense, Numbers, and Persons.

101. *Tense* is a term used to distinguish the *time* in which an action or state is represented.

102. There are *six* tenses; the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Future Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect* or *Past Perfect*, and the *Future Perfect*.

1. The *Present tense* speaks of what is doing or going on in present time ; as, *Scribo*, I write, am writing, or do write.

2. The *Imperfect tense* represents an action or event which *was going on and not completed*, at a certain time past ; as, *Scribēbam*, I was writing.

3. The *Future Imperfect* represents an action or event which is yet to come ; as, *Scribam*, I shall or will write.

4. The *Perfect tense* represents an action or event either as just finished, or as finished some time ago ; as, *Scriptsi*, I have written, or I wrote.

5. The *Pluperfect* expresses an action or event which *was past before some other past action or event specified in the sentence, and to which it refers* ; as, *Scriptseram*, I had written.

6. The *Future Perfect* denotes that a future action or event will be completed at, or before another future action or event ; as, *Scriptsero*, I shall have written.

103. Verbs have *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*, agreeing with a noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

104. In each number there are *three* persons ; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>First Pers.</i> Ego amo, <i>I love.</i>	Nos amāmus, <i>we love.</i>
<i>Second Pers.</i> Tu amas, <i>thou lovest.</i>	Vos amātis, <i>you or ye love.</i>
<i>Third Pers.</i> Ille amat, <i>he, she, or it loves.</i>	Illi amant, <i>they love.</i>

Gerunds, Supines, and Participles.

105. *a.* *Gerunds* and *Supines* are a kind of verbal nouns.

b. The active voice has three gerunds, ending in *dī, dō, dum* ; as, *amandī*, of loving ; *amando*, for, by, in loving ; *amandum*, to love.

c. The Gerunds are considered as the cases of a Verbal Substantive of the second declension, neuter gender, having no plural nor vocative singular. The gerund in *dī* is considered as the genitive case, the gerund in *dō*, as the dative or ablative, and the gerund in *dum*, as the nominative or accusative. The *gerunds* are so called, because they represent an action *in gerundo* (gerendo) as being *carried on*.

106. *a.* There are two supines ; one active, ending in *um* ; as, *amātum*, to love ; the other generally passive, ending in *u* ; as, *amatu*, to be loved.

b. Supines are Verbal Substantives of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases singular. The supine in *um* is the accusative, and that in *u* the

ablative. The supine is a noun, so named, perhaps, from its being always under government, having no nominative case.

107. A *Participle* is derived from a verb, and while it shows that the action or state implied by the verb is either continuing or finished, it has gender, number, and case, like an adjective.

108. Each voice has two participles; the Active has a *present* and *future*; the Passive has a *perfect* and *future*.

1. The Active *Present* ends in *ans* or *ens*, and shows that the action is *going on*; as, *amans*, loving; *docens*, teaching.

2. The Active *Future* ends in *rus*, and signifies a *likelihood* or *design* of doing a thing; as, *amatūrus*, to love, or about to love.

109. 1. The Passive *Perfect* (or *Present*); as, *amātus*, being loved, or having been loved.

2. The Passive *Future* ends in *dus*, and signifies the *necessity*, *possibility*, or *certainty* of something to be done; as, *amandus*, to be loved.

This Participle is also called the *Gerundive*.

110. *a.* The *Present Active Participle* is declined like *felix*, all the other participles like *durus*.

b. Active and Neuter Participles have, in Latin, no *perfect* tense; consequently, we cannot express literally the English *perfect* participle, *having loved*, &c.; we must use a conjunction and the pluperfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

c. Verbs *deponent* have a *perfect* participle with an *active* signification; as, *locūtus* having spoken.

CONJUGATION.

111. *a.* *Conjugation*, in Grammar, denotes the regular arrangement of a verb in all its variations of mood, tense, number, and person.

b. The *principal parts* of a verb, from which the other tenses may be obtained, are *four*; the *present*, *perfect*, *supine*, and *infinitive*.

c. The first person of the Present of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

d. The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *radical* letters; as, *am* in *amo*. The rest are called the *termination*; as, *abāmus* in *amabamus*. All the letters which come before *āre*, *ēre*, *īre*, or *īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting the radical letters before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

THE VERB *SUM*.

112. *a.* The verb *Sum*, I am, is irregular, and is thus conjugated : —

The Principal Parts — *Sum*, *fui*, *esse*, *to be*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Sum*, *I am*.

Es, *thou art*.

Est, *he is*.

P. *Sūmus*, *we are*.

Estis, *you are*.

Sunt, *they are*.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Ēram*, *I was*.

Eras, *thou wast*.

Erat, *he was*.

P. *Erāmus*, *we were*.

Erātis, *you were*.

Erant, *they were*.

FUTURE IMPERF. TENSE.

S. *Ēro*, *I shall or will be*.

Eris, *thou shalt or wilt be*.

Erit, *he shall or will be*.

P. *Erīmus*, *we shall or will be*.

Erītis, *you shall or will be*.

Erunt, *they shall or will be*.

PERFECT TENSE.

S. *Fūi*, *I have been*.

Fuisti, *thou hast been*.

Fuit, *he has been*.

P. *Fūimus*, *we have been*.

Fuistis, *you have been*.

Fuērunt *velfuēre*, *they have been*.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Fūēram*, *I had been*.

Fueras, *thou hadst been*.

Fuerat, *he had been*.

P. *Fūērāmus*, *we had been*.

Fuerātis, *you had been*.

Fuērant, *they had been*.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

S. *Fūēro*, *I shall have been*.

Fueris, *thou wilt have been*.

Fuerit, *he will have been*.

P. *Fūērīmus*, *we shall have been*.

Fuerītis, *you will have been*.

Fuerint, *they will have been*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. *Ēs*, *esto*, *be thou*.

Esto, *let him be*.

P. *Ēstē*, *Estōtē*, *be you*.

Sunto, *let them be*.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — *may*, *can*.

S. *Sim*, † *I may or can be*.

Sis, *thou mayst or canst be*.

Sit, *he may or can be*.

P. *Simus*, *we may or can be*.

Sītis, *you may or can be*.

Sint, *they may or can be*.

PERFECT TENSE, — *may* *have*.

S. *Fūērim*, *I may have been*.

Fueris, *thou mayst have been*.

Fuerit, *he may have been*.

P. *Fūērīmus*, *we may have been*.

Fuerītis, *you may have been*.

Fuerint, *they may have been*.

* It may sometimes be serviceable for the learner to prefix the pronouns to the verbs; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are; *vos estis*, you are; *illi sunt*, they are.

† *Sim* is also used as an imperative for *let me be*, and *simus*, for *let us be*; *sit*, let him be; *sint*, let them be.

IMPERFECT TENSE, — *might, could, would, should.*

S. Essem <i>vel</i> forem, <i>I</i>	} <i>might, could, would, or should be.</i>
Esset <i>vel</i> fores, <i>thou</i>	
Esset <i>vel</i> foret, <i>he</i>	
P. Essēmus <i>v. forem</i> us <i>we</i>	
Essētis <i>vel</i> forētis, <i>you</i>	
Essent <i>vel</i> forent, <i>they</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE, — *might, could, would, should have.*

S. Fūissem, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should have been.</i>
Fuisses, <i>thou mightst,</i>	
Fuisset, <i>he might,</i>	
P. Fuissēmus, <i>we might,</i>	
Fuissētis, <i>you might,</i>	
Fuissent, <i>they might,</i>	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated in the same manner as the Potential, but the signification varies according to the conjunction prefixed ; as,

PRESENT TENSE.

Si Sim, *if I be, or may, or should be.*
Cūm Sim, *since I am.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Si Essem *vel* forem, *if I were, or might, could, would, or should be.*
Cūm Essem, *since I was.*

PERFECT TENSE.

Si Fuerim, *if I have been.*
Cūm Fuerim, *since I was, or have been.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Si Fulsem, *if I had been, or might, &c. have been.*
Cūm Fulsem, *since I had been.*

Instead of a Subjunctive Future, the participle *futurus* is used with *sim* ; as, " Si *futurus sim.*" If I may be about to be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Esse, *to be.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Fōre *vel* fūtūrum esse, *to be about to be.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Fuisse, *to have been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fūtūrum fuisse, *to have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. — Futūrus, a, um, *about to be.*

b. From the participle *futurus* and *sum*, a new conjugation is formed ; thus, *futurus sum, futurus eram, &c.*

c. The compounds, *absum, adsum, desum, insum, intersum, obsum, prae-sum, subsum, supersum*, are conjugated like *sum* ; except that *insum* and *subsum* have no perfect nor tenses formed from it. *Prosum* also takes a *d* in those persons which in *sum* begin with an *e* ; as, *es, es, prodes, proderam.*

THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

113. There are four Conjugations of Verbs, distinguished by the vowel before *re* in the Infinitive Mood.

The First Conjugation makes *āre* long ; as, *amāre.*

The Second Conjugation makes *ēre* long ; as, *monēre.*

The Third Conjugation makes *ēre* short ; as, *regere.*

The Fourth Conjugation makes *īre* long ; as, *audire.*

*Formation of the Tenses in the Active Voice.**

INDICATIVE.

114. *a.* The *Imperfect* is formed from the Present by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *abam*, in the 2nd into *bam*, in the 3rd and 4th into *ebam*.

b. The *Future imperfect* is formed from the Present by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *abo*, in the 2nd into *bo*, in the 3rd and 4th into *am*.

c. The *Pluperfect* is formed from the Perfect by changing *i* into *eram*.

d. The *Future perfect* is formed from the Perfect by changing *i* into *ero*.

IMPERATIVE.

115. *a.* The *Imperative* is formed from the Present Infinitive by taking away *re*.

b. Except *dico*, *duco*, *facio*, and *fero*, which make *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*; and in their compounds, except those compounds of *facio*, which change *s* into *i*; as, *conficio*, *confice*.

POTENTIAL.

116. *a.* The *Present* is formed from the Present Indicative by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *em*, in the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th into *am*.

b. The *Imperfect* is formed from the Present Infinitive by adding *m*.

c. The *Perfect* is formed from the Perfect Indicative by changing *i* into *erim*.

d. The *Pluperfect* is formed from the Perfect Indicative by changing *i* into *issem*.

INFINITIVE.

117. *a.* The *Present* is formed from the Present Indicative by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *āre*, in the 2nd and 4th into *re*, in the 3rd by changing *o* or *io* into *ere*.

b. The *Future imperfect* is formed from the Supine by changing *m* into *rum* and adding *esse*.

c. The *Perfect* is formed from the Perfect Indicative by changing *i* into *isse*.

d. The *Future perfect* is formed from the Supine by changing *m* into *rum*, and adding *fuisse*.

e. The *Gerunds* are formed from the Participle present by changing *s* into *di*, *do*, and *dum*.

* Rules for the principal parts of verbs are given under the formation of the Perfect and Supine.

f. The *Participle present* is formed from the Present Indicative by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation into *ans*, in the 2nd into *ns*, in the 3rd and 4th into *ens*.

g. The *Participle future* is formed from the Supine by changing *m* into *rus*.

h. When there is no Supine there is no Participle future.

i. Verbs defective in the Perfect have no Supine.

118. A Tabular View of the Formation of the Tenses.

1. FROM THE PRESENT.					
Pres.	Indicative.		Potential.	Participle.	Gerunds.
1. Am-o.	Imp. ābam.	Fut. Imp. ābo.	Pres. em.	Pres. ans.	andi.
2. Mone-o.	bam.	bo.	am.	ns.	ndi.
3. Reg-o.	ēbam.	am.	am.	ens.	endi.
4. Audi-o.	ēbam.	am.	am.	ens.	endi.
2. FROM THE PERFECT.					
	Indicative.		Potential.		Infin.
1. Amav-i	Pluper. eram.	Fut. Perf. ero.	Perf. erim.	Pluperf. issem.	Perf. isse.
2. Monu-i.	eram.	ero.	erim.	issem.	isse.
3. Rex-i.	eram.	ero.	erim.	issem.	isse.
4. Audiv-i.	eram.	ero.	erim.	issem.	isse.
3. FROM THE SUPINE.					
Supine.	Fut. Imp. Infin.	Fut. Perf. Infin.	Fut. Part.		
1. Amātu-m.	rum esse.	rum fuisse.	rus.		
2. Monu-m.	rum esse.	rum fuisse.	rus.		
3. Rectu-m.	rum esse.	rum fuisse.	rus.		
4. Auditu-m.	rum esse.	rum fuisse.	rus.		
4. FROM THE PRESENT INFINITIVE.					
Pres. Infinitive.	Imperative.		Imperf. Potential.		
1. Amāre.	ama.		amārem.		
2. Monēre.	mone.		monērem.		
3. Regēre.	rege.		regērem.		
4. Audire.	audi.		audirem.		

ACTIVE VOICE.

119. a. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Amo, āmāvi, āmātum, āmāre, *to love*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — <i>am, do.</i> (I love, am loving, or do love.)		PERFECT TENSE, — <i>have, did.</i> (I loved, did love, or have loved.)	
S. Ām-o, <i>I love,</i>	} <i>am loving or do love.</i>	S. Ām-āvi, <i>I loved,</i>	} <i>or have loved.</i>
Am-ās, <i>thou lovest,</i>		Am-āvisti, <i>thou lovedst</i>	
Am-āt, <i>he loves,</i>		Am-āvit, <i>he loved,</i>	
P. Ām-āmūs, <i>we love,</i>		P. Ām-āvimus, <i>we loved,</i>	
Am-ātis, <i>you love,</i>		Am-āvistis, <i>you loved,</i>	
Am-ant, <i>they love,</i>		Am-āvērunt } <i>they</i> vel āvēre, } <i>loved,</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was.*

- S. Am-ābam, *I was loving.*
 Am-ābas, *thou wast loving.*
 Am-ābat, *he was loving.*
 P. Am-ābāmus, *we were loving.*
 Am-ābātis, *you were loving.*
 Am-ābant, *they were loving.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—
shall, will.

- S. Am-ābo, *I shall*
 Am-ābis, *thou shalt*
 Am-ābit, *he shall*
 P. Am-ābīmus, *we shall*
 Am-ābītis, *you shall*
 Am-ābunt, *they shall*

} *or will love.*PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had.*

- S. Am-āvēram, *I had loved.*
 Am-āvēras, *thou hadst loved.*
 Am-āvērat, *he had loved.*
 P. Am-āvērāmus, *we had loved.*
 Am-āvērātis, *you had loved.*
 Am-āvērant, *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—
shall or will have.

- S. Am-āvēro, *I shall*
 Am-āvērīs, *thou wilt*
 Am-āvērīt, *he will*
 P. Am-āvērīmūs, *we shall*
 Am-āvērītis, *you will*
 Am-āvērint, *they will*

} *have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Am-ā, *am-āto, love thou.*
 Am-āto, *let him love.*

Plur. Am-ātē, *am-atōtē, love you or ye.*
 Am-ānto, *let them love.*

This mood has no first person singular or plural, the first persons, sing. and plur. of the *potential* present are used instead; thus, let us love, *amēmus*. The third persons sing. and plur. of the *potential* present, are also sometimes used for the imperative.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can.*

- S. Am-ēm, *I may or*
 Am-ēs, *thou mayst or*
 Am-ēt, *he may or*
 P. Am-ēmūs, *we may or*
 Am-ētis, *you may or*
 Am-ent, *they may or*

} *can love.*PERFECT TENSE,—*may have.*

- S. Am-āvērim, *I may*
 Am-āvērīs, *thou mayst*
 Am-āvērīt, *he may*
 P. Am-āvērīmūs, *we may*
 Am-āvērītis, *you may*
 Am-āvērint, *they may*

} *have loved.*

The sign *can* is not used in the perfect tense.

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should.*

- S. Am-ārēm, *I might,*
 Am-ārēs, *thou mightst,*
 Am-ārēt, *he might,*
 P. Am-ārēmūs, *we might,*
 Am-ārētis, *you might,*
 Am-ārent, *they might,*

} *could, would, or should love.*PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have.*

- S. Am-āvīsem, *I might,*
 Am-āvīsses, *thou mightst*
 Am-āvīset, *he might,*
 P. Am-āvīssēmūs, *we might*
 Am-āvīssētis, *you might*
 Am-āvīssent, *they might*

} *could, would, or should have loved.*

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the conjunction prefixed.

PRESENT TENSE.

Si Amem, *if I love, or may love.*
Cum Amem, *since, or when I love.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Si Amārem, *if I loved, or should love.*
Cum Amarem, *since, or when I loved, or
was loving.*

PERFECT TENSE.

Si Amāvērīm, *if I loved, or have loved.*
Cum Amaverīm, *since, or when I loved.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Si Amāvissem, *if I had loved, or should
have loved.*
Cum Amavissem, *since, or when I had loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Am-āre, *to love.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Am-ātūrum esse, *to be about
to love.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Am-āvisse, *to have loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Am-ātūrum fuisse, *to have been
about to love.*

GERUNDS.

Genit. Am-andi, *of loving.*
D. & Ab. Am-ando, *for, by, in
loving.*
Ac. & N. Am-andum, *to love.*

SUPINE.

Am-ātum, *to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Am-ans, antis, *loving.*

FUTURE.

Am-ātūrus,* a, um, *about to
love.*

δ. The tenses of the verb *Sum*, when joined with the participle in *rus*, denote that a person has a *mind to do*, or is *upon the point of doing* something. Hence arises a new conjugation called *Periphrastic*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. Am-atūrus (a, um) sum, *I am about
to love, or I have a mind to love.*

IMPERF. Am-atūrus eram, *I was about to
love.*

FUT. IMP. Am-atūrus ero (not fuero), *I
shall be about to love.*

PERF. Am-atūrus fui, *I was, or have been
about to love.*

PLUPERF. Am-atūrus fueram, *I had been
about to love.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRES. Am-atūrus sim, *I may be about to
love.*

IMPERF. Am-atūrus essem, *I might be about
to love.*

PERF. Am-atūrus fuerim, *I may have been
about to love.*

PLUPERF. Am-atūrus fulssem, *I might have
been about to love.*

The Subjunctive is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Am-aturum esse, *to be about to love.*

PERF. Am-aturum fuisse, *to have been
about to love.*

* *Amaturus* is used with a masculine, *amatura* with a feminine, and *amaturum* with a neuter noun.

120. a. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Mōnĕo, mōpui, mōnitum, mōnĕre, to advise.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*am, do.*
(I advise, am advising, or do advise.)

S. Mōn-ĕo, <i>I advise,</i>	} <i>am advising, or do advise.</i>	
Mon-es, <i>thou adviseſt,</i>		
Mon-et, <i>he adviſes,</i>		
P. Mon-ĕmŭs, <i>we adviſe,</i>		
Mon-ĕtĭs, <i>you adviſe,</i>		
Mon-ent, <i>they adviſe,</i>		

PERFECT TENSE,—*have, did.*
(I advised, did advise, or have advised.)

S. Mon-ŭi, <i>I adviſed,</i>	} <i>or have adviſed.</i>	
Mon-u-iſti, <i>thou adviſedſt</i>		
Mon-uit, <i>he adviſed,</i>		
P. Mon-ŭimŭs, <i>we adviſed,</i>		
Mon-u-iſtiſ, <i>you adviſed,</i>		
Mon-ŭĕrunt, <i>they</i>	} <i>adviſed,</i>	
vel Mon-ŭĕre,		

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was.*

S. Mon-ĕbām, <i>I waſ</i>	} <i>adviſing.</i>	
Mon-ĕbāſ, <i>thou waſt</i>		
Mon-ĕbāt, <i>he waſ</i>		
P. Mon-ĕbāmŭſ, <i>we were</i>		
Mon-ĕbātĭſ, <i>you were</i>		
Mon-ĕbant, <i>they were</i>		

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had.*

S. Mon-ŭĕram, <i>I had</i>	} <i>adviſed.</i>	
Mon-uĕraſ, <i>thou haſt</i>		
Mon-uĕrat, <i>he had</i>		
P. Mon-uĕrāmŭſ, <i>we had</i>		
Mon-uĕrātĭſ, <i>you had</i>		
Mon-uĕrant, <i>they had</i>		

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—
ſhall or will.

S. Mon-ĕbo, <i>I ſhall</i>	} <i>or will adviſe.</i>	
Mon-ĕbiſ, <i>thou ſhalt</i>		
Mon-ĕbit, <i>he ſhall</i>		
P. Mon-ĕbimŭſ, <i>we ſhall</i>		
Mon-ĕbitĭſ, <i>you ſhall</i>		
Mon-ĕbunt, <i>they ſhall</i>		

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—
ſhall or will have.

S. Mon-ŭĕro, <i>I ſhall</i>	} <i>have adviſed.</i>	
Mon-ŭĕriſ, <i>thou wilt</i>		
Mon-ŭĕrit, <i>he will</i>		
P. Mon-ŭĕrimŭſ, <i>we ſhall</i>		
Mon-ŭĕritĭſ, <i>you will</i>		
Mon-ŭĕrint, <i>they will</i>		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Mon-ĕ, mon-ĕto, <i>advise thou.</i>
	Mon-ĕto, <i>let him advise.</i>
Plur.	Mon-ĕto, mon-ĕto, <i>advise you.</i>
	Mon-ento, <i>let them advise.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can.*

S. Mon-ĕām, <i>I may</i>	
Mon-ĕāſ, <i>thou mayſt</i>	
Mon-ĕāt, <i>he may</i>	
P. Mon-ĕāmŭſ, <i>we may</i>	
Mon-ĕātĭſ, <i>you may</i>	
Mon-ĕant, <i>they may</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE, — <i>might, could, would, should.</i>		PLUPERFECT TENSE, — <i>might could, would, should have.</i>	
S. Mon-ërem, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should advise.</i>	S. Mon-üssessem, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should have advised.</i>
Mon-ëres, <i>thou mightst,</i>		Mon-uisses, <i>thou mightst</i>	
Mon-ëret, <i>he might,</i>		Mon-uisset, <i>he might,</i>	
P. Mon-ërëmus, <i>we might,</i>		P. Mon-uissëmus, <i>we might</i>	
Mon-ërëtis, <i>you might,</i>		Mon-uissëtis, <i>you might,</i>	
Mon-ërent, <i>they might,</i>		Mon-uissent, <i>they might,</i>	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the conjunction prefixed.

PRESENT TENSE.		PERFECT TENSE.	
SI Moneam, <i>if I advise, or may advise.</i>		SI Monüërim, <i>if I advised, or have advised.</i>	
Cùm Moneam, <i>since, or when I advise.</i>		Cùm Monuerim, <i>since, or when I advised.</i>	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
SI Monërem, <i>if I advised, or should advise.</i>		SI Monuisssem, <i>if I had advised, or should have advised.</i>	
Cùm Monërem, <i>since, or when I advised, or was advising.</i>		Cùm Monuisssem, <i>since, or when I had advised.</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.		PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.	
Mon-ëre, <i>to advise.</i>		Mon-üssisse, <i>to have advised.</i>	
FUTURE IMPERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Mon-ütürum esse, <i>to be about to advise.</i>		Mon-ütürum fuisse, <i>to have been about to advise.</i>	

GERUNDS.

Genit. Mon-endi, *of advising.*
D.&Ab. Mon-endo, *for, by, in advising.*
Ac. & N. Monendum, *to advise.*

SUPINE.

Mon-ütum, *to advise.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Mon-ens, entis, *advising.*

FUTURE.

Mon-üturus, a, um, *about to advise.*

b. The tenses of the verb *Sum*, when joined with the participle in *rus*, denote that a person has a mind to do, or is upon the point of doing something. Hence arises a new conjugation called *Periphrastic*.

Indicative Mood.—Present Tense. *Monüturus sum*, &c.

121. a. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts — Rēgo, rēxi, rectum, rēgērē, *to rule*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — *am, do.*
(I rule, am ruling, or do rule.)

S. Rēg-ō, <i>I rule,</i>	} <i>am ruling, or do rule.</i>
Rēg-is, <i>thou rulest,</i>	
Rēg-it, <i>he rules,</i>	
P. Rēg-īmūs, <i>we rule,</i>	
Rēg-ītis, <i>you rule,</i>	
Rēg-unt, <i>they rule,</i>	

PERFECT TENSE, — *have, did.*
(I ruled, did rule, or have ruled.)

S. Rēx-ī, <i>I ruled</i>	} <i>or have ruled.</i>
Rex-isti, <i>thou ruledst</i>	
Rex-it, <i>he ruled</i>	
P. Rex-īmūs, <i>we ruled</i>	
Rex-istis, <i>you ruled</i>	
Rex-ērunt, <i>they</i>	
vel Rex-ēre, <i>ruled</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE, — *was.*

S. Rēg-ēbam, <i>I was ruling.</i>
Reg-ēbās, <i>thou wast ruling.</i>
Reg-ēbāt, <i>he was ruling.</i>
P. Reg-ēbāmūs, <i>we were ruling.</i>
Reg-ēbātis, <i>you were ruling.</i>
Reg-ēbant, <i>they were ruling.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE, — *had.*

S. Rēx-ēram, <i>I had ruled.</i>
Rex-ēras, <i>thou hadst ruled.</i>
Rex-ērat, <i>he had ruled.</i>
P. Rex-ērāmus, <i>we had ruled.</i>
Rex-ērātis, <i>you had ruled.</i>
Rex-ērant, <i>they had ruled.</i>

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE, —
shall or will.

S. Rēg-am, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>or will rule.</i>
Rēg-ēs, <i>thou shalt</i>	
Rēg-ēt, <i>he shall</i>	
Rēg-ēmus, <i>we shall</i>	
Rēg-ētis, <i>you shall</i>	
Rēg-ent, <i>they shall</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, —
shall or will have.

S. Rēx-ēro, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>have ruled.</i>
Rex-erīs, <i>thou wilt</i>	
Rex-erīt, <i>he will</i>	
P. Rex-ērīmus, <i>we shall</i>	
Rex-erītis, <i>you will</i>	
Rex-erint, <i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Rēg-ē, reg-īto, *rule thou.*Reg-ito, *let him rule.*Plur. Reg-īte, reg-ītōte, *rule you.*Reg-unto, *let them rule.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — *may or can.*

S. Rēg-am, <i>I may</i>	} <i>or can rule.</i>
Rēg-ās, <i>thou mayst</i>	
Rēg-āt, <i>he may</i>	
P. Reg-āmus, <i>we may</i>	
Reg-ātis, <i>you may</i>	
Reg-ant, <i>they may</i>	

PERFECT TENSE, — *may have.*

S. Rēx-ērim, <i>I may</i>	} <i>have ruled.</i>
Rex-erīs, <i>thou mayst</i>	
Rex-erīt, <i>he may</i>	
P. Rex-ērīmus, <i>we may</i>	
Rex-ērītis, <i>you may</i>	
Rex-erint, <i>they may</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE,— <i>might, could, would, should.</i>		PLUPERFECT TENSE,— <i>might, could, would, or should have.</i>	
S. Rēg-ērem, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should rule.</i>	S. Rēx-issem, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should have ruled.</i>
Rēg-ērēs, <i>thou mightst,</i>		Rex-isses, <i>thou mightst,</i>	
Reg-ēret, <i>he might,</i>		Rex-isset, <i>he might,</i>	
P. Reg-ērēmus, <i>we might,</i>		P. Rex-issēmus, <i>we might,</i>	
Reg-ērētis, <i>you might,</i>		Rex-issētis, <i>you might,</i>	
Reg-ērent, <i>they might,</i>		Rex-issent, <i>they might,</i>	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the conjunction prefixed.

PRESENT TENSE.		PERFECT TENSE.	
Si Regam, <i>if I rule, or may rule.</i>		Si Rexerim, <i>if I ruled, or have ruled.</i>	
Cū Regam, <i>since, or when I rule.</i>		Cū Rexerim, <i>since, or when I ruled.</i>	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
Si Regerem, <i>if I ruled, or should rule.</i>		Si Rexissem, <i>if I had ruled, or should have ruled.</i>	
Cū Regerem, <i>since, or when I ruled, or was ruling.</i>		Cū Rexissem, <i>since, or when I had ruled.</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.
Rēg-ērē, <i>to rule.</i>	Rex-isse, <i>to have ruled.</i>
FUTURE IMPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
Rec-tūrum esse, <i>to be about to rule.</i>	Rec-tūrum fuisse, <i>to have been about to rule.</i>

GERUNDS.

Genit. Reg-endi, *of ruling.*
D.&Ab.Reg-endo, *for, by, in ruling.*
Ac.&N.Reg-endum, *to rule.*

SUPINE.

Rec-tum, *to rule.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Rēg-ens, entis, *ruling.*

FUTURE.

Rec-tūrus, a, um, *about to rule.*

δ. The tenses of the verb *Sum*, when joined with the participle in *rus*, denote that a person has a mind to do, or is upon the point of doing something. Hence arises a new conjugation called *Periphrastic*.

Indicative Mood.—Present Tense. *Rectūrus sum, &c.*

122. *a.* THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.The Principal Parts—Audio, audivi, auditum, audire, *to hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — *am, do.*
(I hear, am hearing, or do hear.)

S. Aud-iō, *I hear,*
 Aud-is, *thou hearest,*
 Aud-īt, *he hears,*
 P. Aud-īmus, *we hear,*
 Aud-itis, *you hear,*
 Aud-iunt, *they hear,*

} *am hearing or do hear.*PERFECT TENSE, — *have, did.*
(I heard, did hear, or have heard.)

S. Aud-īvi, *I heard,*
 Aud-īvisti, *thou heardst,*
 Aud-īvit, *he heard,*
 P. Aud-īvīmus, *we heard,*
 Aud-īvistis, *you heard,*
 Aud-īvērunt } *they*
 vel Aud-īvēre, } *heard,*

} *or have heard.*IMPERFECT TENSE, — *was.*

S. Aud-iēbām, *I was*
 Aud-iēbās, *thou wast*
 Aud-iēbāt, *he was*
 P. Aud-iēbāmus, *we were*
 Aud-iēbātis, *you were*
 Aud-iēbant, *they were*

} *hearing.*PLUPERFECT TENSE, — *had.*

S. Aud-ivēram, *I had*
 Aud-ivēras, *thou hadst*
 Aud-ivērat, *he had*
 P. Aud-ivērāmus, *we had*
 Aud-ivērātis, *you had*
 Aud-ivērant, *they had*

} *heard.*FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE, —
shall or will.

S. Aud-iām, *I shall*
 Aud-iēs, *thou shalt*
 Aud-iēt, *he shall*
 P. Aud-iēmus, *we shall*
 Aud-iētis, *you shall*
 Aud-ient, *they shall*

} *or will hear.*FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, —
shall or will have.

S. Aud-ivēro, *I shall*
 Aud-ivēris, *thou wilt*
 Aud-ivērit, *he will*
 P. Aud-ivērīmus, *we shall*
 Aud-ivēritis, *you will*
 Aud-ivērint, *they will*

} *have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Aud-i, aud-īto, *hear thou.*Aud-īto, *let him hear.*Plur. Aud-īte, aud-ītōte, *hear you.*Aud-iunto, *let them hear.*

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — *may, can.*

S. Aud-iām, *I may*
 Aud-iās, *thou mayst*
 Aud-iāt, *he may*
 P. Aud-iāmus, *we may*
 Aud-iātis, *you may*
 Aud-iant, *they may*

} *or can hear.*PERFECT TENSE, — *may have.*

S. Aud-ivērim, *I may*
 Aud-ivēris, *thou mayst*
 Aud-ivērit, *he may*
 P. Aud-ivērīmus, *we may*
 Aud-ivēritis, *you may*
 Aud-ivērint, *they may*

} *have heard.*

IMPERFECT TENSE,— <i>might, could, would, should.</i>		PLUPERFECT TENSE,— <i>might, could, would, should have.</i>	
S. Aud-irem, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should hear.</i>	S. Aud-ivissem, <i>I</i>	} <i>might, could, would, or should have heard.</i>
Aud-ires, <i>thou mightst,</i>		Aud-ivisses, <i>thou</i>	
Aud-iret, <i>he might,</i>		Aud-ivisset, <i>he</i>	
P. Aud-irēmus, <i>we might,</i>		P. Aud-ivissēmus, <i>we</i>	
Aud-irētis, <i>you might,</i>		Aud-ivissētis, <i>you</i>	
Aud-irent, <i>they might,</i>		Aud-ivissent, <i>they</i>	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the conjunction prefixed.

PRESENT TENSE.		PERFECT TENSE.	
Si Audiam, <i>if I hear, or may hear.</i>		Si Audivērim, <i>if I heard, or have heard.</i>	
Cūm Audiam, <i>since, or when I hear.</i>		Cūm Audiverim, <i>since, or when I heard.</i>	
IMPERFECT TENSE.		PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
Si Audirem, <i>if I heard, or should hear.</i>		Si Audivissem, <i>if I had heard, or should have heard.</i>	
Cūm Audirem, <i>since, or when I heard, or was hearing.</i>		Cūm Audivissem, <i>since, or when I had heard.</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.		PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.	
Aud-irĕ, <i>to hear.</i>		Aud-ivisse, <i>to have heard.</i>	
FUTURE IMPERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
Aud-itūrum esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i>		Aud-itūrum fuisse, <i>to have been about to hear.</i>	

GERUNDS.

Genit. Aud-iendi, *of hearing.*
D. & Ab. Aud-iendo, *for, by, in hearing.*
Ac. & N. Aud-iendum, *to hear,*

SUPINE.

Aud-itum, *to hear.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Aud-iens, entis, *hearing.*

FUTURE.

Aud-itūrus, a, um, *about to hear.*

ð. The tenses of the verb *Sum*, when joined with the participle in *rus*, denote that a person has a *mind to do*, or is *upon the point of doing* something. Hence arises a new conjugation called *periphrastic*.

Indicative Mood.—Present Tense. *Auditūrus sum*, &c.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Formation of the Tenses in the Passive Voice.

123. 1. The *Present* Indicative is formed from the Present Indicative Active by adding *r*.

2. The *Imperfect* Indicative is formed from the Imperfect Indicative Active by changing *m* into *r*.

3. The *Future Imperfect* Indicative is formed from the Future Imperfect Active by adding *r* in the first and second Conjugations, and by changing *m* into *r* in the third and fourth Conjugations.

4. The *Present* and *Imperfect* Potential are formed from the Present and Imperfect Potential Active by changing *m* into *r*.

5. The *Perfect* and *Pluperfect* Tenses of the Indicative, Potential, and Infinitive Moods, and the *Future Perfect* of the Indicative, are formed from the Participle Perfect with some tense of the verb *Sum*.

6. The *Imperative* is the same as the Infinitive Active.

7. The *Infinitive Present* is formed from the Infinitive Present Active by changing final *e* in the first, second, and fourth Conjugations into *i*, and in the third *ēre* into *i*.

8. The *Future Imperfect* Infinitive is the Supine in *um*, with *iri*.

9. The *Future Perfect* Infinitive is the Participle Future Passive, with the verb *Fuisse*.

10. The *Supine* is formed from the Active by taking away *m*.

11. The Participle *Perfect* (or Present) is formed from the Supine in *um* by changing *m* into *s*.

12. The Participle *Future* is formed from the Participle Present Active by changing *s* into *dus*.

124. a. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—*Amor, amātus sum vel fui, amāri, to be loved.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*am.*

S. Am-ōr, <i>I am loved.</i>	P. Am-āmūr, <i>we are loved.</i>
Am-āris } <i>thou art loved.</i>	Am-āmīni, <i>you are loved.</i>
vel ārē, } <i>loved.</i>	Am-antur, <i>they are loved.</i>
Am-ātūr, <i>he is loved.</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was.*

S. Am-ābar, <i>I was loved.</i>	P. Am-ābāmūr, <i>we were</i>	} <i>loved.</i>
Am-ābāris } <i>thou wast</i>	Am-ābāmīni, <i>you were</i>	
vel ābārē, } <i>loved.</i>	Am-ābantur, <i>they were</i>	
Am-ābātūr, <i>he was loved.</i>		

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will be.*

S. Am-ābor, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>or will be</i>	P. Am-ābīmūr, <i>we shall</i>	} <i>or will be</i>
Am-ābēris } <i>thou</i>		Am-ābīmīni, <i>you shall</i>	
vel ābēre, } <i>shalt</i>		Am-ābuntur, <i>they shall</i>	
Am-ābītūr, <i>he shall</i>			

PERFECT TENSE,—*was, have been.*

S. Am-ātus sum <i>vel fui, I have been loved.</i>
Am-ātus es <i>vel fuisti, thou hast been loved.</i>
Am-ātus est <i>vel fuit, he has been loved.</i>
P. Am-āti sūmus <i>vel fuimus, we have been loved.</i>
Am-āti estis <i>vel fuistis, you have been loved.</i>
Am-āti sunt, <i>fuērunt vel fuēre, they have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had been.*

S. Am-ātus eram <i>vel fuēram, I had been loved.</i>
Am-ātus eras <i>vel fueras, thou hadst been loved.</i>
Am-ātus erat <i>vel fuerat, he had been loved.</i>
P. Am-āti erāmus <i>vel fuerāmus, we had been loved.</i>
Am-āti erātis <i>vel fuerātis, you had been loved.</i>
Am-āti erant <i>vel fuerant, they had been loved.</i>

* 1. The true import of *Amor* is, I am in the state of being loved; so, *Domus aedificatur*, signifies, the house is building, in a Passive sense, and not, the house is built, which would be rendered by *Domus est aedificata*; *domus aedificabatur*, the house was building, and not, was built.

2. The Perfect Participle, in all the tenses of which it forms a part, agrees in gender and number with the nominative of the verb; as, *homo amatus est, mulier amata est, mel amatum est.*

3. The tenses formed by *fui, fueram, fuero*, express more emphatically the com-

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have been.*

- S. Am-ātus ēro *vel* fūēro, *I shall have been loved.*
 Am-ātus ēris *vel* fūēris, *thou wilt have been loved.*
 Am-ātus ērit *vel* fūērit, *he will have been loved.*
 P. Am-āti ērimus *vel* fūērimus, *we shall have been loved.*
 Am-āti eritis *vel* fueritis, *you will have been loved.*
 Am-āti erunt *vel* fuerint, *they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S. Am-āre, } <i>be thou loved.</i> | P. Am-āmini, } <i>be you loved.</i> |
| am-ātor, } | am-āminor, } |
| Am-ātor, <i>let him be loved.</i> | Am-antor, <i>let them be loved.</i> |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

- | PRESENT TENSE,— <i>may, can.</i> | | IMPERF. TENSE, <i>might, could, &c.</i> | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| S. Am-er, <i>I may</i> | } <i>or can be loved.</i> | S. Am-ārer, <i>I might,</i> | } <i>could, would, or should be loved.</i> |
| Am-ēris } <i>thou mayst</i> | | Am-ārēris } <i>thou</i> | |
| <i>vel</i> ēre, } | | <i>vel</i> ārēre, } | |
| Am-ētur, <i>he may</i> | | Am-ārētur, <i>he might,</i> | |
| P. Am-ēmur, <i>we may</i> | | P. Am-ārēmur, <i>we might,</i> | |
| Am-ēmīni, <i>you may</i> | | Am-ārēmīni, <i>you might</i> | |
| Am-entur, <i>they may</i> | | Am-ārentur, <i>they might</i> | |

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have been.*

- S. Am-ātus sim *vel* fūērim, *I may have been loved.*
 Am-ātus sis *vel* fueris, *thou mayst have been loved.*
 Am-ātus sit *vel* fuerit, *he may have been loved.*
 P. Am-āti simus *vel* fuērimus, *we may have been loved.*
 Am-āti sitis *vel* fuēritis, *you may have been loved.*
 Am-āti sint *vel* fuerint, *they may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have been.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| S. Am-ātus essem <i>vel</i> fuisset, <i>I might, could, would,</i> | } <i>or should have been loved.</i> |
| Am-ātus esses <i>vel</i> fuisses, <i>thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,</i> | |
| Am-ātus esset <i>vel</i> fuisset, <i>he might, could, would,</i> | |
| P. Am-ātiessēmus <i>vel</i> fuissēmus, <i>we might, could, would</i> | |
| Am-āti essētis <i>vel</i> fuissētis, <i>you might, could, would,</i> | |
| Am-āti essent <i>vel</i> fuissent, <i>they might, could, would,</i> | |

pletion of the action than those by *sum, eram, ero*. *Amatus sum* implies the completion of an action, without reference to the precise time; *amatus fui* implies that an action has been finished some time ago. *Epistola scripta est* signifies the letter *has been* written; *Epistola scripta fuit* denotes that it *has existed* as a written one, but does not at present exist.

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the conjunction prefixed.

Present. *Si Amer*, If I be loved, or may be loved; or *Cum Amer*, since I am loved.
 Imperf. *Si Amarer*, If I were loved, or might could, would, or should be loved.
 Perfect. *Si Amatus sim*, If I have been loved, or may have been loved.
 Pluperf. *Si Amatus essem*, If I had been loved, or might, could, would, or should have been loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Am-āri, to be loved.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Am-ātum iri, to be about to be loved.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Am-ātum esse vel fuisse, to have been loved.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Am-andum fuisse, to have been about to be loved.

SUPINE.

Am-ātu, to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT.

Am-ātus, a, um, loved or being loved.

FUTURE.

Am-andus, a, um, to be loved.

b. The Participle in *dus* expresses, in the nominative, necessity or propriety; as, *Amandus sum*, I must be loved or deserve to be loved. It may be joined with all the moods and tenses of *Sum*, and hence arises a second *Periphrastic* conjugation; as,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. { Sing. *Amandus sum*, I must be loved, or deserve to be loved.
 { Plur. *Amandi sumus*, We must be loved, or we are they who deserve, &c.
 Imperf. { Sing. *Amandus eram*, I was one who ought to be loved, or deserved, &c.
 { Plur. *Amandi eramus*, we were they who ought to be loved, &c.
 Fut. Impf. { Sing. *Amandus ero*, I shall be one who will deserve, &c.
 { Plur. *Amandi erimus*, we shall be they who, &c.
 Perfect. { Sing. *Amandus fui*, I have been one who deserved, &c.
 { Plur. *Amandi fuimus*, We have been they who, &c.
 Pluperf. { Sing. *Amandus fueram*, I had been one who deserved, &c.
 { Plur. *Amandi fueramus*, We had been they who, &c.

c. The neuter with *esse*, and the dative of the person, expresses the necessity under which a person is to do or suffer a thing; as, *tibi scribendum est*, it is necessary for thee to write, or thou must write; *mihi scribendum erat*, it was necessary for me to write; *mihi scribendum erit*, it will be necessary for me to write, or I shall be obliged to write; thus,

d. Pres. Sing. *Mihi scribendum est*, I must write.
Tibi scribendum est, thou must write.
Illi scribendum est, he must write.
 Plur. *Nobis scribendum est*, we must write.
Vobis scribendum est, you must write.
Illis scribendum est, they must write.
 Imperf. Sing. *Mihi scribendum erat*, I ought to have written.
Tibi scribendum erat, thou oughtest to have written.
Illi scribendum erat, he ought to have written.
 Plur. *Nobis scribendum erat*, we ought to have written.
Vobis scribendum erat, you ought to have written.
Illis scribendum erat, they ought to have written.

(And so on for the other tenses.)

125. a. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts—Mōnēōr, mōnītūs sum *vel* fui, mōnēri, *to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*am.*

S. Mōn-ēōr, <i>I am advised.</i>	P. Mon-ēmūr, <i>we are advised.</i>
Mon-ērīs } <i>thou art advised.</i>	Mon-ēmīni, <i>you are advised.</i>
vel ērē, }	Mon-entur, <i>they are advised.</i>
Mon-ētūr, <i>he is advised.</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE,—*was.*

S. Mon-ēbār, <i>I was advised.</i>	P. Mon-ēbāmūr, <i>we were</i>	} <i>advised.</i>
Mon-ēbārīs } <i>thou wast</i>	Mon-ēbāmīni, <i>you were</i>	
vel ēbārē, } <i>advised.</i>	Mon-ēbantur, <i>they were</i>	
Mon-ēbātūr, <i>he was advised.</i>		

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall, will be.*

S. Mon-ēbūr, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>or will be</i>	P. Mon-ēbīmūr, <i>we shall</i>	} <i>or will be</i>
Mon-ēbērīs } <i>thou</i>		Mon-ēbīmīni, <i>you shall</i>	
vel ēbēre, } <i>shalt</i>		Mon-ēbuntur, { <i>they</i>	
Mon-ēbītūr, <i>he shall</i>		{ <i>shall</i>	

PERFECT TENSE,—*was, have been.*

S. Mon-ītus sum <i>vel</i> fui, <i>I have been advised.</i>
Mon-ītus es <i>vel</i> fuisti, <i>thou hast been advised.</i>
Mon-ītus est <i>vel</i> fuit, <i>he has been advised.</i>
P. Mon-īti sūmus <i>vel</i> fūimus, <i>we have been advised.</i>
Mon-īti estis <i>vel</i> fuistis, <i>you have been advised.</i>
Mon-īti sunt, fuērunt <i>vel</i> fuēre, <i>they have been advised.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had been.*

S. Mon-ītus ēram <i>vel</i> fūēram, <i>I had been advised.</i>
Mon-ītus eras <i>vel</i> fueras, <i>thou hadst been advised.</i>
Mon-ītus erat <i>vel</i> fuerat, <i>he had been advised.</i>
P. Mon-īti erāmus <i>vel</i> fuerāmus, <i>we had been advised.</i>
Mon-īti erātis <i>vel</i> fuerātis, <i>you had been advised.</i>
Mon-īti erant <i>vel</i> fuerant, <i>they had been advised.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will have been.*

S. Mon-ītus ēro <i>vel</i> fūēro, <i>I shall have been advised.</i>
Mon-ītus eris <i>vel</i> fueris, <i>thou wilt have been advised.</i>
Mon-ītus erit <i>vel</i> fuerit, <i>he will have been advised.</i>
P. Mon-īti ērīmus <i>vel</i> fūērīmus, <i>we shall have been advised.</i>
Mon-īti eritis <i>vel</i> fūēritis, <i>you will have been advised.</i>
Mon-īti erunt <i>vel</i> fūērint, <i>they will have been advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. Mön-ēre, } <i>be thou advised.</i>	P. Mon-ēmini, } <i>be you</i>	} <i>advised.</i>
mon-ētor, }	mon-ēminor, }	
Mon-ētor, <i>let him be advised.</i>	Mon-entor, <i>let them be</i>	

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — <i>may, can.</i>		IMPERF. TENSE, — <i>might, could, &c.</i>	
S. Mön-ĕär, <i>I may</i>	} <i>or can be advised.</i>	S. Mon-ērĕr, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should be advised.</i>
Mon-ĕäris } <i>thou mayst</i>		Mon-ērĕris } <i>thou</i>	
vel ĕäre, }		vel ĕrĕre, }	
Mon-ĕätur, <i>he may</i>		Mon-ērĕtur, <i>he might</i>	
P. Mon-ĕämur, <i>we may</i>	}	P. Mon-ērĕmur, <i>we might</i>	}
Mon-ĕämini, <i>you may</i>		Mon-ērĕmini, <i>you might</i>	
Mon-ĕantur, <i>they may</i>		Mon-ērĕntur, <i>they might</i>	

PERFECT TENSE, — *may, have been.*

S. Mon-ĭtus sim <i>vel</i> fŭĕrim, <i>I may have been advised.</i>	
Mon-itus sis <i>vel</i> fueris, <i>thou mayst have been advised.</i>	
Mon-itus sit <i>vel</i> fuerit, <i>he may have been advised.</i>	
P. Mon-iti simus <i>vel</i> fŭĕrimus, <i>we may have been advised.</i>	
Mon-iti sitis <i>vel</i> fŭĕritis, <i>you may have been advised.</i>	
Mon-iti sint <i>vel</i> fuerint, <i>they may have been advised.</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE, — *might, could, would, should have been.*

S. Mon-ĭtus essem <i>vel</i> fuissēm, <i>I might, could, would,</i>	} <i>or should have been advised.</i>
Mon-itus esses <i>v. fuisses, thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,</i>	
Mon-itus esset <i>vel</i> fuisset, <i>he might, could, would,</i>	
P. Mon-iti essēmus <i>vel</i> fuissēmus, <i>we might, could, would,</i>	
Mon-iti essētis <i>vel</i> fuissētis, <i>you might, could, would,</i>	}
Mon-iti essent <i>vel</i> fuissent, <i>they, might, could, would,</i>	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the Conjunction prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.
Mon-ĕri, *to be advised.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.
Mon-ĭtum iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.
Mon-ĭtum esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been advised.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Mon-endum fuisse, *to have been about to be advised.*

SUPINE.

Mon-ĭtu, *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT.

Mön-ĭtus, a, um, *advised, or being advised.*

FUTURE.

Mon-endus, a, um, *to be advised.*

b. Periphrastic Conjugation, *Monendus sum, eram, &c. I am, was, &c. to be advised.*

126. a. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts — Rēgōr, *rectus sum vel fui*, rēgi, *to be ruled*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — *am*.

S. Rēg-ōr, *I am ruled*.

Reg-ēris } *thou art ruled.*
vel ērē,

Reg-itur, *he is ruled*.

P. Reg-īmur, *we are ruled*.

Reg-īmini, *you are ruled*.

Reg-untur, *they are ruled*.

IMPERFECT TENSE, — *was*.

S. Rēg-ēbār, *I was ruled*.

Reg-ēbāris } *thou wast*
vel ēbāre, } *ruled.*

Reg-ebātur, *he was ruled*.

P. Reg-ēbāmur, *we were*

Reg-ēbāmini, *you were*

Reg-ebantur, *they were*

} *ruled.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE, — *shall or will be*.

S. Reg-ār, *I shall*

Reg-ēris } *thou shalt*
vel ēre, }

Reg-ētur, *he shall*

} *or will be*
ruled.

P. Reg-ēmur, *we shall*

Reg-ēmini, *you shall*

Reg-entur, *they shall*

} *or will*
be ruled.

PERFECT TENSE, — *was, have been*.

S. Rec-tus sum *vel fui*, *I have been ruled*.

Rec-tus es *vel fuisti*, *thou hast been ruled*.

Rec-tus est *vel fuit*, *he has been ruled*.

P. Rec-ti sūmus *vel fūimus*, *we have been ruled*.

Rec-ti estis *vel fuistis*, *you have been ruled*.

Rec-ti sunt, *fūerunt vel fūere*, *they have been ruled*.

PLUPERFECT TENSE, — *had been*.

S. Rec-tus eram *vel fūeram*, *I had been ruled*.

Rec-tus eras *vel fueras*, *thou hadst been ruled*.

Rec-tus erat *vel fuerat*, *he had been ruled*.

P. Rec-ti erāmus *vel fūerāmus*, *we had been ruled*.

Rec-ti erātis *vel fuerātis*, *you had been ruled*.

Rec-ti erant *vel fuerant*, *they had been ruled*.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, — *shall or will have been*.

S. Rec-tus ero *vel fūero*, *I shall have been ruled*.

Rec-tus eris *vel fūeris*, *thou wilt have been ruled*.

Rec-tus erit *vel fūerit*, *he will have been ruled*.

P. Rec-ti erimus *vel fūerimus*, *we shall have been ruled*.

Rec-ti eritis *vel fūeritis*, *you will have been ruled*.

Rec-ti erunt *vel fūerint*, *they will have been ruled*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. Rēg-ērē, } <i>be thou ruled.</i>	P. Rēg-īmīni, } <i>be you ruled.</i>
reg-ītor, }	reg-īmīnor, }
Reg-ītor, <i>let him be ruled.</i>	Reg-untor, <i>let them be ruled.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,— <i>may, can.</i>			IMPERF. TENSE,— <i>might, could, &c.</i>	
S. Rēg-ār, <i>I may</i>	} <i>or can be ruled.</i>	S. Reg-ērer, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should be ruled.</i>	
Reg-āris } <i>thou mayst</i>		Reg-ērēris } <i>thou</i>		
vel āre, }		vel ērēre, }		
Reg-ātur, <i>he may</i>		Reg-erētur, <i>he might,</i>		
P. Reg-āmur, <i>we may</i>		P. Reg-erēmur, <i>we might,</i>		
Reg-āmīni, <i>you may</i>		Reg-erēmīni, <i>you might,</i>		
Reg-antur, <i>they may</i>		Reg-erentur, <i>they might,</i>		

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have been.*

S. Rec-tus sim <i>vel</i> fūērī, <i>I may have been ruled.</i>
Rec-tus sis <i>vel</i> fueris, <i>thou mayst have been ruled.</i>
Rec-tus sit <i>vel</i> fuerit, <i>he may have been ruled.</i>
P. Rec-ti simus <i>vel</i> fūērīmus, <i>we may have been ruled.</i>
Rec-ti sitis <i>vel</i> fueritis, <i>you may have been ruled.</i>
Rec-ti sint <i>vel</i> fuerint, <i>they may have been ruled.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*might, could, would, should have been.*

S. Rec-tus essem <i>vel</i> fuissem, <i>I might, could, would,</i>	} <i>or should have been ruled.</i>
Rec-tus esses <i>vel</i> fuisses, <i>thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,</i>	
Rec-tus esset <i>vel</i> fuisset, <i>he might, could, would,</i>	
P. Rec-ti essēmus <i>vel</i> fuissēmus, <i>we might, could, would,</i>	
Rec-ti essētis <i>vel</i> fuissētis, <i>you might, could, would,</i>	
Rec-ti essent <i>vel</i> fuissent, <i>they might, could, would.</i>	

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the Conjunction prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Rēg-ī, *to be ruled.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Rec-tum īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Rec-tum esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Reg-endum fuisse, *to have been about to be ruled.*

SUPINE.

Rec-tu, *to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT.

Rec-tus, a, um, *ruled, or being ruled.*

FUTURE.

Reg-endus, a, um, *to be ruled.*

δ. Periphrastic Conjugation, *Regendus sum, eram, &c. I am, was, &c. to be ruled.*

127. a. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The Principal Parts — Audīōr, audītus sum *vel* fui, audiri, *to be heard*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — *am*.

S. Aud-īōr, <i>I am heard.</i>	P. Aud-īmur, <i>we are heard.</i>
Aud-īris } <i>thou art heard.</i>	Aud-īmini, <i>you are heard.</i>
<i>vel</i> īre, }	Aud-īuntur, <i>they are heard.</i>
Aud-ītur, <i>he is heard.</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE, — *was*.

S. Aud-īebār, <i>I was heard.</i>	P. Aud-īebāmūr, <i>we were</i>	} <i>heard.</i>
Aud-īebāris } <i>thou wast</i>	Aud-īebāmini, <i>you were</i>	
<i>vel</i> īebārē, }	Aud-īebantur, <i>they were</i>	
Aud-īebātūr, <i>he was heard.</i>		

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE, — *shall or will be*.

S. Aud-īār, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>or will be heard.</i>	P. Aud-īēmūr, <i>we shall</i>	} <i>or will be heard.</i>
Aud-īēris } <i>thou shalt</i>		Aud-īēmini, <i>you shall</i>	
<i>vel</i> īēre, }		Aud-īentur, <i>they shall</i>	
Aud-īētūr, <i>he shall</i>			

PERFECT TENSE, — *was, have been*.

- S. Aud-ītus, sum *vel* fui, *I have been heard.*
 Aud-ītus es *vel* fuisti, *thou hast been heard.*
 Aud-ītus est *vel* fuit, *he has been heard.*
 P. Aud-iti sūmus *vel* fūimus, *we have been heard.*
 Aud-iti estis *vel* fuistis, *you have been heard.*
 Aud-iti sunt, fuērunt *vel* fuēre, *they have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE, — *had been*.

- S. Aud-ītus ēram *vel* fuēram, *I had been heard.*
 Aud-ītus eras *vel* fueras, *thou hadst been heard.*
 Aud-ītus erat *vel* fuerat, *he had been heard.*
 P. Aud-iti ēramus *vel* fuērāmus, *we had been heard.*
 Aud-iti ērātis *vel* fuērātis, *you had been heard.*
 Aud-iti erant *vel* fuērānt, *they had been heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, — *shall or will have been*.

- S. Aud-ītus ēro *vel* fuēro, *I shall have been heard.*
 Aud-ītus eris *vel* fueris, *thou wilt have been heard.*
 Aud-ītus erit *vel* fuerit, *he will have been heard.*
 P. Aud-iti erimus *vel* fuērīmus, *we shall have been heard.*
 Aud-iti eritis *vel* fueritis, *you will have been heard.*
 Aud-iti erunt *vel* fuērīnt, *they will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. Aud-ire, } <i>be thou heard.</i>	P. Aud-imīni, } <i>be you</i>	} <i>heard.</i>
aud-itor, } <i>let him be heard.</i>	aud-imīnor, } <i>let them be</i>	
	Aud-iūntor, } <i>let them be</i>	

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, — <i>may, can.</i>		IMPERF. TENSE, <i>might, could, &c.</i>	
S. Aud-iār, <i>I may</i>	} <i>or can be heard.</i>	S. Aud-irēr, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should be heard.</i>
Aud-iāris, } <i>thou mayst</i>		Aud-irēris, } <i>thou</i>	
vel iāre, } <i>mightst,</i>		vel irēre, } <i>mightst,</i>	
Aud-iātur, <i>he may</i>		Aud-irētur, <i>he might,</i>	
P. Aud-iāmur, <i>we may</i>		P. Aud-irēmur, <i>we might,</i>	
Aud-iāmīni, <i>you may</i>		Aud-irēmīni, <i>you might,</i>	
Aud-iantur, <i>they may</i>		Aud-irentur, <i>they might.</i>	

PERFECT TENSE, — *may have been.*

- S. Aud-itus sim *vel* fūērī, *I may have been heard.*
 Aud-itus sis *vel* fueris, *thou mayst have been heard.*
 Aud-itus sit *vel* fuerit, *he may have been heard.*
 P. Aud-iti simus *vel* fūērīmus, *we may have been heard.*
 Aud-iti sitis *vel* fūērītis, *you may have been heard.*
 Aud-iti sint *vel* fuerint, *they may have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE, — *might, could, would, should have been.*

- S. Aud-itus essem *vel* fuīsem, *I might, could, would,*
- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Aud-itus esses <i>vel</i> fuīsses, <i>thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,</i> | } <i>or should have been heard.</i> |
| Aud-itus esset <i>vel</i> fuīssset, <i>he might, could, would,</i> | |
| P. Aud-iti essēmus <i>vel</i> fuīssēmus, <i>we might, could, would,</i> | |
| Aud-iti essētis <i>vel</i> fuīssētis, <i>you might, could, would,</i> | |
| Aud-iti essent <i>vel</i> fuīssent, <i>they might, could, would,</i> | |

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the Conjunction prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Aud-iri, *to be heard.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Aud-itum iri, *to be about to be heard.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Aud-itum esse *vel* fuīsse, *to have been heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Aud-iendum fuīsse, *to have been about to be heard.*

SUPINE.

Aud-itu, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT.

Aud-itus, a, um, *heard or being heard.*

FUTURE.

Aud-iendus, a, um, *to be heard.*

δ. Periphrastic Conjugation, *Audiendus sum, eram, &c. I am, was, &c. to be heard.*

THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *io*.

128.

ACTIVE.

Principal Parts — *Cāpio, cēpi, cāptum, cāpere, to take.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Tense.</i>	<i>Cāp-io</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>it ;</i>	<i>Imus,</i>	<i>Itis,</i>	<i>Iunt,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Cap-iēbām,</i>	<i>iēbās,</i>	<i>iēbāt ;</i>	<i>iēbāmūs,</i>	<i>iēbātis,</i>	<i>iēbant.</i>
<i>Fut. Imperf.</i>	<i>Cap-iām,</i>	<i>iās,</i>	<i>iēt ;</i>	<i>iēmus.</i>	<i>iētis,</i>	<i>iēnt.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Cēp-i,</i>	<i>isti,</i>	<i>it ;</i>	<i>Imus,</i>	<i>istis,</i>	<i>ērunt vel ēre,</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Cēp-eram,</i>	<i>eras,</i>	<i>erat ;</i>	<i>ērāmus,</i>	<i>erātis,</i>	<i>erant.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>Cēp-ēro.</i>	<i>ēris,</i>	<i>erit ;</i>	<i>ērīmus,</i>	<i>eritis,</i>	<i>erint.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Cāp-e, Ito ; — Ite, Itōte ; iunto.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

<i>Pres. Tense.</i>	<i>Cāp-iām,</i>	<i>iās,</i>	<i>iāt ;</i>	<i>iāmus,</i>	<i>iātis,</i>	<i>iānt.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Cap-erēm,</i>	<i>erēs,</i>	<i>erēt ;</i>	<i>erēmūs,</i>	<i>erētis,</i>	<i>erent.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Cēp-erim,</i>	<i>eris,</i>	<i>erit ;</i>	<i>erīmus,</i>	<i>eritis,</i>	<i>erint.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Cēp-issem,</i>	<i>isses,</i>	<i>isset ;</i>	<i>issēmūs,</i>	<i>issētis,</i>	<i>issent.</i>

The Subjunctive is conjugated like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. & Imp.</i>	<i>Cāpere.</i>
<i>Fut. Imp.</i>	<i>Captūrum esse.</i>
<i>Perf. & Plup.</i>	<i>Cēpisse.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>Captūrum fuisse.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Cāplen-di,</i>
— do,
— dum,

SUPINE.—Captum,

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Cāpiens.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>Captūrus.</i>

129.

PASSIVE.

Principal Parts — *Cāpior, captus sum vel fui, cāpi, to be taken.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Tense.</i>	<i>Cāp-iōr, ēris vel erē, Itūr ; — Imūr, Imīni, Iuntur.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Cap-iēbār, iēbāris vel iēbārē, iēbātūr ; — iēbāmūr, iēbāminī, iebantur.</i>
<i>Fut. Imperf.</i>	<i>Cap-iār, iēris vel iēre, iētūr ; — iēmūr, iēmīni, ientur.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Captus sum vel fui, es vel fuisti, est vel fuit ; — capti sūmus vel fūimus, estis vel fuistis, sunt, fuērunt vel fuēre.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Captus eram vel fuēram, eras vel fuēras, erat vel fuērat ; — capti erāmus vel fuērāmus, eratis vel fueratis, erant vel fuerant.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>Captus ero vel fuēro, eris vel fueris, erit vel fuerit ; — capti erīmus vel fuērīmus, eritis vel fueritis, erunt vel fuerint.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Cāp-ere, Itor ; Itor ; — Imīni, Imīnor ; Iuntor.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

<i>Pres. Tense.</i>	<i>Cāp-iar, iāris vel iāre, iātūr ; — iāmūr, iāmīni, iāntur.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Cap-erēr, ērēris vel ērēre, ērētūr ; — erēmūr, erēmīni, erentur.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Captus sim vel fuerim, sis vel fueris, sit vel fuerit ; — capti simus vel fuērīmus, sitis vel fueritis, sint vel fuerint.</i>
<i>Plu. Perf.</i>	<i>Captus essem vel fuīsem, esses vel fuīsses, esset vel fuīset ; — capti essēmūs vel fuīssēmūs, essetis vel fuīsetis, essent vel fuīssent.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Cāpi, to be taken.

FUTURE IMPERFECT.

Captum Iri, to be about to be taken.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Captum esse vel fuisse, to have been taken.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Cāplendum fuisse, to have been about to be taken.

SUPINE.

Captu, to be taken.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Captus, a, um, taken or being taken.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Cāplendus, a, um, to be taken.</i>

130.

A VERB DEPONENT.

The Principal Parts—*Miror, mirātus sum vel fui, mirāri, to admire.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,— <i>am, do.</i>		IMPERFECT TENSE,— <i>was.</i>	
S. <i>Mir-ōr, I admire,</i>	} <i>am admiring, or do admire.</i>	S. <i>Mir-ābār, I was</i>	} <i>admiring.</i>
<i>Mir-āris } thou ad-</i>		<i>Mir-ābāris } thou wast</i>	
<i>vel āre, } mirest,</i>		<i>vel abāre, }</i>	
<i>Mir-ātur, he admires,</i>		<i>Mir-ābātur, he was</i>	
P. <i>Mir-āmur, we admire,</i>	}	P. <i>Mir-ābāmur, we were</i>	}
<i>Mir-āmini, you admire,</i>		<i>Mir-ābāmini, you were</i>	
<i>Mir-antur, they admire,</i>		<i>Mir-ābantur, they were</i>	

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE,—*shall or will.*

S. <i>Mir-ābor, I shall</i>	} <i>or will</i>	P. <i>Mir-ābīmur, we shall</i>	} <i>or will</i>
<i>Mir-ābēris } thou shalt</i>		<i>Mir-ābīmīni, you shall</i>	
<i>vel ābēre, }</i>		<i>Mir-ābuntur, they shall</i>	
<i>Mir-ābitur, he shall</i>			

PERFECT TENSE,—*have, did.*

- S. *Mir-ātus sum vel fui, I admired, or have admired.*
Mir-ātus es vel fuisti, thou admiredst, or hast admired.
Mir-ātus est vel fuit, he admired, or has admired.
P. *Mir-āti sūmus vel fūimus, we admired, or have admired.*
Mir-āti estis vel fuistis, you admired, or have admired.
Mir-ātisunt, fuērunt vel fuēre, they admired, or have admired.

PLUPERFECT TENSE,—*had.*

- S. *Mir-ātus eram vel fuēram, I had admired.*
Mir-ātus eras vel fueras, thou hadst admired.
Mir-ātus erat vel fuerat, he had admired.
P. *Mir-āti ērāmus vel fuerāmus, we had admired.*
Mir-āti erātis vel fuerātis, you had admired.
Mir-āti erant vel fuerant, they had admired.

FUTURE PERFECT,—*shall or will have.*

- S. *Mir-ātus ēro vel fūēro, I shall have admired.*
Mir-ātus eris vel fueris, thou wilt have admired.
Mir-ātus erit vel fuerit, he will have admired.
P. *Mir-āti ērimus vel fūērimus, we shall have admired.*
Mir-āti eritis vel fueritis, you will have admired.
Mir-āti erunt vel fuerint, they will have admired.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. Mir-āre,	} <i>admire thou.</i>	P. Mir-āmini,	} <i>admire you.</i>
mir-ātor,		mir-amīnor,	
Mir-ātor, <i>let him admire.</i>		Mir-antor, <i>let them admire.</i>	

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,—*may, can.*

S. Mir-ēr, <i>I may</i>	} <i>or can admire.</i>	Mir-ēris } <i>thou mayst</i>
Mir-ēris } <i>thou mayst</i>		vel ēre, }
Mir-ētur, <i>he may</i>		
P. Mir-ēmur, <i>we may</i>		Mir-ēmīni, <i>you may</i>
Mir-ēmini, <i>you may</i>		Mir-entur, <i>they may</i>

IMPERF. TENSE,—*might, &c.*

S. Mir-ārer, <i>I might,</i>	} <i>could, would, or should admire.</i>	Mir-ārēris } <i>thou</i>
Mir-ārēris } <i>thou</i>		vel arēre, }
Mir-ārētur, <i>he might,</i>		
P. Mir-ārēmur, <i>we might,</i>		Mir-ārēmīni, <i>you might,</i>
Mir-ārēmini, <i>you might,</i>		Mir-ārentur, <i>they might,</i>

PERFECT TENSE,—*may have.**I may have admired.*

S. Mir-ātus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim.
Mir-ātus sis <i>vel</i> fueris.
Mir-ātus sit <i>vel</i> fuerit.
P. Mir-āti simus <i>vel</i> fuērīmus.
Mir-āti sitis <i>vel</i> fueritis.
Mir-āti sint <i>vel</i> fuerint.

PLUPERF. TENSE, *might, &c. have.**I might, &c. have admired.*

S. Mir-ātus essem <i>vel</i> fuissēm.
Mir-ātus esses <i>vel</i> fuisses.
Mir-ātus esset <i>vel</i> fuisset.
P. Mir-āti essēmus <i>vel</i> fuissēmus.
Mir-āti essētis <i>vel</i> fuissētis.
Mir-āti essent <i>vel</i> fuissent.

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, but the signification varies according to the Conjunction prefixed.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT & IMPERF. TENSE.

Mir-āri, *to admire.*

FUTURE IMPERFECT ACTIVE.

Mir-ātūrum esse, *to be about to admire.*

FUTURE IMPERF. PASSIVE.

Mir-ātum iri, *to be about to be admired.*

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

Mir-ātum esse *vel* fuisse, *to have admired.*

FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE.

Mir-ātūrum fuisse, *to have been about to admire.*

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.

Mir-andum fuisse, *to have been about to be admired.*

GERUNDS.

Genit. Mir-andi, <i>of admiring.</i>
D. & Ab. Mir-ando, <i>for, by, in admiring.</i>
Ac. & N. Mir-andum, <i>to admire.</i>

SUPINES.

ACT. Mir-ātum, <i>to admire.</i>
PASS. Mir-ātu, <i>to be admired.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT ACTIVE.

Mir-ans, antis, *admiring.*

PERFECT ACTIVE.

Mir-ātus, a, um, *having admired.*

FUTURE ACTIVE.

Mir-ātūrus, a, um, *about to admire.*

FUTURE PASSIVE.

Mir-andus, a, um, *to be admired.*

Remarks on the Conjugations.

131. 1. In the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect, of the first conjugation, *vi* or *ve* is frequently dropped when an *s* or *r* follows *avi* or *ave*, and a circumflex placed over the *a*; as, *amāsti*, *amāram*, *amāro*, for *amavisti*, *amaveram*, *amavero*.

2. In the second and third conjugations, *evi* is similarly contracted; as, *nēsti*, *decrēsse*, for *nevisti*, *decrevisse*.

3. *Is*, in the Perfect and Pluperfect of the third conjugation, is frequently thrown out after an *s* or an *x*; as, *dixi* for *dixisti*.

4. In the fourth, *ivi* is frequently contracted before *s*; as, *audisti* for *audivisti*; it is also frequently used for *ivi*; as, *audii* for *audivi*, *audieram* for *audiveram*.

5. The third person plural of the Perfect Active has two forms, *ēre* and *ērunt*.

6. The quantity of the *i* in *rimus* and *ritis* of the Future Perfect Indicative and the Perfect Potential is doubtful, but more frequently long than short in both tenses.

7. The Participle Future Passive in some verbs of the third and fourth conjugations is formed in *undus* as well as in *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundus*, *veniundus*. In *potior*, the usual form is *potiundus*.

8. Some active and deponent verbs have a Participle in *bundus*, having the same signification as a present participle; as, *mori-bundus* for *moriens*.

9. Amongst the older Latin writers, the Infinitive was sometimes lengthened by annexing *er*; thus, *amavēr* for *amari*. The *e* in the Imperfect Active and Passive of the fourth conjugation was frequently rejected; thus, *lenibam* for *leniebam*, *largibar* for *largiebar*.

Rules for the Formation of the Perfect and Supine.

GENERAL RULES FOR COMPOUND VERBS.

132. *a*. Compound Verbs form their Preterperfect and Supine like their simples; as, *edocéo*, *edocui*, *edoctum*, from *docéo*, *docui*, *doctum*.

EXCEPTIONS.

b. The syllable which is doubled in the Perfect Tense of the simple verb is not doubled in the compound; as, *pello*, *pepūli*; *repello*, *repūli*. But *praecurro*, *repungo*, and the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*, retain the double syllable; as, *praecurro*, *praecūcurri*, &c.

c. Verbs which change *a* of the Present of the simple into *i* in the compound have *e* in the Supine; as, *facio*; *perficio*, *perfecti*, *perfectum*. Except verbs ending in *do* and *go*, and the compounds of *habeo*, *plāceo*, *sālio*, *sāpio*, and *stātuo*.

d. Verbs which are defective in the Perfect, want likewise the Supine. Except *plico*, which has *plicātum*.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

133. *a.* The First Conjugation makes *āvi* in the Perfect Tense, and *ātum*, in the Supine; as, *Amo, amāvi, amātum*, to love.

b. Except the following, which make *ui, itum; crēpo*¹, to make a noise; *cūbo*, to recline; *dōmo*, to tame; *sōno* (participle, *sonatūrus*), to sound; *tōno*², to thunder; *vēto*, to forbid.

EXCEPT ALSO,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Do, ³	dēdi,	dātum,	to give.
Fricō,	fricui,	{ fricātum, frictum, (jūtum,) }	to rub. (de, in, per, re.)
Jūvo, ⁴	jūvi,	(jūtum,)	to help.
Lābo, ⁵	_____	_____	to fall or faint.
Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lavātum, lautum, lōtum, }	to wash.
Mico,	micui,	_____	to dart out, to shine.
Emico,	emcui,	emicatū,	to dart forth rays.
Dimico,	dimicāvi & ui,	dimicātum,	to fight.
Neco,	{ necāvi, necui, }	necātum,	to kill.
Eneco,	{ enecāvi, enecui, }	enecātum, enectum, }	to kill by inches. (Inter.)
Nexo,	_____	_____	to bind.
Plico,	_____	plicātum,	to fold. (re.)
Duplico,	uplicāvi,	uplicatū,	to double. (sup, mult.)
Applico,	applicāvi & ui,	applicātum & itum,	to attach.
Explico,	explicāvi,	explicatū,	to explain. (com, tm.) but
Explico,	explicui,	explicatū,	to unfold.
Pōto,	potavi,	{ potātum, pōtum, }	to drink.
Seco,	secui,	sectum,	to cut. (de, dis, prae.)
Sto,	stēti,	stātum,	to stand.
Obsto,	-obstīti,	obstātum,	to hinder.

c. So *consto, exsto*, and *praesto*, make *īti, ātum; praestitum* is also found. *Circumsto, antesto, intersto*, and *supersto*, have *stēti* without Supine. *Adsto, insto, resto*, have *stīti*, but no Supine. *Disto* has neither Perfect nor Supine.

1. *Discrepo*, to differ, and *increpo*, to chide, have sometimes *āvi* and *ātum*, as well as *ui, itum*.

2. *Inōno* has *intonatus* in the Perfect Participle.

3. *Do* makes *dāre*, short. So also, *circumdō, pessundō, satidō, venundō*, which are formed like *dō*; but *abdo, addo, condo, prodo, reddo*, belong to the third conjugation.

4. Future Participle, *juvaturus*. *Adjūvo, jūvi*, has only *adjutum* in the Supine.

5. *Riddle* gives a Perfect and Supine for *labo*, but without authority.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

134. *a.* The Second Conjugation makes *ui*, *itum*; as, *Mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnitum*, to advise.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Algeo,	alsi,	(alsum,)	<i>to shiver with cold.</i>
Arceo,	arcui,	_____	<i>to drive away.</i>
Its compounds have <i>itum</i> in the Supine; as,			
Exerceo,	exercui,	exercitum,	<i>to exercise.</i> (co.)
Ardeo,	arsui,	arsum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Audeo,	ausus sum,	ausum,	<i>to dare.</i>
Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
Cāveo, ¹	cāvi,	cautum,	<i>to take care.</i>
Censeo,	censui,	censum,	<i>to think.</i>
<i>Accenseo</i> , <i>percenseo</i> , have no Supine; <i>recenseo</i> has <i>recensum</i> and <i>recensitum</i> .			
Cieo, ²	civi,	citum,	<i>to stir up.</i> (con, ex, per.)
Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	<i>to fill up.</i> (de, im, ex, re, sup.)
Conniveo,	{ connīvi, connixi, }	_____	<i>to wink.</i>
Dōceo,	docui,	doctum,	<i>to teach.</i> (e, per, de.)
Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	<i>to blot out.</i>
Fāveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	<i>to favour.</i>
Ferveo, ³	fervi & ferbui,	_____	<i>to glow, be hot.</i>
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	<i>to weep.</i> (af, de.)
Fōveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	<i>to cherish.</i>
Frendeo,	frendui, frendi,	fressum,	<i>to gnash the teeth.</i>
Frigeo,	frixi,	_____	<i>to be cold.</i>
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	_____	<i>to shine.</i> (af, ef, re.)
Gaudeo,	gavīsus sum,	_____	<i>to rejoice.</i>
Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	<i>to stick.</i> (ad, co, in.)
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Jūbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>to order.</i>
Lūceo,	luxi,	_____	<i>to shine.</i> (di, e, per, prae.)
Lūgeo,	luxi,	_____	<i>to mourn.</i>
Māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>to remain.</i> (per, re.)
Misceo,	miscui,	{ mistum, mixtum, }	<i>to mix.</i> (ad, com, im, per.)

1. Verbs in *veo* undergo a contraction in the Perfect and Supine; as, *caveo*, *cavi*, *cautum*.

2. *Civi* is the Perfect of the obsolete verb *cio* of the fourth conjugation, and *citum* the Supine. The compounds, in the sense of *calling*, are generally conjugated according to the fourth conjugation; as, *excio*, *excitum*. *Concitus*, *excitus*, *inctus*, signify roused, stirred up, *excitus*, called forth.

3. *Fervui*, *fervat*, *fervere*, after the third, is an archaism.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Mordeo, Admordeo,	momordi, admordi,	morsum, admorsum,	<i>to bite.</i> <i>to bite hard.</i>
Mōveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	{ <i>to move.</i> (a, ad, com, per, pro, re, sub.)
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to stroke.</i> (de, per.)
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to milk.</i>
Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	<i>to spin.</i>
Oleo,	olui,	_____	<i>to smell.</i>

So also its compounds, signifying *to smell*; as,

Obōleo,	obōlui,	_____	{ <i>to smell strong.</i> (per, red, sub.)
Exōleo ⁴ (from ōleo, to grow.	exolēvi,	exolētum,	<i>to fade—grow old.</i>
Adōleo,	adolēvi,	adultum,	{ <i>to grow up—to burn</i> <i>in sacrifice.</i>
Pāveo,	pāvi,	_____	<i>to dread.</i>
Pendeo,	pependi,	pensum,	<i>to hang.</i>
Dependeo,	dependi,	dependsum,	<i>to hang from.</i> (im.)
Prandeo, ⁵	prandi,	pransum,	<i>to dine.</i>
Rīdeo,	rīsi,	risum,	<i>to laugh.</i> (ar, de, ir, sub.)
Sēdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	<i>to sit.</i>

Its compounds, except *circumsedeo* and *supersedeo*, change *e* of the simple into *i*; as,

Assīdeo,	assēdi,	assessum,	{ <i>to sit by or at.</i> (circum, con, ob, dis, pos, prae, super.)
Disīdeo, rarely a Perfect or Supine; <i>praeīdeo</i> , rarely a Supine.	_____	_____	_____
Sorbeo, ⁶	sorbui(sorpsi),	sorptum,	<i>to sup up.</i>
Sōleo,	solitus sum,	_____	<i>am wont.</i>
Spondeo,	{ spospondi, spopondi, }	sponsum,	<i>to promise.</i>
Respondeo,	respondi,	responsum,	<i>to answer.</i> (de.)
Strideo,	stridi,	_____	{ <i>to make a noise—</i> <i>hiss.</i>
Suadeo,	suasi,	suasum,	<i>to persuade.</i> (dis, per.)
Tēneo,	tenui,	tentum,	<i>to hold.</i>

Its compounds change *e* into *i*; as,

Abstīneo,	abstinui,	abstentum,	{ <i>to abstain from.</i> (at, con, de, re, sus.)
Pertīneo has no Supine.	_____	_____	_____
Tīmeo,	timui,	_____	<i>to fear.</i>
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>to wipe dry.</i> (abs.)
Tondeo,	totondi,	tonsum,	<i>to clip.</i>
Attondeo,	attondi,	attonsum,	<i>to clip.</i> (de)
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	<i>to twist.</i> (con, dis, ex.)

4. *Exoleo* and *adeleo* come from *olēre* (not in use), to grow; so also *obōleo*, *obolēvi*, *obolētum*, to grow out of use; *inōleo* *inolēvi*, *inolētum* or *inolitum*, to come into use; *abōleo*, to abolish, *abolēvi*, *abolitum*.

5. *Pransus* is used in the Active sense of *having dined*.

6. *Absorbeo*, to sup up, and *exsorbeo*, to sup out, have sometimes *absorpsi* and *exsorpsi* for the Perfect; *exsorbeo* and *resorbeo* have no Supine.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	to toast — <i>parch.</i>
Turgeo,	tursi,	———	to swell.
Urgeo,	ursi,	———	to urge.
Video,	vidi,	vīsum,	to see. (in, per, prae, pro.)
Voveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	to vow. (de.)

135. *a.* Neuter Verbs in *veo* have no Supine; as, *pāveo*, *pāvi*, to be afraid.

b. Also, Neuter Verbs which have *ui* in the Perfect, have no Supine; as, *splendeo*, *splendui*, to shine.

c. But the following Neuter Verbs, and their compounds, have *ui* and *itum*, according to the general rule : —

Cāreo, ui, itum, to want.	Mēreo, ui, itum, to deserve.
Coāleo, ui, itum, to grow together.	Nōceo, ui, itum, to hurt.
Dōleo, ui, itum, to grieve.	Pāreo, ui, itum, to appear.
Jāceo, ui, itum, to lie; recline.	Plāceo, ui, itum, to please.
Lāteo, ⁷ ui, itum, to lie hid.	Tāceo, ⁸ ui, itum, to be silent.
Līceo, ui, itum, to be valued.	Vāleo, ui, itum, to be in health.

d. Verbs that have no Supine, consequently want the tenses formed from the Supine.

136. *a.* The following have neither Perfect nor Supine : —

Aveo, to desire.	Lacteo, to grow milky.
Calveo, to grow bald.	Liveo, to be black and blue.
Cāneo, to be grey.	Moereo, to be sorrowful.
Denseo, to grow thick.	Renīdeo, to shine.
Flacceq, to fade. ⁹	Polleo, to be powerful.
Flāveo, to be yellow.	Scāteo, to flow out.
Foeteo, to stink.	Squāleo, to be dirty.
Glābreo, to be smooth.	Vēgeo, to flourish.
Hēbeo, to be blunt.	Vieo, to hoop a vessel.
Hūmeo, to be damp.	Uveo, to be moist.

b. These impersonal verbs, *libet* (*collibet*), *licet*, *piget*, *placet*, *puget*, have the regular Perfect *libuit*, &c., and another which is Perfect Passive in form, but Active in signification; as, *libitum est*, *licitum est*, &c. *Taedet* has *taeduit* or *taesum est*; *pertaedet* has *pertaesum* only.

7. *Deliteo*, to lurk, and *perlatēo*, to lie hid, compounds of *lateo*, have the Perfect *ui*, but no Supine.

8. *Conticeo*, *reticeo*, make *ui* in the Perfect, but have no Supine.

9. *Riddle* gives a Perfect to this verb.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

137. *a.* *BO* is changed into *psi, ptum* ; as, *Scribo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write.

So *Giubo*, to peel ; *Nubo*, to marry (applied only to the female ; part. *nupta*).

b. EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Accumbo, from <i>cubo</i> , <i>cubāre</i> ,	} accūbui,	} accūbitum,	{ <i>recline at table.</i> (in, pro, suc, oc.)
Bībo,			
Lambo,	bībi,	bībitum,	<i>to drink.</i> (e, im.)
Scābo,	lambi,	_____	<i>to lick.</i>
	scābi,	_____	{ <i>to scratch with the</i> <i>finger.</i>

138. *a.* *CO* is changed into *xi, ctum* ; as, *Dico, dixi, dictum*, to say ; *Duco, duxi, ductum*, to lead.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Ico,	Ici,	ictum,	<i>to strike.</i>
Parco,	{ peperci, (parsi, <i>more</i> <i>rarely</i>)	{ parsum, parcītum,	{ <i>to spare.</i>
Comparco,			
Vinco,	parsi,	parsum,	<i>to accumulate by saving.</i>
	vīci,	victum,	<i>to conquer.</i> (con, de, e.)

139. *a.* *SCO* is changed into *vi, tum* ; as, *Nosco, nōvi, nōtum*, to know.

So *cresco*, to grow ; *quiesco*, to rest ; *suesco*, to become accustomed.]
For *Inchoatives* in *sco*, see at the end of the third conjugation.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Agnosco,	agnōvi,	agnitum,	<i>to own</i> (cog, prae, re.) but
Dignosco,	dignōvi,	dignōtum,	<i>to discern</i> (ig, inter, per.)
Compesco,	compescui,	_____	<i>to restrain.</i>
Disco,	didīci,	_____	<i>to learn.</i> (ad, e, de.)
Addisco,	addidīci,	_____	<i>to learn more.</i>
Dispesco,	dispescui,	_____	<i>to divide.</i>
Pasco,	pāvī,	pastum,	<i>to feed.</i> (de.)
Posco,	poposci,	_____	<i>to require.</i> (de, re, ex.)
Deposco,	depoposci,	_____	<i>to demand.</i>
Quinisco,	quexi,	_____	<i>to nod.</i>

140. *a.* *DO* is changed into *di, sum* ; as, *Scando, scandi, scansum*, to climb.

So *ascendo*, to mount, and the other compounds of *scando* ; also *accendo*, to light, and its compounds ; *cudo*, to forge ; *defendo*, to defend ; *mando*, to chew ; *offendo*, to offend ; *ostendo*, to shew ; *prehendo*, to seize.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Abdo,	abdidi,	abditum,	<i>to hide.</i>
Abscondo,	{ abscondi, abscondidi, }	absconditum,	<i>to hide.</i>
Addo,	addidi,	additum,	<i>to add.</i>
Cădo,	cecidi,	căsum,	<i>to fall.</i>
Its compounds change <i>a</i> into <i>i</i> ; as,			
Incido, ¹	incidi,	incăsum,	<i>to fall into.</i> (oc, re.)
Caedo,	cecidi,	caesum,	<i>to cut.</i>
Its compounds change <i>ae</i> into <i>i</i> ; as,			
Concido,	concedi,	conclsum,	{ <i>to cut in pieces.</i> (abs, in, oc, de, &c.)
Cădo,	cessi,	cessum,	{ <i>to yield.</i> (abs, ac, ante, con, de, dis, ex, in, &c.)
Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	<i>to close.</i>
Its compounds change <i>au</i> into <i>i</i> ; as,			
Concludo,	conclūsi,	conclūsum,	{ <i>to conclude—to shut up.</i> (ex, in, re, se.)
Condo,	condidi,	conditum,	<i>to lay up; arrange.</i>
Crădo,	crădidi,	crăditum,	<i>to believe.</i>
Accrădo,	accrădidi,	accrăditum,	<i>to give credit to.</i> (con.)
Dădo,	dedidi,	deditum,	<i>to submit.</i>
Dido,	dididi,	diditum,	<i>to give out.</i>
Divido,	divisi,	divisum,	<i>to divide.</i>
Ēdo,	ēdidi,	ēditum,	{ <i>to put forth—to</i> <i>publish.</i>
Ēdo, ●	ēdi,	{ esum (ores- tum,	{ <i>to eat.</i> (ex, com.)
Fido,	fisus sum,	—	<i>to trust.</i> (con, dif.)
Findo,	fidi,	fissum,	<i>to split.</i> (dif.)
Frendo,	(frendi,)	{ fressum & fresum,	{ <i>to gnash with the</i> <i>teeth.</i>
Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	{ <i>to pour forth.</i> (af, ef, in, of, con, dif, per, pro.)
Indo,	indidi,	inditum,	<i>to put in.</i>
Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	<i>to hurt.</i>
Its compounds change <i>ae</i> into <i>i</i> ; as,			
Allido,	allisi,	allisum,	<i>to dash against.</i> (il, col, e.)
Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	<i>to sport.</i> (al, col, e, de, il.)
Obdo,	obdidi,	obditum,	<i>to oppose.</i>
Pando, ²	pandi,	{ passum, (pansum, rare)	{ <i>to shew.</i>

1. *Incido, occido, and recido, make cidi, casum*; the other compounds of *cado* have no Supine.

2. *Expando* has *expansum* and *expassum*; *dispando* only *dispansum*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Pendo,	pependi,	pensum,	<i>to weigh.</i>
Its compounds lose the reduplication; as,			
Appendo,	appendi,	appensum,	{ <i>to weigh out to.</i> (ex, im, per, de, sus.)
Perdo,	perdidī,	perditum,	<i>to lose.</i>
Deperdo,	deperdidī,	deperditum,	<i>to lose.</i>
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	<i>to clap.</i>
The compounds of <i>plaudo</i> , except <i>applaudo</i> and <i>circum-plaudo</i> , change <i>au</i> into <i>o</i> ; as,			
Explōdo,	explōsi,	explōsum,	<i>to explode.</i> (com, sup.)
Prodo,	prodīdi,	proditum,	<i>to betray.</i>
Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	{ <i>to shave.</i> (ab, circum, cor, de, e.)
Reddo,	reddīdi,	redditum,	<i>to render.</i>
Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	{ <i>to gnaw.</i> (ab, ar, de, circum, per.)
Rūdo,	rudi,	—	<i>to bray as an ass.</i>
Scindo,	scīdi,	scissum,	<i>to cut.</i> (ab, ex, per, re.)
Sido,	sīdi,	—	<i>to sink down.</i>
Its compounds make <i>ēdi, essum</i> ; as,			
Consido,	consēdi,	consessum,	<i>to sit down.</i> (as, de, re, sub.)
Strīdo,	strīdi,	—	<i>to creak—whiz.</i>
Subdo,	subdīdi,	subditum,	<i>to put under.</i>
Tendo, ³	tetendi,	{ tensum, tentum, }	<i>to stretch.</i>
Its compounds lose the reduplication; as,			
Contendo,	conteudi,	contentum,	{ <i>to stretch—to labour.</i> (dis, in, ob, at.)
Trādo,	trādīdi,	trādītum,	<i>to deliver.</i>
Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	<i>to thrust.</i> (de, ex, pro.)
Tundo,	tūtūdi,	{ tunsum, tūsum, }	<i>to beat—pound.</i>
Its compounds have <i>tūdi, tūsum</i> ; as,			
Contundo,	contūdi,	contūsum,	<i>to beat—bruise.</i> (ex, ob, re.)
Vādo,	(vasi,)	{ (vasum, rarely) }	<i>to go.</i>
Its compounds have <i>vāsi, vasum</i> , in the Perfect and Supine; as,			
Invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	<i>to go to—to attack.</i> (e, per.)
Vendo,	vendīdi,	vendītum,	<i>to sell.</i>

141. *a. GO, GUO, and HO*, are changed into *xi, ctum*; as *Rego, rexi, rectum*, to rule; *Unguo, unxi, unctum*, to anoint; *Traho, traxi, tractum*, to draw, to drag.

So *affligo*, to strike to the ground; *configo*, to fight; *cingo*, to gird; *infligo*, to strike upon; *jungo*, to join; *lingo*, to lick; *mungo*, to blow the nose; *plango*, to beat, lament; the compounds of *rego, arrigo*, &c.; *sūgo*, to suck; *tēgo*, to cover; *tingo* or *tinguo*, to dip, dye; *extinguo, restinguo* (from *stinguo*), and *distinguo*; *veho*, to carry; and their compounds.

3. The compounds of *tendo* have generally *tentum* in the Supine, except *extendo* and *ostendo*, which have both *tensum* and *tentum*.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Ago ⁴ ,	ēgi,	actum,	<i>to drive.</i>
Ango,	anxi,	—	<i>to squeeze, strangle.</i>
Arguo,	argui,	{ argūtum & argūtum, }	<i>to shew — to prove.</i>
Clango,	—	—	<i>to sound a trumpet.</i>
Cōgo,	coēgi,	coactum,	<i>to drive together.</i>
Dēgo,	dēgi,	—	<i>to lead—spend.</i>
Figō,	fixi,	fixum,	<i>to fasten.</i> (af, trans.)
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	<i>to feign.</i> (con, af, ef, re.)
Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	<i>to break.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *i*; as,

Confringo,	confrēgi,	confractum,	{ <i>to break to pieces.</i> (per, ef, re.)
Frigo,	frixi,	{ frictum, (frixum,) }	<i>to roast—fry.</i>
Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	<i>to gather, to read.</i>

Its compounds *perlēgo*, *praelēgo*, *colligo*, *deligo*, *eligo*, *seigo*, and *sublēgo*, have *lēgi*, *lectum*; but *diligō*, *intelligō*, and *negligō*, have *lēxi*, *lectum*.

Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	<i>to dip.</i> (de, e, im, sub.)
Ningo,	ninxi,	—	<i>to snow.</i>
{ Pango ⁵ ,	pepigi,	pactum,	<i>to bargain.</i>
{ Pango,	panxi,	panctum,	<i>to drive in—strike.</i>

Its compounds have *pēgi*, *pactum*, and change *a* into *i*; as,

Compingo,	compēgi,	compactum,	<i>to fasten together.</i> (im, op.)
Pergo,	perrexi,	perrectum,	<i>to go forward.</i>
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	<i>to paint.</i> (de, ex, ap.)
Pungo,	pupūgi,	punctum,	<i>to pierce.</i>

Its compounds have *punxi* in the Perfect; as,

Compungo,	compunxi,	compunctum,	<i>to sting.</i> (dis, inter.) but
Repungo,	{ repunxi, }	repunctum,	<i>to pierce again.</i>
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	<i>to scatter.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *e*; as,

Aspergo,	aspersi,	aspersum,	<i>to besprinkle.</i> (con, re, ex.)
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	{ <i>to squeeze together.</i> (ad, con, dis, ob.)

Surgo, surrexi, surrectum, *to rise.*
Tango, tetigi, tactum, *to touch.*

Its compounds change *a* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as,

Attingo,	attigi,	attactum,	<i>to touch.</i> (con, ob.)
----------	---------	-----------	-----------------------------

4. *Circumdāgo*, *perago*, *satago*, and *coāgo* (contracted into *cogo*), retain the *a*; the other compounds change *a* into *i*; as, *abigo*, *adigo*, *exigo*, *subigo*. *Dēgo* (for *deago*), *prodigo*, and *satago*, have no Supine. *Ambigo*, to doubt, has neither Perfect nor Supine.

5. The Present of *pango* is rarely used in the sense of *bargain*, but *paciscor* is employed instead. *Depango* and *repango* have neither Perfect nor Supine.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>to wipe.</i> (ab, de, ex.)
Vergo,	_____	_____	<i>to lie towards.</i>

142. *IO* is various ; as,

Aspicio <i>fr.</i>	} asperi,	aspectum,	{ <i>to behold.</i> (con, de, dis, per, in, sus.)
specio,			
Allicio <i>from</i>	} allexi,	allectum,	<i>to allure.</i> (il, pel.)
latio,			
Elicio,	elicui,	elicitum,	<i>to draw out.</i>
Cāpio,	cēpi,	captum,	<i>to take hold of.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *i* ; as,

Accipio,	accēpi,	acceptum,	{ <i>to receive.</i> (de, ex, per, prae, re, sus.)
Cūpio, (3rd & 4th con.)	cupīvi,	cupitum,	<i>to desire.</i> (con, dis, per.)
Fācio,	fēcī,	factum,	<i>to do—to make.</i>

So *arefacio, consuefacio, frigefacio, labefacio, patrefacio, tepescacio* ; these have in the Passive, *faci sum, fieri* ; as, *patrefacio, patescio*. But *facio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *a* into *i* ; as,

Afficio,	affēci,	affectum,	{ <i>to affect</i> (con, per, de, inter, pro, re, of.)
----------	---------	-----------	--------------------------------------------------------

These latter have their own Passive in *facior* ; as, *afficior*.

Fōdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	<i>to dig.</i> (ef, con, per, suf.)
Fūgio,	fūgi,	fūgitum,	<i>to flee.</i> (au, ef, con, per.)
Jācio,	jēcī,	jactum,	<i>to throw.</i>

The compounds of *facio* change *a* into *i* ; as,

Abjicio,	abjēcī,	abjectum,	{ <i>to throw away.</i> (ab, ad, de, e, in, ob, re, trans.)
Pārio,	pēpēri,	{ partum, paritum, }	<i>to bring forth.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *e*, and belong to the Fourth Conjugation.

Quātio,	quassi,	quassum,	<i>to shake.</i>
---------	---------	----------	------------------

Its compounds change *quatio* into *cūtio* ; as,

Concūtio,	concussi,	concussum,	{ <i>to shake violently.</i> (dis, ex, per.)
Rāpio,	rāpui,	raptum,	<i>to snatch.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *i* ; as,

Arripio,	arripui,	arreptum,	<i>to seize.</i> (ab, er, de, sub.)
Sāpio,	sāpui, ii, & īvi,	_____	<i>to be wise—to taste.</i>

Its compounds change *a* into *i* ; as,

Desūpio,	desūpui,	_____	<i>to be foolish.</i> (re.)
----------	----------	-------	-----------------------------

143. *a. LO* is changed into *lui, litum* ; as, *Mōlo, mōlui, molitum*, to grind. *Ālo*, to nourish, has *ālītum* and *altum* in the Supine.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Antecello,	{ (antecellui, rare), }	_____	<i>to excel.</i> (ex, prae.) but
Percello,	percūli,	perculsum,	<i>to strike down.</i>

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Cōlo, ⁶	cōlui,	cultum,	<i>to till.</i> (ex, per, in.)
Consūlo,	consūlui,	consultum,	<i>to consult.</i>
Fallo,	fefelli,	falsum,	<i>to cheat.</i>
Refello,	refelli,	_____	<i>to confute.</i>
Occūlo,	occūlui,	occultum,	<i>to hide.</i>
Pello,	pepūli,	pulsum,	<i>to drive away.</i>
Its compounds drop the reduplication; as,			
Compello,	compūli,	compulsun,	{ <i>to compel.</i> (ap, de, ex, pro, &c.)
Psallo,	psalli,	_____	{ <i>to sing or play on an instrument.</i>
Sallo,	salli,	salsum,	<i>to salt.</i>
Tollo,	sustūli,	sublātum,	<i>to lift up.</i>
Attollo, ⁷	attull,	allātum,	<i>to raise up.</i>
Extollo, ⁷	extull,	elatum,	<i>to lift up — to praise.</i>
Vello,	velli & vulsi,	vulsum,	<i>to pluck out.</i> (a, re.)
Convello,	velli,	vulsum,	<i>to tear up.</i> (di, e.)

144. *a. MO* is changed into *mui*, *mītum*; as, *Frēmo*, *frēmui*. *frēmītum*, to murmur.

So *gēmo*, to groan (*congēmo* and *inagēmo* have no Supine); *vōmo*, to vomit.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	<i>to adorn.</i>
Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	<i>to take away.</i>
Emo,	ēmi,	emptum,	<i>to buy.</i>
The compounds of <i>emo</i> , except <i>demo</i> , <i>promo</i> , <i>sumo</i> , change <i>e</i> of the simple into <i>i</i> ; as,			
Adīmo,	adēmi,	ademptum,	{ <i>to take away.</i> (dir, ex, red, inter.)
Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	<i>to press.</i>
The compounds of <i>prēmo</i> change <i>e</i> into <i>i</i> ; as,			
Opprīmo,	oppressi,	oppressum,	{ <i>to press down.</i> (com, de, sup, ex.)
Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	<i>to bring out.</i> (de, ex.)
Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	<i>to take.</i> (ab, ad, con, &c.)
Trēmo,	tremui,	_____	<i>to tremble.</i>

145. NO.

Cāno,	cecīni,	cantum,	<i>to sing.</i>
Its compounds change <i>a</i> into <i>i</i> , and make <i>cinusi</i> , <i>centum</i> ; as,			
Succīno,	succinui,	succentum,	<i>to sing to.</i> (oc.)
Of <i>accīno</i> and <i>intercīno</i> , neither Perfect nor Supine is to be found.			
Cerno, ⁸	_____	_____	<i>to perceive — see.</i>
Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	<i>to sift — separate.</i>
Decerno,	decrēvi,	decrētum,	<i>to decree.</i> (dis, ex, se.)

6. *Accūlo* and *circumcūlo* have no Supine.

7. *Attollo* and *extollo* have no Perfect nor Supine of their own, but take the Perfect and Supine of *affero* and *effero*.

8. *Cerno* has neither Perfect nor Supine in the sense of *see*, *perceive*; but the Perfect *crēvi* is used in the sense of "entering upon an inheritance."

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Gigno,	gēnūi,	gēnītum,	<i>to beget.</i> (in, pro.)
Lino,	lēvi, livi,	litum,	<i>to smear.</i> (col, il, per, ob.)
Pōno,	pōsui,	posītum,	{ <i>to place.</i> (ante, ap, com, de, dis, ex, op.)
Sino,	sīvi,	sītum,	<i>to allow.</i>
Desino,	desi,	desitum,	<i>to cease.</i>
Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	<i>to despise.</i>
Sterno, ⁹	strāvi,	stratum,	{ <i>to stretch on the</i> <i>ground.</i> (in, con, pro, re.)
Temno,	_____	_____	<i>to despise. but</i>
Contemno,	contempsi,	contemptum,	<i>to despise.</i>

146. *a. PO* is changed into *psi, ptum*; as, *Carpo, carpsi, carptum*, to pluck.

So the compounds of *carpo, concerpo, &c.*; *clēpo*, to steal; *repo*, to creep; *scalpo*, to scratch; *sculpo*, to work with the chisel: *serpo*, to creep, — and the compounds of these words.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	{ <i>to break—tear.</i> (ab, e, con, &c.)
Strēpo,	strēpui,	strēpītum,	<i>to make a noise.</i> (ob.)

147. *QUO.*

Cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	{ <i>to dress.</i> (con, de, dis, ex, &c.)
Linqo,	liqui,	(lictum,)	<i>to leave.</i>
Relinqo,	reliqui,	relictum,	<i>to leave behind.</i> (dere, de.)

148. *a. RO* is changed into *ssi, stum*; as, *Gēro, gessi, gestum*, to carry. — So *uro*, to burn, and its compounds, *aduro, comburo, &c.*

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	<i>to run.</i>
<i>Ac, con, de, dis, ex, in, oc, per, prae, pro-curro</i> , sometimes have, and sometimes have not, the reduplication in the Perfect; <i>circum, re, suc, trans-curro</i> , are without it.			
Fēro,	tūli,	lātum,	{ <i>to bear.</i> (ante, circum, de, per, post, prae, pro, re, trans.)
Affēro,	attūli,	allātum,	<i>to bring.</i>
Aufēro,	abstūli,	ablātum,	<i>to take away.</i>
Confēro,	contūli,	collātum,	<i>to compare together.</i>
Diffēro,	distūli,	dilātum,	<i>to scatter abroad.</i>
Effēro,	extūli,	elātum,	<i>to bring out.</i>
Infēro,	intūli,	illātum,	<i>to bring into.</i>
Offēro,	obtūli,	oblātum,	<i>to bring to.</i>
Suffēro,	(sustūli,)	(sublātum,)	<i>to lift up.</i>

9. *Consterno* and *externo*, when they signify *to alarm*, are of the first conjugation. The other compounds are conjugated like *sterno*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Fūro, ¹⁰	(furui,)	_____	<i>to rage.</i>
Quaero,	quaesivi,	quaesitum,	<i>to seek.</i>
It changes <i>ae</i> into <i>i</i> in the compounds; as,			
Aquiro,	acquisiui,	acquisitum,	{ <i>to acquire.</i> (con, ex, re, in, per.)
Sēro,	sēvi,	sātum,	<i>to sow.</i>
Consēro,	consēvi,	constum,	<i>to sow.</i> (in.)
Sēro,	serui (<i>rare</i>),	sertum (<i>rare</i>),	<i>to join.</i>
Consēro,	consēruī,	consertum,	<i>to join.</i> (de, dis, ex, in.)
Tēro,	trīvi,	tritum,	<i>to rub.</i> (at, con, de, &c.)
Verro,	verri,	versum,	<i>to brush.</i> (con, e, de, &c.)

149. *a. SO* is changed into *sivi, situm*; as, *Arcesso, arcessivi, arcessitum*, to summon.

So also *capesso*, to undertake; *facesso*, to give trouble; *laccesso*, to provoke.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Depso,	depsui,	{ depsitum, depstum, }	<i>to knead.</i>
Incesso,	{ incesi, incessivi, }	_____	<i>to go — attack.</i>
Pinso,	{ pinsui et pinsi, }	{ pinsitum, pinsum, pistum, }	<i>to grind — to pound.</i>
Viso,	visi,	visum,	<i>to go to visit.</i> (re, in.)

150. *TO.*

Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	<i>to bend.</i> (in, de, re.)
Mēto,	messui,	messum,	<i>to reap.</i> (de.)
Mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	{ <i>to send.</i> (a, ad, com, de, di, e, im, o, &c.)
Necto,	nexi & nexui,	nexum,	<i>to bind, knit.</i> (an, con.)
Pecto,	pexi & pexui,	pexum,	<i>to comb.</i> (de.)
Pēto,	petivi, petii,	petitum,	{ <i>to ask — seek.</i> (ap, ex, op, re.)
Plecto,	plexi & plexui,	(plexum,)	<i>to twist.</i>
Sisto,	(stīti,)	stātum,	<i>to stop.</i>
Subsisto,	substīti,	substitum,	{ <i>to cause to stand still.</i> (ab, ad, de, con, ex, in, ob, &c.)
Sterto,	stertui or ti,	_____	<i>to snore.</i>
Verto, ¹¹	verti,	versum,	{ <i>to turn.</i> (a, ad, con, e, sub, &c.)

151. *UO* is changed into *ui, ūtum*; as, *Tribuo, tribui, tribūtum*, to grant — bestow.

So also *acuo*, to sharpen; *batuo* (no supine), to beat—to fight; *exuo*, to put off clothes; *induo*, to moisten—to wet; *induo*, to put on clothes; *minuo*, to lessen; *spuo*, to spit; *stiduo*, to set—to place; *sternuo* (no supine), to sneeze; *suo*, to stitch.

10. The first person Present of *furo* is not used.

11. *Director, praevector*, and *revector*, compounds of *verto*, are Deponents.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Fluo,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow. (af, con, ef, inter.)
Luo,	lui,	lūtum, lūtum,	to pay—to wash.
Its compounds have <i>ūtum</i> in the Supine; as,			
Abluo,	ablui,	ablūtum,	to wash away.
Ruo,	ruī,	ruītum, rūtum,	to rush—to fall.
Its compounds have <i>ūtum</i> ; as,			
Diruo,	dirui,	dirūtum,	to overthrow. (lr, ob, pro.)
(Corruo and irruo have no Supine.)			
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	{ to build—to pile. (con, de, ex, in.)
Annuo,	annui,	{ annutum { (doubtful),	{ to assent. (ab, in, re.) { (The Supine in all doubtful.)
Congruo,	congrui,	_____	to agree.
Ingruo,	ingrui,	_____	to assail.
Mētuō,	metui,	_____	to fear.
Pluo,	plui,	_____	to rain.

152. *VO* is changed into *vi, ūtum*; as, *Volvo, volvi, volūtum*, to roll; *solvo, solvi, solūtum*, to loose; and their compounds.

Except *Vivo, vixi, victum*, to live.

153. *XO* is changed into *xui, xtum*; as, *Texo, texui, textum*, to weave and its compounds.

154. Inchoatives in *aco*, that is, such as denote a beginning, are formed principally from Verbs of the second conjugation, but sometimes from Substantives and Adjectives. Those derived from Verbs of the second conjugation have no other Perfect than that of their root; the others either have none or form it in *af*. Many of the verbal inchoatives have the Supine of their root; See p. 80.

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

155. a. The Fourth Conjugation makes *īvi, itum*; as, *Audio, audiui, auditum*, to hear.

b. EXCEPTIONS.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Amīcio,	{ amicui, { amixi,	{ amictum.	to clothe.
Apērio,	apēui,	apertum,	{ to open. (opērio, co-opērio.)
Compērio,	compēri,	compertum,	to discover. (re.)
Caecutio,	_____	_____	to be dim-sighted.
Cambio,	campsi,	campsum,	{ to change money. { (very rare).
Dementio,	_____	_____	to be mad.
Eo,	īvi,	itum,	to go. (ad, ab, circum, &c.)

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Farcio,	farsi,	{ fartum and farctum,	to stuff.
Its compounds change <i>a</i> into <i>e</i> ; as, Confercio, confersi, confertum, to fill up. (ef, in, re.)			
Fërio,	{ wants the Perfect and Supine; instead of the Perfect, <i>percussi</i> is used for the Active Per- fect, and <i>ictus sum</i> generally for the Passive.		
Ferôcio,			to be fierce.
Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	to prop.
Haurio,	hausi,	{ haustum, (hausum seldom),	to draw.
Queo,	quîvi or quii,	quîtum,	may—can.
Raucio,	rausi,	(rausum, rare)	to be hoarse.
Sălio, to salt,	is regular, but		
Sălio,	salui & salii,	saltum,	to spring.
Its compounds change <i>a</i> into <i>i</i> ; as, Desălio, desălui, desălii, desultum, to spring forth. (ex, in.)			
Sancio,	{ sancîvi, sanxi, sancii,	{ sancîtum, and sanctum,	to decree—sanction.
Sarcio,	sârsi,	sartum,	to patch. (re.)
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	{ to feel—think. (con, dis, prae.)
Sepëlio,	sepelivi,	sepultum,	to bury.
Sëpio,	sepsi,	septum,	to enclose—hedge in.
Singultio,	{ singultîvi (rare),	—	to sob—hiccup.
Vëneo,	{ venii and venîvi,	venîtum (doubtful),	to be sold.
Vënio,	vëni,	ventum,	{ to come. (ad, com, ob, in, per.)
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	to bind. (de.)

c. The following Verbs have the Perfect formed regularly, but want the Supine:

Gestio, ivi, to show signs of joy | Glôcio, to cluck as a hen.
by the gestures of the body. | Ineptio, to play the fool.

156. *Desiderative* Verbs which express the *desire of doing an act*, and end in *urio*,—as, *coenaturio*,—have neither Perfect nor Supine, except *esurio*, *nupturio*, and *parturio*, which have *esurivi*, *nupturivi*, and *parturivi*, but no Supine.

DEPONENT VERBS.

157. *a.* The Perfect of a Deponent Verb is formed in the same manner as if the Supine of the Active voice existed, by changing *um* into *us*; thus, *Gratulor, gratulatus sum*, as if from *gratulo, gratulāvi, gratulātum*.

There are no exceptions in the First Conjugation.

b. EXCEPTIONS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	
Fāteor,	fassus sum,	<i>to confess.</i>
Its compounds change <i>a</i> into <i>i</i> ; as,		<i>to confess. (pro.)</i>
Confiteor,	confessus sum,	<i>to deny.</i>
Diffiteor,		
Medeor,	{ medicātus is used as the Perfect,	{ <i>to heal.</i>
Misereor,	{ miserītus sum, misertus sum, }	<i>to pity.</i>
Reor,	rātus sum,	{ <i>to think. (No Imperfect Potential.)</i>

c. EXCEPTIONS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Apiscor,	aptus sum,	<i>to get.</i>
Adīpiscor,	adeptus sum,	<i>to obtain.</i>
Comminiscor,	commentus sum,	<i>to devise.</i>
Defetiscor,	{ defessus sum } (doubtful), }	<i>to become weary.</i>
Expurgiscor,	experrectus sum,	<i>to awake.</i>
Fruor,	frūitus and fructus,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
Grādior,	gressus sum,	<i>to proceed.</i>
Its compounds change <i>a</i> into <i>e</i> ; as,		<i>to go to — to accord.</i>
Aggrēdiōr,	aggressus sum,	
Irascor, ¹	iratus sum,	<i>to be angry.</i>
Lābor,	lapsus sum,	<i>to fall.</i>
Lōquor,	{ locūtus sum, loquutus sum, }	<i>to speak.</i>
Mōrior,	mortuus sum,	{ <i>to die. (in the Future Participle it makes moritūrus.)</i>
Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	<i>to get.</i>
Nascor,	nātus sum,	{ <i>to be born. (Participle Future, nascitūrus.)</i>
Nītor, ²	nīsus or nixus sum,	{ <i>to endeavour — to lean upon.</i>
Obliviscor,	oblītus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>

1. I have been angry, or was angry, is generally rendered by *succensus*.

2. *Entor*, in the sense of *to bring forth*, has *enisa* in the Participle.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	
Orior, ³	ortus sum,	{ to rise. (Participle Future, <i>oritūrus</i> .)
Paciscor,	pactus sum,	{ to bargain.
Pascor,	pastus sum,	{ to feed.
Pătior,	passus sum,	{ to suffer.
Perpătior,	perpessus sum,	{ to endure.
Proficiscor,	profectus sum,	{ to go—to travel.
Quėror,	questus sum,	{ to complain.
Ringor,	{ rictus sum (doubtful), }	{ to grin—to shew the teeth.
Sėquor,	{ sēcūtus sum, sēcūtus sum, }	{ to follow.
Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	{ to revenge—to punish.
Ūtor,	ūsus sum,	{ to use.

d. The following Verbs want the Perfect Tense :

Liquor, to melt.

Vescor, to feed.

Reminiscor, to remember.

e. EXCEPTIONS IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Expėrior,	expertus sum,	to try.
Mėtior,	mensus sum,	to measure. (di, e, per.)
Oppėrior,	oppertus sum,	to wait for.
Ordior,	orsus sum,	to begin.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

158. Redundant Verbs are those which have different forms to express the same sense; as, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree.

1. Some Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and rarely of the Third ; as,

Lavo, lavas, lavāre, }	and	{ lavo, lavas, lavāre, to wash.
Sono, sonas, sonāre, }		{ sono, sonas, sonāre, to sound.

2. Some are usually of the Second, and rarely of the Third ; as,

Ferveo, ferves, fervēre, }	and	{ fervo, fervis, fervēre, to boil.
Fulgeo, fulges, fulgēre, }		{ fulgo, fulgis, fulgēre, to shine. (poetical.)
Strideo, strides, stridēre, }		{ strido, stridis, stridēre, to creak.
Tergeo, terges, tergēre, }		{ tergo, tergis, tergēre, to wipe.
Tueor, tuēris, tuēri, }		{ tuor, tuēris, tul, to defend.

3. Some are usually of the Third, and rarely of the Fourth ; as,

Arcesso, arcessis, arcessēre, }	and	{ arcesso, arcessis, arcessēre, to send for.
Fōdio, fodis, fodēre, }		{ fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig.
Morior, morēris, mori, }		{ morior, moriris, moriri, to die.
Orior, orēris, }		{ orior, oriris, oriri, to rise.
Potior, potēris, }		{ potior, potiris, potiri, to obtain.
Sallo, sallis, sallēre, }		{ sallio or salio, sallis, sallire, to salt.

NOTE.—*Potior* is always of the Fourth Conjugation in the Infinitive.

3. *Orior* has, in the Infinitive, *oriri*, and Imperfect Subjunctive *orirer*, according to the fourth conjugation. In the other Tenses, it generally follows the third conjugation.

Additional and recapitulatory Remarks on Compound Verbs.

159. *a.* In Compound Verbs the last consonant of the Preposition is sometimes changed into the first of the simple Verb; thus, *ad-fero* becomes *affero*. Sometimes it is changed into a different letter, thus *ab-fero* is changed into *aufero*. Sometimes a letter is either added to the Preposition, as *redeo* for *re-co*; or taken from it, as *omitto* for *obmitto*.

b. The following simple Verbs, when compounded, change their first vowel into *e*; *arceo, capto, carpo, damno, fallo, farcio, fatiscor, gradior, jacto, lacto, pario, partio, patior, patro, sacro, scando, spargo, tracto*. Yet we find *praedamno, desacro, pertracto*.

c. These change the first vowel into *i*; *cado, caedo, cano, egeo, habeo, laedo, lateo, placeo, quaero, rapio, salio, sapio, statuo, taceo, tango, teneo*. But we find *com-per-placco; post-ante-habeo, oc-re-cano* are sometimes found.

d. The following change the first vowel into *i* only in the Present Tense, and in those derived from it; *ago, apiscor, capio, emo, fateor, frango, jacio, pango, premo, rego, redeo, specio*. Except *coemo, cogo* (for *con-ago*), *dego* (for *de-ago*), *circum-sat-per-ago*. *Antecapio* and *anticipio, superjacio* and *superficio*, are both used. *Circum-super-sedco; de-ob-re-pango*. Some compounds of *facio*, with Nouns and Adjectives, throw away the *i* which precedes *o*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *significo, laetifico*.

e. The compounds of *calco* and *salto* change *a* into *u*.

f. Those of *causo, claudio, lavo*, throw away *a*; as, *accuso, recludo, diluo*.

Verbs which have Two Perfects.

160. *a.* Some Verbs have both an Active and a Passive Perfect Tense; as, *libet, libuit, libitum est*: so, *licet, piget, pudet, juro, nubo, placeo, suesco*.

Verbs which borrow Tenses from others.

b. Inchoatives in *eo* borrow their Perfects from their Primitives; as, *tepesco, tepui*, from *tepeo*: their Supines also; as, *abolesco, evi, itum*, from *aboleo*.

Ferio, percussus, percussum, from *percutio*;
Fero, tull, latum, from *tulo*;
Furo, insanivi, insanitum, from *insanio*;
Melo, minxi, mictum, from *mingo*;
Sido, sedsi, sessum, from *sedeo*;
Sum, ful, futurum, from *fuo* (obsolete);
Liquor, liquefactus sum, from *liqueflo*;
Medeor, medicatus sum, from *medicor* (deponent);
Reminiscor, recordatus sum, from *recordor*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

161. Those Verbs are called *irregular*, whose Tenses are not all formed according to the Rules.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS.

161. Possum,	pōtūi,	—	posse,	to be able.
162. Eo,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to go.
163. Volo,	vōlui,	—	velle,	to be willing.
164. Nolo,	nōlui,	—	nolle,	to be unwilling.
165. Mālo,	mālui,	—	malle,	to be more willing.
166. Edo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ēdere vel esse,	to eat.
167. Fero,	tūli,	lātum,	ferre,	to bear.
168. Fio,	factus sum	vel fui,	fiēri,	to become.
169. Ferror,	lātus sum	vel fui,	ferri,	to be borne.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Possum,	pōtes,	pōtest,		possūmus,	pōtēstis,	possunt.
Ēo, ¹	is,	īt,		īmus,	ītis,	ēunt.
Vōlo,	vis,	vult,		vōlūmus,	vultis,	vōlunt.
Nōlo,	nonvis,	nonvult,		nōlūmus,	nonvultis,	nōlunt.
Mālo,	māvis,	māvult,		mālūmus,	māvultis,	mālunt.
Ēdo, ²	ēdis v. es,	ēdit v. est,		ēdimus,	ēditis v. estis,	ēdunt.
Fēro,	fers,	fert,		fērīmus,	fertis,	fērunt.
Fīo, ³	fīs,	fīt,		fīmus,	fītis,	fīunt.
Fēror, ferris v. ferre,	fertur,			fērīmur,	ferimini,	feruntur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōt-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,		ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērānt.
Ī-bām,	bās,	bāt,		bāmūs,	bātīs,	bānt.
Vōl- Nōl- Māl- Ēd- Fēr- Fī- }	ēbām,	ēbās,	ēbāt,	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbānt.
Fēr-ēbār,	{ ēbārīs v. ēbārē,	ēbātūr,	ēbāmūr,	ēbāmīnī,	ēbāntūr	

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōt-ēro,	ērīs,	ērīt,		ērīmus,	ērītīs,	ērunt.
Ī-bo,	bīs,	bīt,		bīmūs,	bītīs,	bunt.
Vōl- Nōl- Māl- Ēd- Fēr- Fī- }	ām, ēs,	ēt,		ēmus,	ētīs,	ēnt.
Fēr-ār,	ērīs v. ērē,	ētūr,		ēmūr,	ēmīnī,	entur.

1. In the Passive, *Ēo* is found only as an Impersonal, *ītur, ībatur, itum est*, &c. Some compounds of *eo* have a transitive meaning, and may thus become Passive; as, *adeo*, I approach, *adeor*.

2. In the Passive of *Edo*, only *estur* and *editur* occur.

3. *Fīo* serves as the Passive of *facio*, when *facio* is not compounded with a Preposition, as in p. 72.

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-	}	i, isti, it,	īmus,	istis,	ērunt <i>v.</i> ēre.
īv-					
Vōlū-					
Nōlū-					
Mālū-					
Ed-					
Tūl-					
Fact-us	{	sum es est,	i sūmus	estis	sunt
Lāt-us		<i>vel</i> <i>vel</i> <i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i> <i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	fuērunt
		fūi, fuisti, fuit.	fūimus,	fuistis,	<i>vel</i> fuēre.

The Perfect of *eo* is frequently formed by rejecting the *v*; thus, *ii* for *iei*: so also its compounds; thus, *rediis* for *rediei*.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-	}	ērām, ērās, ērāt,	ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērānt.
īv-					
Vōlū-					
Nōlū-					
Mālū-					
Ed-					
Tūl-					
Fact-us	{	ērām ērās ērāt	i ērāmus	ērātis	ērant
Lat-us		<i>vel</i> <i>vel</i> <i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i> <i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
		fūērām, fūērās, fūērāt	fūērāmus,	fūērātis,	fūērānt.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-	}	ēro, ēris, ērit,	ērīmus,	ērītis,	ērint.
īv-					
Vōlū-					
Nōlū-					
Mālū-					
Ed-					
Tūl-					
Fact-us	{	ēro ēris ērit	i ērīmus	ērītis	ērunt
Lat-us		<i>vel</i> <i>vel</i> <i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i> <i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
		fuēro, fuēris, fuērīt,	fuērīmus,	fuērītis,	fuērīnt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2.	<i>Singular.</i>	3.	2.	<i>Plural.</i>	3.
I , ito,		ito,	ite, itôte,		ěunto.
Nôli , nôlito,		—	nôlite, nôlitôte,		—
Ēdē , ědito, <i>vel</i>		ědito <i>vel</i>	ědite, ěditôte, <i>vel</i>	}	ědunto.
ēs, ěsto,		esto,	ěstē, ěstôte,		
Fēr , ferto,		ferto,	ferte, fertôte,		fěrunto.
Fī , fito,		fīto,	fite, fitôte,		fīunto.
Ferre , fertor,		fertor,	fěrimini <i>vel</i> or,		fěruntor.

Possum, volo, and malo, are not found in the Imperative.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
Pos-sim,	sīs,	sīt,	sīmūs,	sītīs,	sint.
Ē-am,	ās,	ăt,	āmus,	ătīs,	ant.
Vēl-im,	is,	it,	īmus,	ītīs,	int.
Nōl-im,					
Māl-im,					
Ēd-am,	ās,	ăt,	āmus,	ătīs,	ant.
Fēr-am,					
Fī-am,					
Fēr-ar,	āris <i>v.</i> āre, ātur,		āmur,	āmīni,	antur.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
Pos-sem ,	sēs,	sēt,	sēmūs,	sētīs,	sent.
Ī-rem ,	rēs,	rēt,	rēmūs,	rētīs,	rent.
Vēl-em ,	ēs,	et,	ēmus,	ētīs,	ent.
Noll-em ,					
Mall-em ,					
Ēdēr-em ,					
<i>v.</i> essem,					
Ferr-em ,	rēris <i>v.</i> rēre, rētur,	rēmur,	rēmur,	rēmīni,	rentur.
Fĭēr-em ,					
Fer-er ,					

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-	{				
Īv-					
Vōlū-					
Nōlū-					
Mālū-					
Ēd-	{				
Tūl-					
Fact-us	{	sim	i sīmus,	sītis	sint
Lāt-us		sis	vel	vel	vel
		sit			
		vel	fūerimus,	fuerītis,	fūerint.
		vel			
		fūerit,			

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pōtū-	{				
Īv-					
Vōlū-					
Nōlū-					
Mālū-					
Ēd-	{				
Tūl-					
Fact-us	{	essem	i essēmus	essētis	essent
Lāt-us		esses	vel	vel	vel
		esset,			
		vel	fūissēmus,	fuissētis,	fuissent.
		vel			
		fūisset,			

The Subjunctive Mood is conjugated like the Potential, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. AND IMPERF. TENSE.

1. Posse, *to be able.*
2. Īre, *to go.*
3. Velle, *to be willing.*
4. Nolle, *to be unwilling.*
5. Malle, *to be more willing.*
6. Ēdere *vel* esse, *to eat.*
7. Ferre, *to bear.*
8. Fieri, *to become or be done.*
9. Ferri, *to be borne.*

PERF. AND PLUPERF.

1. Pōtuisse.
2. Īvisse.
3. Vōltuisse.
4. Nōltuisse.
5. Māltuisse.
6. Ēdisse.
7. Tūlisse.
8. Factum } esse *vel*
9. Latum } fuisse.

FUTURE IMPERFECT TENSE.

1. _____
2. *Ītūrum esse, to be about to go.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. *Ēsūrum esse, to be about to eat.*
7. *Lātūrum esse, to be about to bear.*
8. *Factum irī, to be about to become.*
9. *Latum irī, to be about to be borne.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

1. _____
2. *Ītūrum fuisset.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. *Ēsūrum fuisset.*
7. *Lātūrum fuisset.*
8. *Fāciendum fuisset.*
9. *Fērendum fuisset.*

Possum, volo, nolo, malo, have neither Future Imperfect, nor Future Perfect Tense of the Infinitive.

GERUNDS.

1. _____
2. *Ēun-di, do, dum.*
3. *Vōlen-di, do, dum.*
4. *Nōlen-di, do, dum.*
5. *Mālen-di, do, dum.*
6. *Ēden-di, do, dum.*
7. *Fēren-di, do, dum.*
8. _____
9. _____

SUPINES.

1. _____
2. *Ītum, Ītu.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
3. *Ēsum, Ēsu.*
7. *Lātum.*
8. _____
9. *Lātu.*

Possum and *ſio* have no Gerunds. *Feror*, being Passive, has none.
Possum, volo, nolo, malo, and *ſio*, have no Supines.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

1. *Pōtens,¹ being able.*
2. *N. Īens, — G. ĕuntis, —
D. ĕunti, going.*
3. *Vōlens,¹ being willing.*
4. *Nōlens,¹ being unwilling.*
5. *Mālens,¹ being more willing.*
6. *Ēdens, eating.*
7. *Fērens, bearing.*
8. *Factus, become or being done.
[borne.]*
9. *Lātus, borne or having been*

FUTURE.

1. _____
2. *Itūrus, about to go.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. *Esūrus, about to eat.*
7. *Latūrus, about to bear.*
8. *Fāciendus, a, um,² about to
become or to be done.*
9. *Fērendus, a, um, to be borne.*

Prosum takes a *d* in those persons which in *sum* begin with an *e*; as, *es, prod-es, prod-eram, prod-ero*, &c.

Queo, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable, are conjugated like *eo*, except that they have no Imperative Mood nor Gerunds.

1. *Potens, volens, nolens, malens*, are generally used as Adjectives.

2. *Faciendus, a, um*, is sometimes changed into *faciundus, a, um*.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

170. *a. A Defective Verb* is one that is used only in some of the Moods and Tenses. The following are the principal:—

b. Aio *, *I say.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	INDICATIVE MOOD.		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Aio,</i>	<i>āis,</i>	<i>āit,</i>	— <i>aIunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>AI-ēbam,</i>	<i>ēbas,</i>	<i>ēbat,</i>	— <i>ēbāmus, ebatis, ebant.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<i>āisti,</i>	<i>āit,</i>	—

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

—	<i>ai,</i>	—		—	—	—
---	------------	---	--	---	---	---

POTENTIAL MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	—	<i>aIas,</i>	<i>aIat,</i>		—	—	<i>aIant.</i>
--------------	---	--------------	--------------	--	---	---	---------------

PARTICIPLE. *Pres. Aiens, saying.*

171. *Ausim, I dare.*

INDICATIVE AND POTENTIAL MOODS.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Ausim,</i>	<i>ausis,</i>	<i>ausit,</i>		—	—	<i>ausint.</i>
--------------	---------------	---------------	---------------	--	---	---	----------------

172. *Ave, hail.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	—	{ <i>ave or</i> }	—		—	{ <i>avēte or</i> }	—
		{ <i>avēto,</i> }				{ <i>avētōte,</i> }	

INFINITIVE MOOD. *Pres. Avēre, to hail or speed.*

173. *Salve, hail, be well.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Fut.Imp.</i>	—	<i>salvēbis,</i>	—		—	—	—
-----------------	---	------------------	---	--	---	---	---

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	—	{ <i>salve,</i> }	—		—	{ <i>salvēte,</i> }	—
		{ <i>salvēto,</i> }				{ <i>salvetōte,</i> }	

INFINITIVE MOOD. *Pres. Salvēre, to be well.*

* In the Verb *aio*, the first two letters form one syllable when they are followed by a vowel, but the *a* becomes short when *i* is followed by a consonant; as *ait*, he says.

174. Cēdo, *tell me.*

Singular. IMPERATIVE MOOD. Plural.

Pres. — cēdo, — | — cēdīte, —

Cedo is used both as singular and plural; *cēdīte* as plural only, and contracted into *cette*.

175. Faxo or Faxim, *I will do it or may do it.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Fut. Imp. Faxo, faxis, faxit, | faxīmus, faxītis, faxint.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Perf. Faxim, faxis, faxit, | faxīmus, faxītis, faxint.

Faxo and *faxim* are merely old forms for *fecero* and *fecerim*, and are used in the same sense.

176. Quaeso, *I pray, beseech.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Quaeso, — — | quaesūmus, — —

177. Inquam, *I say.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Inquam, inquis, inquit, | inqūimus, inqūitis, inqūiunt.

Imp. Inqui-ēbam, ebas, ebat, | ebamus, ebatis, ebant.

Perf. — inquisti, inquit, | — inquistis, —

Fut. Imp. — inquires, inquiet, | — — —

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. — ^r { inque, } — | — inqūte, —
inquitto, }

POTENTIAL.

Pres. — inquieras, inquietat, | — inquierātis, inquietant.

PARTICIPLE. Pres. Inquiens, *saying.*

178. a. The following Verbs, — *Coepi*, I begin *or* have begun; *Odi*, I hate *or* have hated; *Memini*, I remember *or* have remembered, — have only those tenses which are formed from the Perfect, but the persons of each of these tenses are entire: —

Coep-i,	}	ēram, ēro, ērim, issem, isse.
Od-i,		
Memin-i,		

b. Coepi has the Perfect Participle *coeptus*, begun or having begun, and the Future Active Participle *coepturus*, about to begin. *Odi* has the Participle *osus*, hated or having hated, and *osurus*, about to hate. *Memini* has *memento* and *mementôte*, the second persons singular and plural of the Imperative.

c. The Perfect of these Verbs has the meaning of the Present, the Past-Perfect of the Imperfect, and the Future Perfect of the Future-Imperfect.

179. *a. Fari* and its compounds *adfari* or *affari*, *effari*, and *profari* are used almost exclusively by the Poets. *Fatur*, *fabor*; the Imperative, *fare*; the Participles, *fatus*, *fandus*; the Gerunds, *fandi* and *fando*; and the Supine, *fatus*, are most commonly used. Of *Dare*, the Passive forms *dor* and *der* are not found in classic authors.

b. Sci, the Second Person Singular Imperative of *scio*, is not used; instead of which, *scito* is employed.

c. Of the following Verbs, only the subjunctive Persons are to be found: — *Apège*, begone; *Insti*, he begins; *Confi*, it is done, *confiet*, *confieret*, *confiëri*; *Defi*, it is wanting, *defiet*, *defiat*, *defiëri*; *Ovas*, thou rejoicest, *ovat*, *ovet*, *oväret*, *ovans*, *ovatus*, *ovandi*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

180. *a.* An *Impersonal Verb* is one that is used only in the Third Person Singular; as, *decet*, it becomes; *delectat*, it delights; *videtur*, it seems.

b. The principal Impersonals are *Misëret*, *piget*, *poenitet*, *püdet*, *taedet*, *oportet*, *libet*, *licet*, *decet*, *liquet*, *interest*, *refert*, *accidit*, &c.

c. Impersonal Verbs have all the moods and tenses which Personal Verbs have, with the exception of the Imperative Mood; thus,

Indic. *Decet*, *decēbat*, *decēbit*, *decūit*, *decūerat*, *decūërit*; *Subj.* *decēat*, *decēret*, *decūërit*, *decūisset*; *Infin.* *decēre*, *decuisse*.

d. The Imperative, when necessary, is supplied by the Present Subjunctive: as, *delectet*, let him delight.

e. Impersonals want not only the Imperative but generally the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

f. Many Personal Verbs are used as Impersonals, with an Infinitive after them, or the Subjunctive Mood and *ut*; thus we do not say, *si places audire*, but *si placet tibi audire*, if it pleases you to hear.

g. Some Impersonals are found in the Third Person Plural; thus, *Non te haec pudet*.

h. The Third Person Singular of many Verbs, especially those which express a movement, is used impersonally in the Passive; as, *curritur*, it is run, or they run. These Passive Impersonals may be formed both from transitive and intransitive Verbs; as, *scribitur*, they write, or it is written; *statuitur*, it is stood, or they stand.

i. Intransitives can be used in the Passive voice only as Impersonals.

ADVERBS.

181. *a.* An *Adverb* is a word which qualifies a *Verb*, an *Adjective*, or another *Adverb*, by expressing some circumstance of *time*, *place*, or *manner* respecting it; as, "He writes *correctly*;" "A *remarkably* diligent boy;" "He speaks *very fluently*."

b. Adverbs are, in general, derived from Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, or Prepositions. They are likewise formed by composition, in various ways; as, *hodie*, to-day, from *hoc-die*; *postridie*, the following day, from *postero die*, &c.

c. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles, have generally degrees of comparison. The Positive more frequently ends in *e* or *ter*; the Comparative in *ius*; the Superlative in *issimè*; as,

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
Altè, <i>highly</i> ;	altiùs,	altissimè.
Fortitèr, <i>bravely</i> ;	fortiùs,	fortissimè.

d. Adverbs are subject to the same irregularities and defects as their primitives; thus,

Benè, <i>well</i> ,	melius,	optimè.
Malè, <i>badly</i> ,	peius,	pessimè.
Aultùm, <i>much</i> ,	plùs,	plurimùm.
Parùm, <i>little</i> .	minùs,	minimè, minimùm.
Prope, <i>near</i> ,	propius,	proximè.
Ultrà, <i>beyond</i> ,	ulteriorùs,	ultimò, -ùm.
_____	magis, <i>more</i> ,	maximè.
_____	ociùs, <i>more swiftly</i> ,	ocissimè.
_____	prùs, <i>sooner</i> ,	primò, primùm.
_____	potius, <i>rather</i> ,	potissimum.
Bellè, <i>prettily</i> ,	_____	bellissimè.
Penè, <i>almost</i> ,	_____	penissimè.
Nuper, <i>late</i> ,	_____	nuperrimè.
Novè, <i>noviter, newly</i> ,	_____	novissimè.
Meritò, <i>deservedly</i> ,	_____	meritissimò.
Satis, <i>enough</i> ,	satius,	_____
Secus, <i>otherwise</i> ,	secius,	_____

e. Two Adverbs, not derived from Adjectives, are also compared; *diù*, long, *diutius*, *diutissimè*; *sæpe*, often, *sæpius*, *sæpissimè*.

f. The Neuter Gender of Adjectives is often used Adverbially; as, *facile* for *faciliter*; *recens* for *recenter*. The Poets frequently use the neuters, singular and plural, of Adjectives, both of the second and third declensions, as Adverbs; as, *torvum clamare*, *multa gemere*.

PREPOSITIONS.

182. *a.* A *Preposition* is a word placed before Nouns and Pronouns to show the *relation* which they bear to each other,

or to some Verb; as, "He went *from* London to York;" "She is *above* disguise;" "They are instructed *by* him."

b. These Prepositions govern an Ablative: *a*¹, *ab*, *abs*, *absque*, *coram*, *cum*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *palam*, *prae*, *pro*, *sine*, *tenus*.

c. These govern an Accusative and an Ablative: *clam*, *in*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*.

d. These govern an Accusative:

Ad, *pēnes*, *adversus*, *circum*, *cis*, *circiter*, *erga*,
Extra, *apud*, *ante*, *secus*, *trans*, *supra*, *versus*, *ob*, *intra*,
Ultra, *post*, *praeter*, *propter*, *prope*, *pone*, *secundum*,
Per, *circa*, *citra*, *contra*, *juxta*, *inter*, et *infra*.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS.

183. Prepositions governing the *Accusative* case.

<i>Ad</i> , to, towards, at, near, for, according to, in respect to.	<i>Intra</i> , within.
<i>Advers-us</i> , -um, against, towards.	<i>Juxta</i> , near, nigh to.
<i>Ante</i> , before (in place, time, or rank).	<i>Ob</i> , on account of, for, before, (with <i>oculos</i>).
<i>Apud</i> , at, with, near, among, in the presence of.	<i>Penes</i> , in the power of.
<i>Circa</i> , ² <i>circum</i> , around, about.	<i>Per</i> , through, during, by.
<i>Circiter</i> (indefinite time), about.	<i>Pone</i> , behind.
<i>Cis</i> , <i>citra</i> , on this side.	<i>Post</i> , behind, after, since.
<i>Contra</i> , opposite to; against (in hostility).	<i>Praeter</i> , except, besides, beside (passing by), beyond.
<i>Erga</i> , towards (of the affections).	<i>Prope</i> , near.
<i>Extra</i> , out of, beyond.	<i>Propter</i> , near, on account of.
<i>Infra</i> , beneath, below (whether of place, rank, or size).	<i>Secundum</i> , next to, after, according to, in favour of.
<i>Inter</i> , between, among, during, mutually (with <i>se</i>).	<i>Supra</i> , above, beyond, more than.
	<i>Trans</i> , across, over.
	<i>Versus</i> , towards.
	<i>Ultra</i> , beyond.
	<i>Usque</i> ³ , as far as.

1. *A*, before consonants; *ab*, before vowels and *s*, *f*, *r*, *s*; *abs*, before *qu* and *t*.

2. *Circa* is used both of time and place; *circum*, only of place.

3. *Usque* is more commonly an Adverb, but is sometimes used alone for *usque ad*.

184. Prepositions which govern the *Ablative* case.

A, ab, abs, from, by, after, on the side of.	Palam, before, in the presence of.
Absque, without.	Prae, before, in comparison with, on account of.
Coram, before, in the presence of.	Pro, before, for, instead of, according to.
Cum, with, along with.	Procul, ⁴ far from.
De, from, of (one of), concerning, according to.	Simul, ⁴ together with.
E, ex, out of, from, agreeably to, for the good of.	Sine, without.
	Tenus, as far as, up to.

Versus and *tenus* are placed after the Noun ; as, *Londinum versus*, towards London ; *Oceano tenus*, as far as the ocean.

Tenus governs the Genitive Case of the Plural Number ; as, *Crurum tenus*, up to the legs.

Cum follows the Ablative Case of Pronouns ; as, *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*.

Prepositions governing either case.

185. a. 1. The *Accusative*.

In, into, to (in what direction, whither?), tending to, towards, against, to or till, upon, over.

Sub, under (with verbs signifying motion, whither?), at, about (signifying time), sub noctem, at nightfall.

Super, above, over, beyond, over and above, in addition to.

Subter, under, is commonly used with the Accusative, both of rest and motion, and rarely with the Ablative.

b. 2. The *Ablative*.

Clam, without the knowledge of.

In, upon, on (of rest, where?), in (of place), among.

4. *Procul* and *simul* are more commonly Adverbs. *Clam*, *coram*, and *palam*, are also frequently Adverbs. Many other Prepositions are used as Adverbs ; such as, *ante* and *post*, *circa* and *extra*, *infra*, *iusta*, *prope*, *propter*, *pone*, *supra*, *ultra*, *super*, and *subter*.

Sub, *under* (signifying *rest* or *situation, where?*), *near* or *close under, at the very time of.*

Super, *upon, concerning.*

Subter is rarely used with the Ablative.

c. Prepositions, compounded with Verbs, frequently change their final consonant into the initial one of the Verb; as, *succedo* from *sub* and *cedo*; *collido* from *con* and *laedo*.

d. The following words are called Inseparable Prepositions, because they are found only in compound words:

Amb, am, around.
Re or *red,* back.
Ne and *ve,* negatives.

Dis or *Di,* asunder.
Se, aside, apart.
Con from *cum,* together.

e. *In,* not. *Per, prae,* and *pro,* have a similar meaning to what they have when single.

For the Prepositions used in composition, see Syntax.

CONJUNCTIONS.

186. a. A *Conjunction* joins words and sentences together; as, "One *and* one make two;" "He *and* I must go."

Conjunctions are divided, in reference to their signification, into several classes:—

b. *Copulative* Conjunctions connect things which are to be considered *jointly*; such as, *et, ac, atque, que,* and; *etiam, quoque (item,* adverbial), also; *cum, tum,* both, and.

c. *Disjunctive* Conjunctions imply diversity, negation, doubt, or opposition; as, *aut, vel, ve, seu, sive,* either, or; *nec, neque, neu, neve,* neither, nor; *an, anne, annon,* whether; *ne, necne,* nor, lest; *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui,* but; *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verum, enimvero,* yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

d. Besides these there are the *Causal, Final, Conditional,* and several other classes.

e. *Eton* or *acon* is used, and not *neque*, when the whole clause is affirmative, and only one word or one idea is to be made negative. *Necnon* is not precisely but nearly equivalent to *et*. Of the Disjunctives, *aut* is more emphatic than *vel*. *Ve* unites single words only, not propositions.

Sive, when it signifies *or*, and is used with single words, denotes that the same person or thing has different names; as, *Mavors sive Mars*.

f. *Ac* and *atque* are used for *as* and *than* after Adjectives and Adverbs which express similarity and dissimilarity; such as, *aeque, justa, par, pariter, perinde, similis, dissimilis, similiter, talis, totidem, alius, aliter, contra, secus, contrarius;* as, *Non aliter scribo ac sentio.*

g. *Sed* denotes direct opposition, *autem*, a distinction or contrast, or a transition from one subject to another.

h. In double questions, *aut* must not be used to distinguish the things opposed to each other (whether the question be direct or indirect), but *an* or *ne* enclitic. The first question is introduced by *utrum*, *num*, or *ne*, or without any particular mark of interrogation.

i. *Et* followed by *et* signifies *both—and*. Instead of *et—et*, we have *et—que* or *que—et*. *Que—que* is used only by the Poets, except when *que* is joined to the relative; as, *qui—que* exissent *quique* ibi mansissent.

j. Negative Propositions are connected by *Nec—nec*; *neque—neque*; *neque—nec*. Affirmative and negative Propositions by *Et—neque*; *neque* or *nec—et*; *nec* or *neque—que*. Disjunctives are thus doubled, *aut—aut*; *vel—vel*; *sive—sive*; *seu—seu*.

<i>Tam—quam</i> ,	} as well as, also, or both, and.	<i>nunc—nunc</i> ,	} one while, modo—modo,	} another while.	<i>non tantum—etiam</i> ,	} not only, non solum sed—etiam,	} but also.
<i>tum—tum</i> , <i>quum—tum</i> ,							

k. *Autem*, *enim*, *vero*, *quidem*, *quoque*, should not stand first in a sentence; *namque*, *sed*, *etenim*, *equidem*, *ergo*, *igitur*, *itaque*, *tamen*, may stand first or second. *Que*, *ne*, *ve*, are joined to the end of the latter of the two words which they connect. *Ac* is used before a consonant, *atque* before a vowel. *Ne*, *quidem*, not even, must be separated by one or more words.

l. *Que*, *ne*, *ve*, are called *enclitics*, because they throw the accent upon the preceding syllable of the word (if that syllable is *long*), to which they are always annexed. If the preceding syllable is *short*, the pronunciation is not affected.

INTERJECTIONS.

187. An *Interjection* expresses a sudden passion or emotion of the mind; as, *ah!* *vae!* *O!*

Nouns, Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verba, are sometimes used as Interjections.

TABLES

EXHIBITING THE

PRINCIPAL RULES OF CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

N.B. It is recommended that the pupil carefully learn these tables previously to his proceeding with Syntax.

PRINCIPAL RULES OF CONCORD.

1. NOMINATIVE CASE AND THE VERB.

1. A Verb must be of the same number and person as its subject or nominative case; as, *Fræceptor legit*, vos verò *negligitis*.

2. Sometimes an Infinitive Mood or a part of a sentence becomes the nominative to a verb in the *third person*.

3. A Collective Noun of the singular number, such as *turba*, *populus*, *plebs*, *manus*, *pars*, *gens*, *vulgus*, &c. sometimes requires the verb to be *plural*.

4. Two or more Nominatives Singular, united by the connective conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c. either expressed or understood, require the verb to be in the plural number, if they denote *living beings*, and especially *persons*.

5. *a.* But if the Nominatives denote things *without life*, and especially abstract ideas, the singular or plural *may* be used.

b. When, however, one of the Nominatives is in the plural, or when that which is asserted is only true of the nominatives taken *jointly*, then the verb *must* be plural.

6. When the Nominatives are of *different* persons, the plural verb and pronoun must agree with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third.

2. THE ADJECTIVE AND THE SUBSTANTIVE.

7. Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, must be of the same gender, number, and case as the substantive to which they belong.

8. Sometimes an Infinitive Mood, or a sentence, is the subject to an adjective in the *neuter* gender.

9. An Adjective, Pronoun, or Participle, may be used alone, a substantive being understood, from which it takes its gender. If *homo* is understood, the adjective is masculine; if *negotium* or *officium*, the adjective is neuter.

10. A Collective Noun may have an adjective in the *plural* number, the gender of which is determined by the sense.

11. Two or more Substantives of the *same* gender require the adjectives, pronouns, and participles, belonging to them, to be in the plural number, and the same gender as the nouns.

12. *a.* Two or more Substantives Singular, of *different* genders, and signifying things *with life*, require an adjective in the plural number, and of the *masculine* rather than of the feminine gender.

b. If the Substantives are of *different* genders, and signify things *without life*, the adjective is *neuter*.

c. If the Substantives are of *different* genders, and signify things *with*, and things *without life*, the adjective must either be neuter, or of the gender of the thing *with life*.

3. THE RELATIVE AND THE ANTECEDENT.

13. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but takes its case from the verb in its own clause.

14. When the Relative refers to a *verb*, or to a *whole clause*, as its antecedent, it must be put in the *neuter* gender.

15. The Relative, like the noun, is in the nominative case when it is the *subject* of a verb, but is in the accusative or some other oblique case when it is the *object* of a verb or preposition.

16. With Antecedents of different genders, the same rules are applicable for relatives as for adjectives.

17. Sometimes the Relative takes its gender and number from the personal pronoun, which is implied in the possessive.

18. *a.* When the Relative is placed *between* two nouns of different genders and numbers and followed by *sum*, or a verb

of *calling* and *naming*, such as *dicere*, *vocare*, *appellare*, *nominare*, &c. it generally agrees in gender with the noun *immediately* after the verb.

b. But sometimes the Relative takes the gender of the preceding noun.

4. A NOUN WITH A NOUN.

19. Two Substantives coming together and signifying the same person or thing, are put in the same case by *apposition*.

20. *a.* The Noun or Pronoun that answers a question, must be in the same case as the word that asks it.

b. The Case must, however, be varied, if the rules of Syntax require a different construction.

21. *a.* Nouns and Pronouns depending on the same verb or preposition, and connected by copulative or disjunctive conjunctions, must be in the same case.

b. Except when the words themselves require different cases.

PRINCIPAL RULES OF GOVERNMENT.

5. NOUNS.

Genitive Case.

22. When two Substantives come together, signifying different things, the latter is put in the *genitive* case.

23. The *Genitive* or *Ablative* is used to express, that one thing is the *property* or *quality* of another; as, of *praise*, *blame*, &c. The latter substantive, however, must always have an adjective joined with it.

24. An Adjective of the neuter gender, not having a substantive expressed, requires a *genitive* case.

Dative Case.

25. A *Dative* may, in some instances, be substituted for the *genitive*.

Ablative Case.

26. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, govern an *ablative* of the thing wanted, and a dative of the object *to* or *for* which the thing is wanted.

27. *a.* Nouns denoting the *definite value* or *cost* of a thing, are put in the *ablative*.

b. But when the cost or value is not exactly defined, but expressed by an *adjective*, the adjective must be in the *genitive*.

28. Nouns denoting the *cause* (*why*), the *manner* (*how*), or the *instrument*, by which an action is performed, are put in the *ablative*.

6. ADJECTIVES.

Genitive Case.

29. Adjectives signifying *desire, aversion, or disdain; knowledge, ignorance, or doubt; remembrance or forgetfulness; fear or confidence; innocence or guilt; diligence or idleness; care or negligence*; with verbal adjectives in *as, us, or tus*, require the genitive case.

30. Words denoting a *part* of a greater number, whether pronouns, comparatives, superlatives, or numerals, require the genitive plural, from which genitive they take their gender.

Dative Case.

31. Adjectives followed in English by *to or for*, and signifying *advantage or disadvantage, likeness or unlikeness, pleasure, displeasure, or pain, submission or resistance, trust or distrust, friendship or hatred, fitness or unfitness, and relation* to any thing, with many words compounded with *con*, govern a *dative* case of the noun to which they refer.

32. Verbal Adjectives in *bitis*, and participles passive in *dus* require a *dative* case.

Accusative Case.

33. Adjectives denoting *measure or distance*, require generally the *accusative* case, but sometimes the *ablative* or *genitive*.

34. An *Accusative* is sometimes put after adjectives and participles governed by a preposition understood.

Ablative Case.

35. Adjectives signifying *plenty or want*, govern the *ablative* and sometimes the *genitive* case.

36. *Dignus, indignus, praeditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, liber, and aliis*; also, adjectives and participles signifying *descent*; as, *natus, satus, ortus, editus, cretus, oriundus, and prognatus*, with these three, signifying *price*,—*carus, vilis, and vendis*, require an *ablative* case.

37. When two Nouns or Pronouns are compared with each other, the one following the comparative is put in the *ablative*, if the word *quam* is not expressed by *quam*.

But when the Conjunction *quàm* is expressed, the objects compared are put in the *same* case.

38. The *excess* or *defect* of one thing compared with another, is put in the *ablative*.

7. VERBS.

Accusative Case.

39. Transitive Verbs, and Deponents having a transitive signification, govern the *immediate object* of an action in the *accusative*.

40. Neuter Verbs have no *accusative* case, except of words having a signification similar to themselves.

41. *Docceo*, and its compounds *dodocceo* and *edocceo*, verbs of *asking, demanding, entreating*, and *enquiring*, and the verb *celo*, govern two *accusatives*, one of the *person*, and another of the *thing*.

42. *Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, govern an *accusative* of the person with an *infinitive*.

Nominative Case.

43. Intransitive Verbs denoting *existence, gesture, or posture*; Passive verbs, denoting *name or title, election or appointment, estimation or opinion*, have the *same* case after them as they have before them.

Genitive Case.

44. *Sum*, signifying the *possession, duty, disposition, sign, or lot* of any one, requires a *genitive*.

45. Verbs of *accusing, complaining, or acquitting, convicting or condemning, admonishing or warning*, require the *person* to be in the *accusative*, and the *crime* or *offence* either in the *genitive* or in the *ablative*, with or without a preposition.

46. Verbs of *remembrance and forgetfulness*, as, *reminiscor, memini, recordor, and obliviscor*, require more frequently a *genitive*, but sometimes an *accusative* of the person or thing remembered or forgotten.

47. *a.* Verbs signifying the *affections* of the mind; as, *doubt, anxiety, grief, shame, desire*, &c. govern either a *genitive* or an *ablative* case.

b. *Miseret, miserescit, piget, poenitet, pudet, taedet*, are followed by an *accusative* of the person affected, and a *genitive* of the thing which is the origin of those feelings.

Dative Case.

48. *a.* All Transitive Verbs require the *immediate object* of an action to be in the *accusative* case; but the *remoter object*, or that *to or for* which any thing is done, or *from* which any thing is taken away, to be in the *dative* case.

The Verbs belonging to this rule are the following:—

b. Verbs of *comparing, giving, adding,*

and *taking away, restoring, and denying, promising and paying, declaring, informing, or explaining*, have, if transitive, both a dative and an accusative; but if intransitive, a dative only.

c. Verbs signifying *advantage or disadvantage, pleasure or displeasure, trust or distrust, command, resistance, or obedience, threatening or being angry with, studying, healing*, and the verbs *nubo* and *parco*, are generally intransitive, governing only a dative.

d. But *juvo, laedo, offendo, delecto, rego*, and *guberno*, govern an accusative.

e. Verbs compounded with the Adverbs *benè, malè, et satis*, and with these Prepositions, *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, super*, have generally a dative; if transitive, with an accusative also, but if intransitives, without it.

49. *Sum*, used for *habeo*, or followed in English by *of* or *to*, has a dative.

50. *Sum, do, duco, flo, habeo, mitto, proficiscor, relinquo, tribuo, venio*, and *verto*, may have one dative of the *person*, and another of the thing which expresses the *purpose, effect, destination, advantage, or disadvantage*.

51. The Impersonal Verbs, put *actively*, require a dative.

Ablative Case.

52. a. Nouns denoting the *cause, the manner, or the instrument* by which an action is performed, are put in the *ablative*.

b. With Passive Verbs, the principal *agent*, if a living being, must be put in the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*.

c. But if the *Agent* after a passive verb does not denote a living being, it must be in the *ablative* without *a* or *ab*.

53. Verbs signifying *plenty or want, filling or emptying, loading or unloading*, and also verbs of *clothing*, require an *ablative*.

54. Verbs of *liberating or delivering from, of removing, keeping at a distance, banishing, or separating*, require an *ablative*, either with or without a preposition.

55. Verbs or Participles signifying *origin or descent*; as, *nascor, natus, ortus, prognatus, oriundus, natus, cretus, editus*, have an *ablative*, either with or without a preposition.

56. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor, lactor, glorior, gaudeo, nitor*, with their compounds *abutor, perfuor, defungor, perfungor*, and the verbs *muto, commutatio, and supersedeo*, require an *ablative*.

57. When a Noun or Pronoun is connected with a participle, expressed or understood, and neither agrees with a verb, nor is governed by any word in the sentence, it is put in the *ablative absolute*.

Infinitive Mood.

58. When two Verbs come together, the latter must be in the infinitive mood, when it denotes the subject or object of the former.

Participles.

59. Participles, Gerunds, and the Supine in *um*, govern the same cases as their verbs.

8. TIME, SPACE, MEASURE, AND PLACE.

60. Nouns denoting a *point* of Time, answering to the question, *when?* are put in the *ablative* without a preposition.

61. Nouns denoting the *duration* of Time, answering to the question, *how long?* are put in the accusative, generally without a preposition.

62. Nouns denoting *space, distance, and measure*, answering to the question, *how far?* are generally put in the accusative, but sometimes in the *ablative*.

63. *In* or *at* a town or city, answering to the question, *where?* is put in the *genitive*, if the noun be of the first or second declension and *singular* number; but in the *ablative* without a preposition, if the noun be of the *third* declension, or in the *plural* number.

64. *To* a town, answering to the question, *whither?* is put in the accusative; *from* or *through* a town, answering to the question, *whence?* is put in the *ablative*, without prepositions.

9. PREPOSITIONS.

65. These Prepositions govern the Accusative:—*ad, adversus, ante, apud, &c.* See page 90.

66. These Prepositions govern the Ablative:—*a, ab, abs, absque, coram, &c.* See page 90.

CONNECTION.

10. CONJUNCTIONS.

67. a. Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect, in the same mood and tense, two or more verbs which are simi-

larly situated with respect to time and circumstance.

b. They also connect, in the same case, two or more nouns and pronouns, depending on the same verb or preposition.

III. SYNTAX.

188. *Syntax* treats of the agreement, government, and proper arrangement of words in a sentence.

189. A *Sentence* is a collection of words, so arranged as to form one complete affirmation or proposition.

190. Sentences are of two kinds, simple and compound.

a. A *simple* sentence has only one subject and one *personal* verb; as, "Charles studies his lessons."

Personal verbs are those which have all the persons in each number.

b. A *compound* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences, so connected by conjunctions or relatives as to form only one complete sense; as, "Industry procures competence, and frugality preserves it."

c. A *Phrase* is two or more words put together, so as to express a certain relation between our ideas, but without *affirming* any thing; as, "A man of honour."

191. a. The principal parts of a simple sentence are, the *subject* or *nominative*, the *attribute* or *verb*, and the *object*.

b. The *Subject* is the thing of *which* something is affirmed or denied, and is always in the nominative case; the *attribute* is the *verb affirming* or *denying*; and the *object* is the thing *affected* by such affirmation or denial; as, "Charles studies his lessons." Here *Charles* is the subject; *studies*, the attribute or thing affirmed; and *lessons*, the object.

c. *That which* is affirmed or denied respecting the subject is frequently called the *predicate*, as in the preceding sentence, the verb *studies his lessons* is the *predicate*. When the verb *to be* is used, it is termed the *copula*, or that which forms the connection between the subject and predicate; as, "The father is learned;" here, *father* is the subject, *is*, the copula, and *learned*, the predicate. In the sentence, "Great is the Lord;" *Lord* is the subject, *is*, the copula, and *great*, the predicate.

d. The *subject* may be not only a noun or pronoun, but an adverb with a genitive case, or an infinitive mood and the words depending upon it. The *predicate* may be either, 1. a verb denoting an action or condition and its object; as, "Autumnus *dat* poma;" autumn gives apples; or, 2. It may be a verb of existence with dependent nouns, adjectives, or participles; as, "Mundus *est* globosus." the world is spherical. The subject and its predicate form a *proposition* or *sentence*.

e. Adjectives may agree with either the subject or predicate; as, "That amiable and learned man has written several valuable works." Here, "That amiable and learned man," is the subject; "has written several valuable works," is the predicate.

192. a. Sentences are divided by points or stops. Those parts of a sentence which are separated by commas, are generally called *clauses*; and those separated by semicolons, are called *members*.

The Romans had no other point than the full stop. But to facilitate the understanding of their works, Grammarians instituted the present mode of punctuation.

b. The *clauses* of a compound sentence are either *principal* or *parenthetical*. The *principal* clause is that which contains the leading proposition; a *parenthetical* or *secondary* clause, is a simple sentence, or part of a sentence, modifying the principal clause. Thus, in this sentence, "He will be punished, *unless he repent*," the clause "*unless he repent*," is *parenthetical*; and "*He will be punished*," is the *principal*.

c. *Adjuncts* are words of different parts of speech used to modify others; as *adjectives* are the adjuncts of nouns, sometimes nouns to nouns; as, "*Cicero, the orator*;" here the word *orator* is the adjunct to *Cicero*.

193. a. Syntax consists of three parts; *concord*, *government*, and the *proper arrangement of words* in a sentence.

b. *Concord* is the agreement which one word has with another, in gender, number, case, or person.

Thus, "*Ego docco*," I teach. Here *docco* is of the singular number and first person, because its nominative case *ego* is of the singular number and first person; they agree, therefore, in number and person.

194. *Government* or *regimen* is that power which one word has in requiring another to be in a particular *mood*, *tense*, or *case*.

Thus, "*Alexander vicit Darium*," Alexander conquered Darius. Here, *Darium* is in the accusative case, governed by the transitive verb *vicit*,

195. In the *arrangement* or *order* in which words are placed in Latin, the following rules are observed:

1. The most important word in the sentence must be placed before those connected words which are less important.

2. The word governed is placed before the word which governs it.

3. In Latin narrative, in didactic composition, or in ordinary discourse, in which no emphasis is intended, after conjunctions, is placed the *subject*, then the *governed cases*, with all other unemphatic additions, and lastly, the *verb*.

4. Words connected in sense should be placed as closely as possible to each other; and the words of one clause should never be mixed with those of another.

CONCORD.

196. In Latin there are four *Concords*:

1. Between a Verb and its Subject, or Nominative Case.

2. Between an Adjective and a Substantive.

3. Between a Relative and its Antecedent.

4. Between one Substantive and another.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

The Nominative and the Verb.

197. *a.* A Verb must be of the same number and person as its subject or nominative case ; as,

Praeceptor <i>legit</i> ,* vos verò		The master <i>reads</i> , but ye <i>re-negligitis</i> ;		<i>gard</i> not.
-------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------------	--	------------------

1. To find the Nominative Case, ask the question, *who* or *what* with the verb, and the word that answers to the question is the nominative case to the verb.

2. Every nominative must have a verb, and every verb a nominative, expressed or understood ; thus, in *Di metūra* ! the verb *dent* is understood. In the phrase, "*Sunt quos juvat*," the nominative *homines* is understood. All impersonal verbs, therefore, have a nominative case implied. Some verbs, as *aiunt*, *dicunt*, *ferunt*, have seldom a nominative expressed ; the word *homines* is then understood.

b. The Nominative Case of *pronouns* is *expressed* only when some emphasis or particular distinction of the person is necessary ; as,

<i>Vos</i> damnastis ;		<i>Ye</i> have condemned me.
------------------------	--	------------------------------

As if *ye* were the only persons who condemned me.

c. Impersonal Verbs have seldom a nominative case *expressed* ; as,

<i>Taedet</i> me vitae ;		I am weary of my life.
--------------------------	--	------------------------

These nominatives—*hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, multum*, &c. are sometimes prefixed as nominatives to impersonal verbs ; as, "*Sin tibi id minus libebit.*"

198. *a.* Sometimes an *Infinitive* Mood, or a part of a *sentence*, becomes the nominative to a verb in the *third* person ; as,

Ingenuas <i>didicisse</i> fideliter		<i>To have learned</i> the liberal
artes <i>Emollit</i> mores ;		sciences thoroughly, <i>softens</i> the manners.

b. Sometimes an *Adverb* with a Genitive Case is the nominative to a verb ; as,

<i>Partem virorum</i> ceciderunt		<i>Part of the men</i> fell in war.
in bello ;		

199. *a.* A *Collective* Noun of the singular number, such as *Turba, populus, plebs, manus, pars, gens, vulgus*, &c. sometimes requires the verb to be *plural* ; as,

<i>Pars</i> <i>abiēre</i> ;		Part of them are gone.
-----------------------------	--	------------------------

1. When the persons included under the collective term are represented as taken *collectively*, the verb must be singular ; as, "*Vulgus sacrit.*" But when the persons thus comprehended are intended to be represented *individually*, then the verb is plural ; as, "*Si fortē vulgus conspexere ;*" if by chance the vulgar saw.

2. A Plural Verb is frequently used after *uterque, quisque, alius* — *alium, alter — alterum*.

* *Note.*—The word which exemplifies the rule in each example is printed in *italics*. The *leading* branches of each rule are denoted by the letters of the alphabet, *a, b, c, d*, &c. Subordinate rules or explanations of each branch are designated by the *small* numerals, 1, 2, 3, &c.

200. *a.* Two or more Nominatives Singular united by the connective conjunctions, *et, ac, atque, &c.* either expressed or understood, require the verb to be in the plural number, if they denote *living beings*, and especially *persons*; as,

Pater et mater <i>vivunt</i> ;	The father and mother <i>are</i> alive.
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------------

b. But if the Nominatives denote things *without life*, and especially abstract ideas, the singular is frequently used to agree with one of the nominatives, and is understood with the other; as,

Cum tempus necessitasque <i>postulat</i> ;	When time and necessity <i>require</i> .
--------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

c. When, however, one of the Nominatives is in the plural, or, when that which is asserted is only true of the Nominatives taken *jointly*, then the verb must be plural: as,

Vita, mors, <i>divitiae</i> , omnes homines <i>commovent</i> ;	Life, death, riches, <i>move</i> all men.
Beneficium et gratia homines inter se <i>conjungunt</i> ;	Kindness and favour <i>unite</i> men to each other.

1. *Unus et alter* has a Verb in the singular; as,

<i>Dicit unus et alter breviter</i> ;	The one and the other <i>speaks</i> briefly.
---------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------

2. A Singular Noun joined to another by *cum* is sometimes followed by a plural verb; as,

Juba cum Labieno <i>venissent</i> ;	Juba with Labienus <i>had come</i> .
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

3. When *et* or *tum* is repeated, the Verb is in the singular, as it refers to the nominatives separately; as,

Hoc et ratio doctis et necessitas barbaris <i>praescipit</i> ;	Both reason <i>has dictated</i> this to the learned and necessity to the barbarians.
----------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

4. The Disjunctives *aut, vel, neque, ve, seu, sive*, are followed sometimes by a singular, sometimes by a plural verb. The singular is preferable, except when the subject includes the first and second persons, in which case the plural is used; as, "*Haec neque ego neque tu fecimus.*"

201. *a.* When the Nominatives are of *different* persons, the plural verb and pronoun must agree with the *first* person rather than with the second, and with the *second* rather than with the third; as,

<i>Ego et tu felices sumus</i> ;	Thou and I <i>are</i> happy; that is, <i>we</i> are happy.
<i>Tu et pater felices estis</i> ;	Thou and thy father <i>are</i> happy; that is, <i>ye</i> are happy.

b. Sometimes the Verb agrees in number and person with the last nominative; as,
Ego et Cicero meus *flagitabit*;

My Cicero and I shall ask it.

c. A Verb placed *between* two Nominatives of different numbers, must agree with its own appropriate subject; as,

Pars non minima triumphi <i>est</i> victi-	Not the least part of the triumph <i>is</i> the
mae;	victims.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

The Substantive and Adjective.

202. Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns must be of the same gender, number, and case, as the substantive to which they belong ; as,

Magister <i>doctus</i> ;	A learned master.
Faemina <i>bona</i> ;	A good woman.
Dulce pomum ;	A sweet apple.

1. It must be observed, that Possessive Pronouns, in Latin, agree with the noun representing the person or thing *possessed*, and not, as in English, with that which represents the *possessor* ; as,

Frater <i>suus</i> ;	His or her brother.
Soror <i>sua</i> ;	His or her sister.
Caput <i>suum</i> ;	His or her head.

Here *suus* is masculine, not because it may mean *his*, but because the noun *frater* is masculine ; while *soror*, being feminine, requires *sua* to be of the same gender, though in English, it may mean *his* or *her* sister. Hence such phrases can be properly translated only by referring to the context.

2. To find the Substantive to an Adjective, ask the question *who* or *what* with the adjective, and the word that answers to the question is the substantive ; as in the phrase, " Magister doctus," ask, a *learned* what ? The word which answers to the question is—*master*.

203. Sometimes an Infinitive Mood or a Sentence is the subject to an adjective in the *neuter* gender ; as,

Diluculo surgere <i>saluberri-</i> <i>mum</i> est ;	To rise early in the morning is very healthy.
--------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

204. An Adjective, Pronoun, or Participle may be used alone, a Substantive being understood, from which it takes its gender. If *homo* is understood the adjective is masculine ; if *negotium* or *officium*, the adjective is neuter ; as,

Rari <i>boni</i> ;	Good <i>men</i> are scarce.
Labor <i>omnia</i> vincit ;	Labour conquers <i>all things</i> .
Triste lupo stabulis ;	The wolf is a sad <i>thing</i> to the folds.
Meum est discere ;	It is <i>my duty</i> to learn.

1. An Adjective also may be used alone whenever the sense readily supplies the substantive understood ; as, *Superi* (*Dii* understood) ; *Dextra* (*manus* understood).

2. Sometimes the gender of the Adjective or Pronoun is determined only by the sense ; as,

Magna pars hominum *vulnerati* sunt ; | A great part of the men were wounded.

3. The nouns *man*, *woman*, *thing*, are seldom *expressed* in Latin. *Thing* is generally expressed by *res*, when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant ; thus, *multarum rerum* in preference to *multorum*.

4. The *neuter plural* without a substantive of adjectives denoting *magnitude*, *quantity* &c. is generally used in Latin where we use the singular ; as, *multa*, *much* ; *permulta* *very much* ; *omnia*, *every thing*, &c.

205. A Collective Noun may have an adjective in the *plural* number, the gender of which is determined by the sense ; as,

Turba erant *tuti* ; | The multitude were safe.

206. Two or more Substantives of the *same* gender, require the adjectives, pronouns, and participles, belonging to them, to be in the plural number, and the same gender as the nouns ; as,

Pater et frater sunt *amati* ; | My father and brother are beloved.

Haec charta et penna sunt *meae* ; | This paper and pen are mine.

Caput et pectus sunt *servanda* ; | The head and breast must be preserved.

With inanimate things, however, the verb and predicate are sometimes singular, when the predicate can be repeated with each subject ; as, " Villa et domus *amissa est*."

207. *a.* Two or more Substantives singular, of *different* genders, and signifying things *with life*, require an adjective of the plural number, and of the *masculine* rather than of the feminine gender ; as,

Rex et regina sunt *beati* ; | The king and queen are happy.

b. If the Substantives are of different genders, and signify things *without life*, the adjective is *neuter* ; as,

Labor et voluptas *dissimilima* sunt ; | Labour and pleasure are very unlike.

c. If the Substantives are of different genders, and signify things *with* and things *without life*, the adjective must either be neuter, or of the gender of the thing *with life* ; as,

Jāne, fac *aeternos* pacem, | Janus, make peace and the
pacisque *ministros* ; | ministers of peace, eternal.

d. Sometimes the Adjective agrees with the last Substantive ; as,

Salus, liberi, fama, *fortūnae* | Life, children, honour, and
sunt *carissimae* ; | riches are dearest.

e. An Adjective *between* two Substantives of different genders must agree with that which is considered its proper subject ; as,

Paupertas mihi onus *visum* | Poverty seemed a burden to
est ; | me.

Here *visum*, from its proximity, qualifies *onus*, instead of *visa* to qualify *paupertas*.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

The Relative and the Antecedent.

208. *a.* The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person, but takes its *case* from the verb in its own clause ; as,

Homo, <i>qui</i> Deum diligit, felix est ;	The man <i>who</i> loves God is happy.
Homo, <i>quem</i> Deus diligit, felix est ;	The man <i>whom</i> God loves is happy.

The *Antecedent* is the Noun going before, and to which the Relative refers, as in "Homo, qui Deum diligit:" the word *homo* is the antecedent, and the relative *qui* is of the same gender, number, and person. To find the antecedent, ask the question, *who* or *what* with the verb, and the word that answers to the question is the antecedent.

b. The Relative, like the Noun, is in the Nominative Case, when it is the *subject* of a verb, but in the Accusative or some other oblique case, when it is the *object* of a verb or preposition, as,

Est Deus, <i>qui</i> omnia videt ;	He is God, who sees all things.
Liber, <i>quem</i> (<i>librum</i> understood) legis ;	The book which (book) you read.
Ecce homo, <i>cui</i> (<i>homini</i> understood) confidis ;	Behold the man in whom thou trustest.

1. In a Relative Sentence, each clause has generally its own verb, and its own independent construction.

2. Sometimes the Antecedent is included in the *relative*, and omitted in the *principal* clause. When this is the case, the relative clause is often *placed first*, and the antecedent either entirely omitted, or represented in the principal clause by the proper case of *is* or *hic* ; as, "*Qui* bene latuit, bene vixit ;" (he) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. "Bestiæ in *quo* loco natae sunt, ex eo se non commovent ;" animals do not move themselves from the place in which they were born.

3. The Relative *qui* answers to *is* ; *qualis* to *talis* ; *quantus* to *tantus* ; *quot* to *tot* ; *quotus* to *totus*. If these correlatives refer to different nouns and depend on different verbs, they will take the gender, number, and case, which they respectively require. *Talis* is frequently omitted before *qualis*, *tantus* before *quantus*, &c.

4. *What*, as a Relative, is equivalent to *that which* or *those which*. *That* is a relative when it can be turned into *who* or *which* ; when it is not a relative it is either a Definitive Adjective or a Conjunction, which latter is expressed by *quod* or *ut*.

5. *As*, when a Relative, is rendered by *qui*, after *idem* ; by *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*, after *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, respectively.

209. When the Relative refers to a Verb or to a *whole clause* as its Antecedent, it must be put in the *neuter* gender ; as,

In tempore veni, <i>quod</i> rerum omnium est primum ;	I came in time, which is the principal business of all.
Tu multum dormis et saepe potas ; <i>quæ</i> (<i>negotia</i> understood) ambo sunt corpori inimica ;	Thou sleepest much and drikest often ; both <i>which things</i> are injurious to the body.

210. *a.* With Antecedents of different genders, the same rules are applicable for Relatives as for Adjectives ; as,

Ninus et Semīramis, <i>qui</i> con- didērunt Bābylōna ;	Ninus and Semiramis, who founded Babylon.
------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------

b. When the Relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third ; as, "*Ego sum vir qui facio*," I am a man who do.

c. To express the *first* person *who* did a thing, the Romans did not use a relative, but made *primus* agree with the nominative of the principal verb ; as, "*Primus mala nostra sensit*," he was the *first* who perceived our evils.

211. Sometimes the Relative takes its gender and number from the Personal Pronoun, which is implied in the Possessive ; as,

Omnes laudāre fortunas <i>meas</i> , <i>qui</i> gnatum habērem tali ingenio praeditum ;	All began to praise my fortune, who had a son endowed with such a disposition.
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

That is, *fortunas mei*, *qui* ; the personal *mei* being implied in the possessive *meas* and the relative *qui*, is therefore masculine.

212. *a.* When the Relative is placed between two nouns of different genders and numbers, and is followed by *sum*, or a verb of *calling* or *naming*, such as *dicere*, *vocare*, *appellare*, *nominare*, &c. it generally agrees in gender with the *latter* noun, rather than with the Antecedent ; as,

Animal, <i>quem</i> vocāmus <i>hominem</i> ;	The animal which we call man.
----------------------------------------------	----------------------------------

b. But sometimes the Relative takes the gender of the preceding noun ; as,

Gēnus hominum, quod Helōtes vocātur ; | A race of men which is called Helots.

1. When a Relative refers to a common and a proper noun of different genders, it may agree with either of them ; as,

<i>Flumen</i> est Arar <i>quod</i> in Rhodānum influit ;	There is a river (called) Arar which flows into the Rhone.
-------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

2. The Relative sometimes takes an Adjective after it, which properly belongs to the Antecedent ; as, "*Alvus calore quem multum habet omnia conficit*," the stomach digests all things by the abundant warmth which it has ; instead of "*multo calore quem habet*."

3. Hence may be explained the use of the Relative in such phrases as the following : "*Quae tua est virtus expugnabis* ;" such is your valour, that you will take by storm ; that is, " *eā* virtute, *quae tua est*."

THE FOURTH CONCORD.

A Noun with a Noun, &c.

213. *a.* Two Substantives coming together, and signifying the same person or thing, are put in the same case by *apposition*; as,

Cicero orātor ;	Cicero the orator.
<i>Opes irritamenta</i> malōrum ;	Riches the incentives of evil.

b. If the Noun placed in *apposition* is used as referring to a *person*, then the word in *apposition* must agree with the principal noun both in *gender* and *number*; as, "Timor, Dominus," Fear, the master; "Fortūna, domina," Fortune, the mistress; "Athenae, inventrices multarum artium," Athens, the inventresses of many arts.

c. But if the Noun in *apposition* denotes something *inanimate*, the gender and number of this substantive need not agree with the principal noun, as, "Timor, causa," Fear, the cause; "Athenae, urbs," Athens, the city; "Cicero, meae deliciae meique amōres," Cicero, my delight.

d. If the principal word is the Name of a Town, with *urbs* or *oppidum* in *apposition* to it, the verb or participle generally agrees with the *apposition* instead of the principal noun; as, "Volsinii, oppidum Tuscōrum opulentissimum, totum concrematum est fulmine;" Volsinii, the most wealthy town of the Tuscans, was entirely destroyed by lightning.

e. The English, *as, as if, when, for*, standing with a noun, are often omitted, and the Latin substantive placed in *apposition*; as, "Natura homīni sensus, tanquam nuntios, ac satellites attribuit;" Nature has given to man sensations as if they were messengers and attendants.

f. A Proper Name, when accompanied by a common one, is generally in the genitive case; as, "Fons Timavī," the fountain of Timavus,—and not "Fons Timavus."

214. *a.* The Noun or Pronoun that answers a question, must be in the same case as the word that asks it; as,

Quis mundum creavit? <i>Deus</i> ;	Who created the world? God.
Quarum rerum nulla est satietas? <i>Divitiarum</i> ;	Of what things is there no fullness? Of riches.

b. The Case must, however, be varied, if the rules of Syntax require a different construction; as, "Quanti emisti? Viginti minis." Here *quis* is required to be in the Ablative, because it is the *specified* price.

c. The Possessive Pronouns correspond with the Genitive of the Personal or Relative, both in the question and the answer; as, "Cujus est liber? *Meus*. Cujum est pecus? *Meliboeci*."

215. *a.* Nouns and Pronouns depending on the same verb or preposition, and connected by copulative or disjunctive conjunctions, must be in the same case; as,

Socrātes docuit <i>Xenophon-</i>	Socrates taught Xenophon
<i>tem et Platōnem</i> ;	and Plato.

b. Except when the words themselves require different cases; as, "Vixi *Romae et Athēnis*," I have lived at Rome and at Athens.

PRONOUNS.

216. *a. Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri* (the Genitive Cases of the personals *ego, tu, sui*), are joined to substantives taken in a passive sense, denoting the object; as,

Languet desiderio tui ;	She languishes for want of you.
Imago nostri ;	The picture of our person.
Amor mei ;	The love of me ; or the love with which I am loved.

b. The Genitive Plural of *ego* and *tu* has two forms, *nostrum* and *nostri, vestrum* and *vestri*. The termination *um* is used with partitives, numerals, comparatives, and superlatives; as, *uterque nostrum, primus vestrum, &c.* In other connections the form in *i* is proper; as, *memor vestri, &c.*

217. *a.* When *action* or *possession* is signified, the Possessive Pronouns *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, agreeing with their nouns, must be used; as,

Favet desiderio tuo ;	She favours your desire.
Imago nostra ;	Our picture ; or that which we possess.

b. The Pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, are not expressed in Latin, if they are not contrasted with others, but simply refer to the subject of the sentence; as, He loves his brother as he ought, "*Fratrem sic amat, ut debet.*"

c. But when these words do not refer to the subject of the sentence, but denote a contrast, or a particular emphasis, especially when the word *own* is connected with the pronoun, then they must be expressed, and generally placed before their substantives; as, "*Tu tuam utilitatem praeponis publicae,*" you prefer your (own) interest to the public.

d. The word *own* is either not translated at all but implied in the pronoun, or translated by the words *ipsius, ipsorum, ipsarum*; as, "*Meus ipsius pater,*" my own father.

e. Every addition or explanation which refers to the *ego, tu, ille, nos, vos, illi*, contained in the possessive, is put in the genitive, and generally immediately after the possessive. Of this kind are the genitives *ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c., omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*; and also the genitive cases of participles, which are referred to the primitive word understood; as, "*Mea unius opera,*" by my single service; "*In sua cujusque laude, praestantior,*" more excellent each in his own skill; "*Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus,*" he answers to the praises of you few; "*Mea scripta timentis,*" the writings of me fearing.

f. The distinctions given in Rules 216, 217, were sometimes violated by the Poets; as, "*Nec me mea fallit imago,*" nor does my likeness deceive me.

218. *a.* *Sui* and *suius* are Reciprocals, because they generally refer to the principal subject in the sentence. *Sui* is used when *self* or *selves* can be added to *him, her, it, or them*; *suius*, when *own* may be added to *his, her, its, or their*; as,

Petrus nimium admiratur se ;	Peter admires himself too much ;
parcit erroribus suis ;	he spares his own errors.

b. When the Subject is of the third person, and no transition from one subject to another is to be noted, *sui* and *suius* must be employed; but when a change of subject is to be signified, either *is, ille, or iste*, must be used; as, "*Cicero accessit Tironem et fratrem suum,*" Cicero called upon Tiro and his own brother. Here *suum* refers to Cicero; *eius* would have referred to Tiro, and the meaning would have been Cicero called upon Tiro and on his (Tiro's) brother. The oblique cases of *is, ea, id*, are used when an object is not opposed to itself, but to another object; as, "*Pater ei ignovit,*" the father pardoned him, that is, his son; but *Pater sibi* would mean *himself*.

c. Though the principal Subject of discourse is generally the *nominative* to the verb, it is sometimes expressed in an oblique case; thus, "Ab Antonio admonitus sum, ut manē sibi adessem." Here the principal subject is expressed by an ablative case, and yet it is properly represented by *sibi*. The same observation may be applied to the following sentence: "Hunc cives sui ex urbe eiecerunt."

d. The ancients sometimes deviated from these rules; thus, Nepos in Milt. 4. says, "Cum viderent de eorum virtute non desperari," *suā* or *suorum* virtute would have been better.

e. The word *ipse* must be employed instead of *sui*, *suus*, when there would be danger of understanding *sui* or *suus* to signify the nominative of its own verb; thus, "Persae, mortuo Alexandro, non illum, qui imperaret *ipsis*, digniorem fuisse confidebantur." Qui imperaret *sibi*, might have meant a *fitter person to govern himself*.

f. *Ipse* often stands with the personal pronouns, either in the same case with the subject, when the subject is *contrasted with other subjects*, or in the same as the object, when the object is *contrasted with other objects*; as, "Ego *me ipse* vitupero," I censure myself; "Se *ipsos* omnes natura diligunt," all men naturally love themselves.

g. He himself, selfsame, she herself, it itself, this or that one himself, &c. are also expressed in Latin by *ipse ille*, *ipse hic*, or by *ille ipse*, *hic ipse*. But the phrase *euen* *he*, *this* or *that very person* or thing, is expressed only by *hic ipse*, *ille ipse*, and not by *ipse ille*; thus, "*Ipse ille* Gorgias," the self-same Gorgias, "In *illo ipso* libro," in that very book.

219. a. *He, she, it, they*, are translated by *is, ea, id*, when they merely stand for a person or thing either *before mentioned*, or *about to be described* by a relative clause; as,

Dionysius servus meus aufū-	Dionysius a slave of mine has
git; <i>is</i> est in provinciā tuā;	run away; <i>he</i> is in your
	province.

b. When used to distinguish objects, *hic* refers to that which is nearest to the person speaking; *iste*, to that which is nearest the person addressed; *ille*, to that which is at a distance from both.

c. *Ille* is sometimes employed to denote that which is of general notoriety, and most commonly of *reputation*; *iste*, to denote *contempt*; as, "Magnus *ille* Alexander, *iste* nebulo."

d. When *hic* and *ille* refer to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* generally refers to the *latter*; *ille*, to the *former*; as,

"Nihil est nisi pontus et aer,
Nubibus *hic* tumidus, fluctibus *ille* mi-
nax;"

There is nothing but sea and air; the latter swelling with clouds, the former threatening with waves.

e. Sometimes, however, *hic* is made to refer to the former, and *ille* to the latter of two things before-mentioned; as in Ovid, "Sic deus et virgo est; *hic* spe celer, *ills* timore;" thus are the god and maiden; he swift with hope, she with fear.

f. The Phrases, *and this too*, *and that too*, *and these too*, *and besides*, *and even*, when connecting important additional circumstances to what preceded, are expressed by *et is*, *et hic*, *is que* in their proper genders. In the same manner, the phrases, *and at the same time*, *at once*, *and also*, are expressed by *et idem* or *idemque*; as, "Epistolam, eamque (et eam) brevem accepi;" I have received a letter, and that too a short one. When the additional circumstance is *negative*, then, instead of *et* or *que*, the word *ne* or *neque* is used; as, "At length he sent me a letter, and that too not a long one;" "epistolam, neque eam longam." The adverb *quidem* is frequently joined to *is*; as, "Et *cas quidem* breves," and those (letters) indeed short ones.

g. The Pronouns *is, ea, id* are frequently omitted in Latin, and the sense included in the Relative *qui, quae, quod*; as, "Qui virtutem amat, mihi carus est;" *He who* loves virtue is dear to me.

A. The Latins sometimes put the Antecedent and the Relative in the same clause, and instead of saying, "The letters which you sent me are short," they say, "*What* letters you sent me, *these* are short;" "*Quas* epistolas mihi misisti, *eae* breves sunt." This mode of construction and agreement must always be adopted, when a substantive, to which *qui*, *quae*, *quod* refers, stands alone, and is in apposition with another; thus, "Mummus destroyed Corinth, *a city which at that time* was the most magnificent in Greece," "*quae* urbs tum amplissima Graecia erat." So also, "*a place which, qui locus;*" "every thing which, *quae omnia.*"

The Indefinite Pronouns.

220. The word *any* admits of various renderings; thus,

a. *Any* is rendered by *quisquam* or *ulius*, when it does *not* include *every one*, but is used in a negative sentence, or in questions which imply a negative; and after *vix*, scarcely, and *sine*, without; as, "An *quisquam* potest ei credere?" "Can any one believe him?"

b. *Any* is rendered by *quisvis* or *quilibet*, when it includes *every one*.

c. *Any* is rendered by *quis* or *qui*, after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *nē*, *quo*, *quanto*, & as, "Si *quis* aliud cogitet," if any one should think otherwise.

d. *Any* is rendered by *aliquis* or *quispiam* when it signifies *some one* or *other*, *some*; as, "Pictor *aliquis*," *some* painter, or a painter.

221. Of *Qui*, *quis*? *qui*? *quisquis*, *quisque*, the following observations may be sufficient:

a. *Qui*, the old ablative of *quis* and *qui*, is used by good prose writers only in the sense of *how*, chiefly with *feri* and *posse*; as, *quis fit*, how happens it?

b. The interrogative pronoun *quis*? *qui*? has two forms for the masculine and neuter; *quis* and *quid*, *qui* and *quod*. Prose writers of the best age use *quod* with a substantive, and *quid* without. *Quis* is commonly used without a substantive, or only with one denoting a person; as, *quis amicus*. *Qui* is generally used with a substantive.

c. *Quisquis* and *quicumque* cannot alone form the subject of a proposition, but must be united with a verb, in order to become a part of some other proposition; as, "*Male vivit quisquis* nescit bene mori."

d. *Quisque* signifies *every one*, and is generally used as a substantive. *Quisque* takes an adjective in the superlative degree; as, *every good man*, "*quisque optimus.*" It scarcely ever begins a proposition.

222. a. *Alius*, *aliud*, is thus distinguished:

Alius is generally used when *several* or *all* are spoken of, and *alter* when the subject is of *two*. "*One another*" is rendered by repeating the word *alius*; as, they slew *one another*, "*alii occiderunt alios.*" *Alius* is used with one of its own cases, or an adverb derived from it, to express what in English requires two separate propositions, denoting the *one*—the *other*, or *one*—*another*; as, "*Aliud aliis videtur optimum*," one thing seems best to one, another to another; "*Alius cum aliis loquitur*," he speaks in one way to one, another to another; "*Alii alio itinere venerunt*," *different* men came by *different* ways. *Alius*—*alius*, and the derivatives, are used in two propositions for *alius*, *alter*, *alias*, &c. with *ac* or *atque*; as, "*Aliud loquitur, aliud sentit*," he speaks otherwise than he thinks.

b. *Uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are used when the discourse is of *only two*; *quis*, *alius*, *nullus*, on the contrary when the discourse is of *several*; as, "*Uter fratrum ad te venit?*" which of the two brothers came to thee?

Uterque, when connected with a noun, agrees with it in gender, number, and case; as, "*Uterque dux?*" But when *uterque* is connected with a Pronoun, the pronoun is in the *genitive*; as, "*Quorum uterque*," both of whom.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

223. Questions are generally asked in Latin, either by the Interrogative Particles *nē*, *num*, *nonnē*, *utrum*; or by *Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs*.

a. *Nē* (which is *enclitic*, being always attached to the last syllable of the accented word) is used simply to *ask for information*; as, "*Fuistīnē heri in scholā?*" Were you at school yesterday? *Yes* or *no*.

b. *Num* expects the answer *no*; as, "*Num quaerēbas me?*" Did you seek for me? *No*, I did *not*.

c. *Nonnē* expects the answer *yes*; as, "*Nonnē quaerēbas me?*" Did you not seek me? *Yes*, I did.

d. *Utrum* is used only in double questions.

When the Interrogative *ne* relates to *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, and *sic*, it is often written *hiccine*, *haeccine*, *hoccine*, and *siccine*; as, "*Huccine homīnem vidisti?*" Hast thou seen this man?

224. The answer *yes* is expressed;

1. By a *repetition* of the word upon which the stress of the question lies; or,

2. By the words *ita*, *ita est*, *sane*, *etiam*, *verò*, *certè*, *perfectò*, and the like; as,

1. "*Fuistine heri in schola? Fui.*" Were you at school yesterday. *I was*, or *Yes*. "*Mene vis? Te.*" Do you wish for me? *Yes*, that is I do wish *for thee*.

2. *Fuistine heri domi? Verò, certè, &c.* Were you at home yesterday? *Yes, certainly*.

225. The answer *no* is expressed;

1. By *repeating* (with the negative particle *non* before it) the word upon which the stress of the question lies; or,

2. By the words *non*, *non ita*, *minime*, *nequāquam*, and the like; as,

1. "*Estne frater domi? Non est.*" Is your brother at home? *He is not*, or *No*.

2. "*Venitne pater tuus? Minime, or non.*" Has your father come? *No*.

3. *No rather, on the contrary*, are expressed by *immo* (imo) with the addition of the word expressing the *opposite* of what is implied in the question; as,

"*Egebat amicus tuus? Immo locuples erat.*" Was your friend in want? *On the contrary* he was rich.

Independent and dependent Questions.

226. Questions are either *independent* (direct); as, Were you at school yesterday? or *dependent* upon another sentence going before (indirect questions); as, I do not know, *whether you were at school yesterday.*

Independent or *Direct* questions are such as do not depend on any preceding word, but contain the very words which were addressed to any one. Such questions can be stated either *definitely*; as, "Who is this man?" or *doubtfully* (Indefinitely); as "Who can this man be?"

Dependent questions follow and depend on such words as *to ask, doubt, know, not know, examine, inquire, try, &c.*

a. In the *direct* question the *Indicative* is used, when it is asked *positively*; as, "*Quid agis?*" What are you doing? but in the *Subjunctive*, when it is asked *doubtingly*; as, "*Quid agamus?*" What can we do?

b. In the *indirect* question the *Subjunctive* is always used; as, "*Dic quid agas?*" Say what thou art doing?

227. Both direct and indirect questions are introduced;—

1. By the Interrogative and Relative words, *quis, quid, uter, qualis, quantus, quot, unde, ubi, quando, quomodo, cur, &c.*

2. By the Particles *nē, num, nonne, utrum.*

1. *Who? what?* are expressed by *quis, quid*, without a noun; or by *qui, quae, quod*, when used in agreement with one; as, "*Quis hoc negat?*" Who can deny this? "*Quod facinus commisit?*" What crime has he committed? *Quis* ablative, how? as, *Qui sit?* How does it happen? *Quot?* how many? *Quantus?* how great? *Quantum?* how much? *Cur?* why? is used whether an answer is required or not; *quare?* wherefore? is used when a reason is decidedly expected? *Quando?* when?

<i>Ubi</i> , where,	corresponds to	<i>ibi</i> , there.
<i>Unde</i> , whence	—	<i>inde, hinc</i> , thence.
<i>Quo</i> , whither,	—	<i>eo</i> , thither.

228. In *disjunctive* or *double* questions, in which one member excludes the other, the first member is introduced by *utrum, num*, or the enclitic *ne*, and the second by *an*, or, both in direct and indirect questions; as,

Direct Quest.—*Utrum unus, an plures sunt mundi?*

Indirect Quest.—*Utrum unus, an plures sint mundi?*

1. *Or not* is expressed in Latin by *annon* in *direct*, by *necne* in *indirect* questions.

2. In dependent questions *whether* is often untranslated, and or translated by *an, anne*, or the appended *nē*, as in the forms below.

3. *An* is sometimes found before single questions; but this is not in accordance with Cicero's general practice.

4. *Or*, in questions, is to be translated by *an* or *ne*, and never by *aut*, where one question is to be answered in the affirmative, and the other in the negative.

5. The Forms for *double questions* are,—

<i>Utrum</i> (utrumne), whether	. . .	<i>an</i> (anne, ne), or.
<i>Num</i> , whether	. . .	<i>an</i> , or.
— whether	. . .	<i>an, anne, ne</i> , or.

6. If there are *more than two* questions, the second and remaining ones begin with *an*; as, "*Haud scio maneamne Arpini, an propius accedam, an veniam Romam;*" I do not know whether I shall remain at Arpinum, or I shall approach nearer, or (even) shall come to Rome.

GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

229. *a.* When two Substantives come together, signifying different things, the latter is put in the *genitive* case; as,

Amor nummi ; | The love of money.

1. The Genitive is *subjective* when it denotes that which *does* something, or to which something belongs; as, "*Hominum facta* ; *liber pueri* : " it is *objective*, when it denotes that which is the *object* of the action or feeling spoken of; as, "*Amor virtutis* ; *desiderium otii*."

In English, the *objective* genitive is often rendered by some other word than *of*; as, longing for rest, love to virtue. "*Mulierum Sabinarum injuriæ*;" the wrongs *done* to the Sabine women. "*Gratia beneficiis*;" gratitude *for* a kindness. But whenever ambiguity would arise from the use of this case, the Latins used the *preposition* with its proper case; thus, "*Amor parentum*," would signify the love which parents had for others; but "*Amor in parentes*," signifies love *for* parents.

2. The Genitive signifies *origin*, *cause*, or *possession*, and *generally* has the sign *of*; but sometimes, as just stated, it takes the signs *to*, *for*, *in*, *from*. Nor is the word of always a sign of the genitive case;—after words signifying *praise* or *blame*, *plenty* or *want*, the *quality* of things, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *need*, *descended* or *born*, it is generally a sign of the ablative. When the latter substantive denotes the *substance* or *materials* of which the former consists, the word *of* is expressed by *de*, *e*, or *ex*; as, "*Ensis ex ferro factus*;" a sword made of iron. Instead of a substantive, an adjective is sometimes used; as, "*Ferreus ensis*." *Of*, signifying *concerning*, is expressed by *de*; signifying *by* or *from*, by *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*. *Of*, after *mereor*, is rendered by *de*; after comparatives and superlatives, by *de*, *e*, or *inter*.

b. Sometimes the Genitive case is put alone, the former substantive being understood; as,

Ubi ad Dianæ venērīs; that | When you come to *Diana's*
is, *ad templum Dianæ*; | (*temple* understood).

Many instances of this kind occur; thus, "*Per Varronis*," that is, *per fundum Varronis*; "*Poppææ Neronis*," that is *conjugis Neronis*; "*Aberant bidui*," that is, *iter bidui*.

c. A *Dative* may, in many instances, be substituted for the genitive, with very little change of meaning; as,

Caesari se ad pedes pro- | They cast themselves down at
jecere; | Caesar's feet.

d. The Genitive, signifying *possession*, is also frequently changed into an adjective; as, "*Domus paternæ*," for *domus patris*; "*Causa regia*," the royal cause, or the king's cause.

e. The Phrases, *the top of*, *middle of*, *end of*, *whole of*, *the rest of*, &c. are generally translated by *adjectives* agreeing with their substantives; thus "*Summus mons*," the top of the mountain; "*Ima quercus*," the bottom of the oak; "*Sapientia prima*," the beginning of wisdom; "*Media via*," the middle of the way.

230. The *Genitive* or *Ablative* is used to express that one thing is the *property* or *quality* of another; as, of *praise*, *blame*, *weight*, *size*, &c. The latter substantive, however, must always have an adjective joined with it; as,

Summae virtutis adolescens ; | A youth of great virtue.
Vir nullâ fide ; | A man of no integrity.
Magno pondere saxum ; | A stone of great weight.

1. It would here be improper to say *virtute* adolescens, or *virtutis* adolescens. The latter substantive must always denote a part or property of the former, otherwise, it does not belong to this rule; such phrases as, "*pulchrâ prole* parentem," will therefore be excluded.

2. For the expressions *possessed, endowed with, distinguished for*, the verb *sum* might be employed; thus, "*Cato erat summæ prudentiæ*," Cato *possessed, had, was of*, the greatest prudence.

3. The Genitive denotes *essential*, the Ablative *accidental* qualities; hence the designations of *measure by number, time, and space* are always expressed by the *Genitive* (never by the *Ablative*), these being essential qualities of an object.

4. Later writers employ the Genitive to specify the *age*; as, "*Hannibalem secum duxit filium Hannibalem, annorum novem*," for *annos novem natum*.

231. An Adjective of the neuter gender, not having a substantive expressed, requires a *genitive* case; as,

Paululum *pecuniæ*;

Quid *rei* est?

Angusta *viarum*;

A very little money.

What is the matter?

Narrow ways.

1. The Adjectives thus used, generally signify *quantity*; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum*; also, *aliud, id, hoc, quid*, and its compounds (*aliquid, quidquam, &c.*), *summum, ultimum, extremum, dimidium*, and *medium*, with many plural neuters; as, "*Opæ locorum, incertæ fortunæ*," &c. The words *quod, aliquod, quoddam*, always agree with their substantives, but *quid* and *plus* are followed by a genitive.

2. *Nihil, hoc, id, illud, istud, quid, aliquid, quidquam*, admit the genitive of neuter adjectives of the second, but rarely of the third declension; as, "*Nihil incerti, quid reliqui est?*"

232. *a. Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, govern an *ablative* of the thing wanted, and a *dative* of the object *to* or *for* which the thing is wanted; as,

Auctoritate *tuâ nobis* opus
est;

Nunc *viribus* usus;

We have need of your au-
thority.

Now there is need of strength.

1. So "*opus est properato*," need of haste; "*consulto*," of deliberation; "*mature facio*," of prompt execution.

2. When *opus* is used personally, the thing wanted is in the nominative case; as, "*Multi mihi libri opus sunt*;" many books are wanted by me. When the thing wanted cannot be expressed by a substantive, either the accusative with the infinitive is used, or the accusative only, the subject being left to be supplied from the connection; as, "*Si quid erit, quod te scire opus erit, scribam*."

3. *Opus* and *usus* sometimes, though rarely, govern the genitive of the thing wanted, as, "*Lectonis opus est*." This construction is not to be recommended.

b. Opus is sometimes used as an indeclinable Adjective for *necessary*, governing a dative; as,

Dux *nobis* opus est;

A leader is necessary for us.

233. *a. The definite value* or *cost* of a thing expressed by a *noun* is put in the *ablative*; as,

Æstimo *tribus denariis*;

I value it at threepence.

b. But when the cost or value is not exactly defined, but expressed by an *adjective*, the adjective must be in the *genitive*; as,

Tanti *eris* aliis, quanti *tibi*
fuëris;

You will be of as much value
to others, as you have been
to yourself.

These Adjectives are, *magni* (not *multi*), *permagni, pluris* (not *majoris*), *plurimi, maximi, parvi, minores, minimi, tanti, quanti, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quantumque*.

c. They are also joined with these Genitives—*assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pensi, pili, teruncii, aujus*; as, "Me *pili* aestimat," he values me at a hair.

d. The words *vili, paulo, parvo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo*, are sometimes put by themselves in the ablative, having the word *pretio* understood; as, "*Vili* venit triticum," wheat is sold at a low rate.

234. Nouns denoting the *cause* (why), the *manner* (how), or the *instrument*, by which an action is performed, are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu;

Caesus est virgis;

Mirâ celeritate rem perēgit;

I am pale with fear.

He was beaten with rods.

He finished the business with wonderful dispatch.

1. The Cause is known by putting the question *why?* or *wherefore?* The Instrument, by *with what*, or *wherewith?* and the Manner, by *how?*

2. The Cause is frequently expressed by *per, ob, and propter*, with an accusative, and by *a, ab, de, e, ex, prae*, with an ablative; as, "Legibus non *propter metum* paret; nec loqui *prae timore* potuit; *ob lucram*; *hâc de causâ*."

3. The Instrument rarely admits the preposition; thus we do not say, "Scribo *cum calâm*," but "Scribo *calâm*," I write with a pen; nor do we say, "Cum *oculis* video," but "Oculis video." But when the Instrument is used merely as a *concomitant*, the preposition is generally expressed; as, "Ingressus est *cum gladio*," he entered with a sword, that is, either in his hand or about him. When a man is the instrument, the accusative with *per*, or the phrase *operâ alicujus*, is preferable.

4. The Manner is frequently expressed by *a, ab, cum, de, e, ex, per*; as, "Cum vidēret oratōres *cum severitate* audiri." The substantive expressing *manner* should generally have an adjective connected with it; but if there be no adjective, the preposition *cum* should always be used; as, "Literae *cum fide* scriptae." In some military expressions the word *cum* is frequently omitted; as, "Egressus *omnibus copiis*."

5. The usual signs of the Ablative are, *at, by, from, in, on, than, with*; but these words are sometimes applied to other cases; thus *at* and *by*, signifying *near*, are rendered by *ad, apud, or juxta*. *By*, in *beseching* and *swearing*, is made by *per*. *From*, after verbs of *differing* and *taking away*, may be made by a dative. *With*, after verbs of *anger*, is a sign of the dative; after verbs of *comparing* or *contending*, may be made by *cum*.

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The Genitive after Adjectives.

235. Adjectives signifying *desire, aversion, or disdain; knowledge, ignorance, or doubt; remembrance or forgetfulness; fear or confidence; innocence or guilt; diligence or idleness; care or negligence*; with verbal adjectives in *az, ns, or tus*, require the genitive case; as,

Novitâtis avida;

Praescia futuri;

Timidus Deorū;

Tempus edax rerum;

Alieni appetens, sui profusus;

Fond of novelty.

Foreknowing the future.

Fearing the Gods.

Time the devourer of things.

Coveting the property of others, lavish of his own.

1. To this Rule also belong Adjectives denoting *zeal, curiosity, consciousness, capacity, incapacity, skill, prudence, participation*, and their opposites; also, *sorrow, alarm, anger, foresight, art, patience, resolution, liberality, profusion, parsimony*, besides many others denoting an *affection* of the mind.

2. It is to be observed, that Participles, used as such, do not come under this Rule; thus, "*Patiens frigus*," signifies one enduring cold *at this moment*, but "*Patiens frigoris*," is applied to one who is capable of bearing cold *habitually*.

3. *Peritus* and *consultus* have frequently an ablative; *rudis* has sometimes an ablative with *in*.

4. The Genitive depending on an Adjective, is not always expressed in English by *of*. Sometimes no preposition whatever is understood; as, "*Futuri praescia*," foreknowing the future. Sometimes it is expressed by *in*, with regard to, with respect to; as, "*Rudis belli*," unskilful in war; "*Integer vitae*," blameless with respect to his life; "*Ager animi*," sick as to my mind; "*Fessi rerum*," wearied with or from their toils.

236. *a.* Words denoting a *part* of a greater number, whether pronouns, comparatives, superlatives, or numerals, require the genitive plural, from which genitive they take their gender; as,

Quisquis Deorum;

Manuum fortior est dextra;

Maxime principum;

Sapientum octavus;

Whoever of the Gods.

The right is the stronger of the hands.

The greatest of chiefs.

The eighth of the wise men.

1. If the Substantive be a collective noun, the genitive singular is used.

2. *Partitives*, that is, such words as denote a *part* of a great number, agree in gender with the substantives which they govern; as, "*Nulla sororum*." But if the governed noun be a collective, the partitive takes the gender of the noun understood; as, "*Etatis suae doctissimus*;" that is, *doctissimus vir*. If also there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive agrees with the former; as, "*Indus fluminum maximus*."

3. The Comparative, with the genitive of partition, is used only when two persons or things belonging to the *same* class, nature, or description, are compared; as, "*Major fratrū*," the greater of the (two) brothers. The superlative, with the genitive of partition, is used when *three or more* things of the *same* class, &c. are compared; as, "*Maximus fratrum*," the greatest of (three or more) brethren. When the comparison between two objects is expressed by *than*, the rule under the ablative of adjectives must be used.

4. Whenever there is no division of the whole, the Latins do not use the genitive; *there are ten of us; of you, &c.*, would be expressed, as if written *we are ten, you are ten, nos sumus, et vos estis decem*. Many of the soldiers, *multi milites*; how many of the scholars, *quot discipuli*.—*All of us, all of you, all of them*, are expressed as if written *we all, you all, they all*, and the verb agrees with each accordingly.—So also, *both of us, both of you, &c.*, *uterque nostrum, uterque vestrum, &c.*

b. Instead of the Genitive Case, numerals and partitives sometimes govern the ablative with *de, e, ex* (but never with *ab*), or the accusative with *inter*; as,

Unus e filiis, one of the sons.

Nemo ex vobis, none of you.

Pauci de nostris, a few of our men.

Primus inter omnes, the first among all.

Unus in the sense of the numeral *one* does not govern a genitive; *unus ex optimis*; but when opposed to *alter*, it has a genitive; as the one of these, *unus eorum*.

c. *Secundus* sometimes requires a dative case; as,

Haud ulli veterum virtute secundus; | Inferior to none of the ancients in valour.

2. The Dative after Adjectives.

237. *a.* Adjectives followed in English by *to* or *for*, and signifying *advantage* or *disadvantage*; *likeness* or *unlikeness*; *pleasure*, *displeasure*, or *pain*; *submission* or *resistance*; *trust* or *distrust*; *friendship* or *hatred*; *fitness* or *unfitness*; *facility* and *relation* to anything; with many words compounded with *con*, govern a *dative* case of the noun to which they refer; as,

Utilis agris;

Jucundus amicis;

Omnibus supplex;

Contrarius albo;

Est finitimus oratōri poēta;

Contermina fonti;

Useful to the lands.

Pleasant to his friends.

Submissive to all.

Contrary to white.

A poet is nearly allied to an orator.

Adjoining the fountain.

b. This Rule also comprehends Adjectives signifying *clearness* or *obscurity*, *known* or *unknown* to, *nearness*, *ease* or *difficulty*, and *equality* or *inequality*.

c. *Idem*, with the Poets, sometimes has a dative. *Propior* and *proximus* take after them the dative, or the accusative governed by *ad* understood; as, "Propius vero," "Proximus Pompeium" (*ad* understood.) *Alienus* a genitive or ablative; as, "Alienus alicujus rei, ab aliquâ re."—See 243. 1.

d. Some Adjectives, signifying *affection* or *passion*, are followed by *in* or *erga* with the accusative; such as *acerbus*, *animatus*, *beneficus*, *contumax*, *crudelis*, *durus*, *gratiosus*, *gratus*, *gravis*, *impius*, *implacabilis*, *iniquus*, *injuriosus*, *liberalis*, *mendax*, *miscricors*, *officiosus*, *pius*, *sacerus*, *severus*, and *torvus*.

238. a. Some of these Adjectives have other cases besides the dative; thus,

Adjectives of *likeness* and *unlikeness* are followed generally by a dative, but sometimes by a genitive; as,

Par ventis;

| Like the winds.

Domini similis;

| Like your master.

1. To these may be added, *affinis*, *communis*, *proprius*, *sanctissimus*, *fidus*, *conterminus*, *superstes*, *argualis*, *contrarius*, *adversus*, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *familiaris*, *cognatus*, *propinquus*, *vicinus*, *socius*, *acemulus*, *germanus*, *invidus*, and *necessarius*. *Conscius* has a genitive of the thing and a dative of the person.

2. With *similis*, *dissimilis*, the genitive expresses *essential* likeness in *nature*, &c.; the dative is chiefly used of *similarity* in *outward appearance*.

b. Adjectives signifying *motion* or *tendency* to a thing, take after them the accusative with *ad*, rather than the dative; as,

Ad præmia velox;

| Swift for rewards.

To this class belong *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, *impiger*, *lentus*, *præceps*, *poratus*, *promus*, *propensus*, &c.

c. Adjectives signifying *usefulness*, *fitness*, and the contrary, with *natus*, *commodus*, *incommodus*, and *vehemens*, take not only a dative, but frequently an accusative with *ad*; as,

Utilis ad nullam rem;

| Useful for nothing.

Natus ad gloriam;

| Born for glory.

d. But when the object is a *person*, the dative and not the accusative is used after these adjectives. *Natus*, signifying "years old," takes an accusative; as, "Triginta annos natus." See 230. 4. p. 113.

239. a. Verbal Adjectives in *bilis*, and Participles Passive in *dus*, require a dative case; as,

Nulli penetrabilis astro;

| Penetrable by no star.

Vivendum est mihi;

| I must live.

b. Perfect Passive Participles in *tus* have sometimes a dative; as, "Dilecta sorori," loved by thy sister. But among prose writers they are generally followed by an ablative with a preposition; as, "Mors Crassi est a multis deſecta," the death of Crassus was lamented by many. Participles in *dus* are also frequently followed by an ablative with *a* or *ab*.

c. *Invidus*, *obtusus*, *pervius*, *impervius*, and other Adjectives of a passive signification, as, *facilis*, *indocilis*, are followed by a dative; as, "Troja obvia Græcis."

3. The Accusative after Adjectives.

240. Adjectives of *dimension*, such as *longus*, *latus*, *crassus*, *profundus*, *altus*, and *densus*, govern nouns denoting *measure*, generally in the *accusative* case, but sometimes in the *ablative* or *genitive*; as,

Turris centum pedes alta ; | A tower a hundred feet high.
Fons latus pedibus tribus ; | A fountain three feet wide.

Words denoting *measure*, are *digitus*, *palmus*, *pes*, *cubitus*, *ulna*, *passus*, *stadium*, *miliäre*.—The *excess* or *deficiency* of measure is always put in the ablative ; as, "*Turris est sex pedibus altior quàm murus.*"

241. An *Accusative* is sometimes put after adjectives and participles governed by a preposition understood ; as,

Os humerosque Deo similis | Like to a God, as to his coun-
 (*secundum* understood) ; | tenance and his shoulders.
Humeros amictus (circa un- | Covered round his shoul-
 derstood) ; | ders.

4. The Ablative after Adjectives.

242. Adjectives signifying *plenty* or *want*, govern the *ablative* and sometimes the *genitive* case ; as,

Terra triumphis dives ; | A land rich in triumphs.
Expers fraudis ; | Void of deceit.
Plena timoris ; | Full of dread.

1. To this rule belong Adjectives signifying *rich*, *plentiful*, *full*, *fruitful*, *laden*, *stored*, *free*, *partaking*, *powerful*, *liberal*, *abundant* ; and their opposites, *poor*, *destitute*, *deprived*, *empty*, *barren*, *void*, *weak*.

2. Some of these Adjectives govern the *Genitive* only ; as, *benignus*, *exors*, *impos*, *impotens*, *irritus*, *liberalis*, *munificus*, *praelargus*. Some the *Ablative* only ; as, *beatus*, *differtus*, *frugifer*, *mutuus*, *lentus*, *dislentus*, *tumidus*, *turgidus*. Some either the *Genitive* or *Ablative* ; as, *copiosus*, *dives*, *fecundus*, *ferax*, *inimicus*, *inanis*, *inops*, *largus*, *lactus*, *modicus*, *immodicus*, *nimius*, *opulentus*, *plenus*, *potens*, *purus*, *refertus*, *satur*, *vacuus*, *uber*. The following sometimes take the *Preposition a* or *ab* : *Copiosus*, *firmus*, *immunis*, *inanis*, *inops*, *instructus*, *liber*, *nudus*, *paratus*, *imparatus*, *solutus*, *vacuus*. These have *in* with an *Ablative* ; *Fecundus*, *modicus*, *parvus*, *pauper*, *tenuis*.

3. Sometimes a *Noun* is put in the *Ablative* in connection with an *Adjective*, and governed by the *preposition in* understood ; as, "*Nomine grammaticus*," a grammarian in name ; "*Re barbarus*," in reality a barbarian.

243. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *praeditus*, *captus*, *contentus*, *ex-torris*, *fretus*, *liber*, and *alienus* ; also, Adjectives and Participles signifying *descent* ; as, *Natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, *cretus*, *oriundus*, and *prognatus*, with these three, signifying *price*, *carus*, *vilis*, and *venalis*, require an *ablative* case ; as,

Dignus honore ; | Worthy of honour.
Tali ingenio praeditum ; | Endowed with such a disposition.
Oculis capti ; | Blind.
Fretus juventâ ; | Relying on youth.
Nate Deâ ; | Born of a goddess.
Gemmis venale ; | To be purchased with jewels.

Alienus has frequently an *ablative* with *a* or *ab* ; as, "*A me alienum*," foreign to me. Sometimes it has a *dative* or a *genitive* ; as, "*Allenus ambitioni* ; non aliena consilii."—*Dignus*, *indignus*, *extorris*, and *contentus*, are sometimes followed by a *genitive* ; as, "*Indignus aeternum.*"

COMPARISON.

244. *a.* When two Nouns or Pronouns are compared with each other, the one following the comparative is put in the *ablative*, if the word *than* is not expressed by *quàm*; as,

Vilius argentum est auro; | Silver is less valuable than gold.

b. But when the Conjunction *quàm* is expressed, the objects compared are put in the *same* case; as, "*Vilius argentum est quàm aurum*;" "*Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem quàm Phormionem*," I have seen no one more cunning than Phormio.

1. The comparison with *quàm* expressed is in general the preferable mode. The comparative and not the superlative must be used when the comparison is limited to *two* objects. The nominative and accusative only can be repeated after *quàm*; and if any other case precede the comparative, the verb *sum* with the nominative must be used; as, "*Loquor de viro sapientiore quàm tu es*."

2. When the comparison lies not between two *Nouns*, but between two *Adjectives*, both *Adjectives* must be put in the positive with *magis quàm*, or both in the comparative with *quàm*; as,

Vir magis doctus quàm eloquens; or *doctior quàm eloquentior*; | A man more learned than eloquent.

3. The word *than* before a *Verb* is always expressed by *quàm*; as, "*Nihil turpius est quàm mentiri*," nothing is more shameful than to lie.

4. *Quàm* must always be expressed after *Adverbs* in the comparative degree; as, "*Oderam hunc multò pejus quàm Clodium*," I hated this man much more than I hated Clodium.

5. Before a *Numeral* the word *quàm* is frequently omitted after *minus*, *plus*, *amplius*, *longior*, *major*, and *minor*, except when they are joined with a dative; as, "*In eo praelio ceciderant minus duo millia civium*." The numeral with its noun suffers no change of case.

6. The Positive with *magis* or *minus* is sometimes followed by the *ablative*; as, "*Hoc nemo fuit minus ineptus*."—The Comparative is often followed by *opinione*, *spe*, *aequo*, *solito*, *iusto*, *dicto*; as, "*Perfecisti rem spe citius*," thou hast accomplished the thing sooner than was expected.

7. A *Noun* is frequently put in the *ablative* after a Comparative *Adjective*, governed not by the Comparative, but by some *Preposition* understood; as, "*Corpore validior*," stronger in body. So also, *grandis*, *grandior*; *magnus*, *major*, *maximus*; *minor*, *minimus*, are joined with the *ablative natu*, to denote age.

8. The Comparative of *Adverbs* is frequently rendered in English by *rather* (*somewhat*), *too much*, or *too*; as, "*Quòd contumaciùs se gesserat*."—*Yet* and *still* with Comparatives are expressed, in the best writers, by *citiam*; in later writers by *adhuc*; as, "*Punctum est quod vivimus, et adhuc puncto minus*."

245. *a.* The proportionate excess or defect of one thing compared with another, is put in the *Ablative*;—*quanto*, *tanto*, *quo*, *eo*, or *hoc*; as,

Quanto superiores sumus, tanto nos geramus submissius; | The more eminent we are, the more humbly we should behave.

b. A sentence of the same kind may also be expressed by *ut quisque* with a Superlative, followed by *ita* with another Superlative; as,

Ut quisque est sapientissimus, ita est modestissimus; | The wiser a man is, the more modest he is.

c. The accusatives *aliquantum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, are sometimes used adverbially for the *ablatives*; as, "*Quantum doctior, tantum modestior*."

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

1. *The Accusative Case after the Verb.*

246. Transitive Verbs, and Deponents having a transitive signification, govern the *immediate object* of an action in the accusative case; as,

Pater amat <i>filium</i> ;	The father loves his son.
Spes sola in miseriis <i>hominem</i> consolatur ;	Hope alone comforts man in distress.

1. The same sense may be expressed by making the Accusative of an Active the Nominative to a Passive Verb; thus, "*Amat filium*," or "*Filius amatur*." It is only this accusative of the active which can become a nominative to a passive verb; thus we cannot say, "*Placeor*," I am pleased, but "*Placet mihi*," It pleases me; nor "*Creditur filius*," the son is trusted, but "*Creditur filio*," because in the active we say, "*Placet mihi*," and "*Credit filio*."

2. The Accusative of Personal Pronouns is frequently understood; as, "*Eo lavatum*" (*me* understood); "*Nox praecipitat*" (*se* understood). Sometimes of nouns also; as, "*Cum faciam vitula*;" *sacra* being understood.

3. The Accusative of a Verb may be found by asking the question, *whom?* or *what?* after the verb, and the word that answers the question is the accusative.

247. *a.* Intransitive Verbs have no accusative case, except of words having a signification similar to themselves; as,

Vitam jucundam vivere ; | To live a pleasant life.

b. Neuter verbs, signifying to *smell* or *taste* of any thing, as *olere*, *redolere*, *sapere*, *resipere*, have an accusative; as, "*Olet unguenta*;" *uva picem resipiens*." So in a metaphorical sense, "*Olet peregrinum*." Also *sitire*, to thirst after; *ardere*, to be inflamed with the love of; *cavere*, to guard against, have an accusative. *Lateo* has an accusative of the person; as, "*Res latuit patrem*."

c. Sometimes other Neuter verbs assume an active signification; as, "*Horreo tenebras*." Many Intransitives, when compounded with prepositions, become transitive, and require an accusative.

d. The Neuters of Pronouns are frequently joined to Intransitives with which the accusatives of nouns cannot stand; as, "*Hoc lateor*;" *id tibi assentior*;" — so *quid*, *aliquid*, *illud*, *alia*, *cetera*, *omnia*, *utrumque*.

248. *Doceo*, and its compounds *dedoceo* and *edoceo*, verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *entreating*, and *inquiring*, and the verb *celo*, govern two accusatives, one of the *person*, and another of the *thing*; as,

<i>Te tua fata docebo</i> ;	I will teach you your destiny.
<i>Posce Deos veniam</i> ;	Entreat the favour of the gods.
<i>Celo te hanc rem</i> ;	I conceal this circumstance from you.

1. *Doceo*, *edoceo*, and *dedoceo*, are the only verbs of *teaching* which govern two accusatives, the other verbs of teaching take an ablative sometimes with *in*; as, "*Erudio, instituo, instruo, imbuo aliquem artibus, in jure civili*." So also, *formo* and *informo*, signifying to *instruct*. *Erudio*, in the Poets, has a double accusative.

2. *Doceo* and its compounds, in the sense of *giving information*, frequently change the accusative of the *thing* into an ablative with *de*; as, "*De itinere hostium senatum edocet*."

3. The verbs of *demanding* and *entreating*, as, *posco*, *reposco*, *postulo*, *flagito*, *oro*, *rogo*, *interrogo*, frequently take an ablative of the *person* with *ab* and *de*; as, "*Ab te has literas poscere*:" those of *inquiring*, as, *percontor*, *quaero*, have an ablative of the

thing with *de*; as, "Percontari aliquem *de re*." *Peto*, in the sense of *entreating*, has always an ablative of the *person* with *ab*; as, "*Ab te peto*."

4. *Celo* has sometimes a dative of the *person*, and sometimes an accusative of the *person*, and an ablative of the *thing* governed by *de*.

5. *Consulo*, in the sense of *ask advice* or *propose for deliberation*, has sometimes, though rarely, a double accusative; as, "*Nec te id consulo*."

6. Also the verbs compounded with *trans*; as, *transduco*, *transgredior*, *transjicio*, *transmitto*, frequently take two accusatives, the one governed by the verb, the other by the preposition, which is sometimes omitted, sometimes expressed; as, "*Exercitum Rhodanum transduxit*."

249. The same verbs (*doceo* and its compounds, those of *asking*, *demanding*, &c. and the verb *celo*) require in the passive an accusative of the *thing*; as,

Rogātus est *sententiam* ;
Id celabar ;

He was asked his opinion.
I was kept from the knowledge
of that thing.

Summum, at most : *minimum*, at least ; *magnam partem* ; *maximam partem*, are used adverbially in the accusative, without a preposition.

250. Verbs signifying *name* or *title*, *election* or *appointment*, *estimation* or *opinion*, have two accusatives in the active voice; as,

Romulus *urbem* quam con- | Romulus named the city
didit *Romam* vocāvit ; | which he built, Rome.

So *praesto* and *praebeo*, signifying *to show*, *prove one's self*, have two accusatives ; as, "*Praebe te hominem*."

251. *Decet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, *oportet*, govern an accusative of the person with an infinitive ; as,

Non decet *te rixāri* ;

It does not become you to
scold.

Delectat *me studēre* ;

It delights me to study.

1. *Decet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, are frequently used personally, but *oportet* rarely ; as, "*Litterae me delectant*."

2. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *praeterit*, *latet*, used impersonally, have an accusative, and generally with the infinitive ; as, "*Fugit me ad te scribere*."

252. *Attinet*, *pertinet*, and *spectat*, have an accusative with *ad* ; as,

Quod *ad te attinet* ;

| Which belongs to you.

The preposition *is*, in some few instances, omitted.

2. The Nominative Case after the Verb.

253. a. Intransitive Verbs denoting *existence*, *gesture*, or *posture* ; Passive Verbs denoting *name* or *title*, *election* or

appointment, estimation, or opinion, have the same case after them as they have before them; as,

Ira est furor;

Anger is a madness.

Ego incēdo Regina;

I move (as) a Queen.

Tempus actionis opportunum appellatur occasio;

A proper time for action is called opportunity.

Cupio me non mendācem putari;

I wish not to be thought a liar.

Licet illis esse timīdis;

They may be fearful.

a. Verbs denoting existence are, *sum, fio, existo, nascor, reddor*; — those of gesture or of posture are, *eo, incēdo, venio, cubo, sto, jaceo, sedeo, evado, fugio, dormio, maneo*, &c. Passives, denoting name or title, are, *appellor, dicor, nominor, perhibeor, vocor, salutor*; of election or appointment, *creor, eligor, designor, renuncior, declaror*; — of estimation, or opinion, *credor, existimor, habeor, judicor, numeror, putor, videor, reperior, deprehendor, censeor*.

b. The Passives also of other Verbs, as of *do, addo, adjungo, adscribo, accio, peto, sumo*, frequently take the same case after them as before them, when both words refer to the same thing; as, “*Servus puero comes adjungitur*,” the slave is added to the boy as a companion.

c. When the Infinitive of any Verb, particularly of *sum*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal Verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, “*Licet mihi esse beāto*,” or “*Licet mihi esse beatum*,” *me* being understood; thus, “*Licet mihi (me) esse beatum*.”

d. In English, Verbs of *declaring, thinking*, &c. are used either personally or impersonally; thus, Atticus is said to have been, or *it is said* that Atticus was; but in Latin, the personal construction is much more common, especially with *videor*; as, “*Atticus videtur* (dicitur, fertur, traditur, creditur, negatur, &c.) *fuisse*.”

254. An Adjective in the nominative case may be placed after any verb, when such adjective agrees with the nominative case; as,

Pii orant taciti;

Pious men pray silently.

Hic codex est meus;

This book is mine.

Vult esse princeps;

He wishes to be *first*.

1. But the accusative with the infinitive is more common with Cicero; as, “*Vult se esse principem*.”

2. An Adjective is frequently joined with a Verb, when in English either an adverb or a substantive with a preposition would be used; as, “*Lætus abit*,” he departs gladly; “*Frequentes convenerunt*,” they came in great numbers.

3. The Genitive Case after the Verb.

255. a. *Sum*, signifying the *possession, duty, disposition, sign, or lot*, of any one, requires a genitive case; as,

Pecus est Meliboei;

The cattle is Meliboeus’s.

Adolescentis est majores natu reverēri;

It is the duty of a young man to reverence his elders.

Fio is frequently used in the same manner as *sum*; as, “*Asia Romanorum facta est*,” Asia came under the dominion of the Romans.

b. The Neuter Possessive Pronouns, *meum, tuum, surum, nostrum*, and *vestrum*, are used with *sum*, and not the genitives of the Personal Pronouns, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*; as,

Non meum est;

It is not my business.

c. Certain Possessive Adjectives, as *regius, humānus, belluinus, servilis*, are frequently used in the same manner; as, "*Humanum est errare*," to err is human.

d. The Phrases, *it belongs to, is characteristic of, is incumbent on, it is for* (the rich, &c.), *it is not every one who, it demands or requires, it betrays*, &c. belong to this rule; thus, it is wise, "*sapientis est*," not *sapiens est*; it is madness, "*dementiae est*."

256. a. Verbs of *accusing, complaining or acquitting, convicting or condemning, admonishing or warning*, require the *person* to be in the accusative, and the *crime or offence* either in the genitive or in the ablative, with or without a preposition; as,

Alterum accusat probri;

He accuses the other of dishonesty.

Aliquem rei capitalis reum facere;

To accuse any man of a capital crime.

Eum accusare de negligentia;

To accuse him of negligence.

Suspitione absolvēre;

To acquit of suspicion.

Admonēto illum pristinae fortunae;

Remind him of his former condition.

b. The *punishment* is generally in the ablative, and sometimes in the genitive, particularly with *capitis* and *voti*; as, *capitis* or *capite damnari*. The accusative also with *ad* or *in* is used; as, "*Damnare ad mortem*."

1. *Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo*, and the superlative degree, may be joined to Verbs of this kind in the *ablative* case; as, "*Accusas furti, an stupri? Utraque, vel de utroque*." "*De plurimis simul accusaris*," you are accused of very many things at once.

2. The following Verbs of *accusing*, &c. have an *accusative* of the thing, and not a genitive:—*calumnior, carpō, corripio, crimino, culpo, excuso, mulcto, psumo, reprehendo, sugillo, taxo, traduco, vituperō*; as, "*Potentiam alicujus invidiosè criminari*." This construction is sometimes found with the verbs which have a genitive or an ablative; as, "*Ejus avaritiam perfidiamque accusarunt*."

3. *Accuso, incuso, insimulo*, sometimes take two accusatives; as, "*Si id me non accusas*." One of these accusatives is generally *id, illud, quod*, or the like.

4. Instead of the genitive, Verbs of *admonishing* or *warning* sometimes take an ablative with *de*; as, "*De quo vos admonui*." Sometimes *moneo*, and its compounds, have two accusatives; as, "*Sed eos hoc moneo*;" but one of these accusatives is generally a pronoun; as, *hoc, id, quod*, &c.—or some word referring to number or quantity; as, *unum, duo, multa, nihil, nonnihil*. Sometimes these verbs are followed by an infinitive, or by a subjunctive governed by *ut* or *ne*; as, "*Pietas erga parentes officium conservare monet*;" "*Immortalia ne speres monet annus*."

257. Verbs of *remembrance* and *forgetfulness*,—as, *reminiscor, meminī, recordor*, and *obliscor*,—require more frequently a genitive, but sometimes an accusative, of the person or thing remembered or forgotten; as,

Datae fidei reminiscitur;

He remembers his promise.

Oblivisci injurias;

To forget injuries.

1. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is followed by a genitive or by *de*; as, "*Neque hujus rei meminuit*;" "*De quibus multi meminērunt*."

2. *Mihi in mentem venit* is commonly used with a genitive case; as, "*Venit mihi Platonis in mentem*." A nominative may, however, be used; as, "*Multa mihi in mentem veniunt*."

258. a. Verbs signifying the *affections* of the mind,—as,

doubt, anxiety, grief, shame, desire, &c.—govern either a *genitive* or an *ablative* case; as,

Pendeo animi vel animo; | I am in doubt.

Discrucior animi vel animo; | I am tormented in my mind.

1. *Fastidio, miror, and vereor*, are sometimes used with a genitive; as, "*Fastidit mei*," he is disgusted at me.—Some Verbs, signifying *anger, passion, &c.* have a dative.—See the Rule under the Dative.

b. Satāgo, misereor, and miseresco, require a genitive case; as,

Rerum suarum satāgit; | He is busy with his own affairs.

Miserere labōrum; | Pity my distresses.

2. On the contrary, *miseror, commiseror*, to bewail, have an accusative.

c. Miseret, miserescit, piget, poenitet, pudet, taedet, are followed by an accusative of the *person* affected, and a genitive of the *thing* which is the origin of those feelings; as,

Tui te nec miseret, nec pudet; | You neither pity nor are ashamed of yourself.

Me civitatis morum piget taedetque; | I am grieved for, and weary of, the manners of the city.

3. The Infinitive, or part of a sentence, sometimes supplies the place of the genitive; as, "*Te id puduit facere*."

4. *Pudtum est* and *pertāsum est* are used in the Passive Voice, governing an accusative of the person and a genitive of the thing, or followed by an Infinitive; as, "*Atticum nunquam suscepti negotii pertaesum est*;" "*Cum pudēret vivos, tanquam puditurum esset mortuos*."

d. Interest (rarely refert) is used with a genitive of the *person interested*, and both of them with the accusative plural of the Possessives *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, instead of *mei, tui, sui, &c.*; as,

Interest magistrātūs tuēri bonos; | It concerns the magistrate to defend the good.

Tua refert seipsum nōsse; | It concerns you to know yourself.

5. The Possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* may have a genitive of the substantive to agree with them in sense; as, "*Interest mea oratoris*," it is the interest of me as an orator.—Whether these Possessives are neuters plural or feminine singular, *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, is undecided.—*Refert tua* signifies *ad tua negotia* or *commoda*.

e. The thing that is of importance is not expressed by a substantive, but by an accusative with an infinitive; or by *ut*, that, *ne*, that not, with a subjunctive and the interrogative particles; as, "*Multum mea interest, ut diligens sis*; or, *te esse diligentem*; or, *utrum diligens sis necne*." *Id, illud, quod, quid*, express *what* one is interested in.

f. The degree of interest (how much, how little,) is ex-

pressed by the genitives *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, tantidem, quanticunque*; or, by the neuters *tantum, quantum, magnum, plurimum*; or by the adverbs *magnopere, multum, magis, maxime, nihil, parum, minime*; as,

Tanti refert honesta agere; | Of such concern is it to do honest things.

4. The Dative Case after the Verb.

259. *a.* All Transitive Verbs require the *immediate object* of an action to be in the accusative case, but the *remoter object*, or that *to* or *for* which any thing is done, or *from* which any thing is taken away, to be in the dative case; as,

Dedit mihi librum; | He gave the book to me.
Mea mihi adēmērunt; | They took my property from me.

b. *To* and *for*, in the sense of acquisition, are the usual signs of the dative. But *to*, after *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, and after Verbs of *calling, exhorting, inviting, provoking, speaking*, is made by *ad*. *To* and *for*, after *motion, born, fit, prone, ready*, are made by *ad* or *in*. *For*, signifying *on account of*, is a sign of the ablative, or it may be expressed by *ob, propter, de, prae, or pro*. *For*, before a word of *price*, is a sign of the ablative; signifying *exchange, reward, or instead of*, is made by *pro*.

The Verbs belonging to this General Rule are the following:—

260. Verbs of *comparing, giving, adding, and taking away, restoring and denying, promising and paying, declaring, informing, or explaining*, have, if transitive, both a dative and an accusative; but if intransitive, a dative only; as,

Parvis componere magna; | To compare great things with small.
Consilium vobis dabo; | I will give you advice.
Neget quis carmina Gallo? | Who can refuse verses to Gallus?
Æs alienum mihi numerāvit; | He paid me the debt.
Dic mihi; | Tell me.

1. Verbs of *comparing*, namely, *comparo, compono*, and *confero*, have frequently an ablative with *cum*; as, "Dicta cum factis componere;" sometimes an accusative with *ad* and *inter*; as, "Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est."

2. Verbs of *taking away* have frequently an ablative with *a, ab, de, e, ex*; as, "Eripite nos ex miseriis."

3. Verbs of *joining, conceding, delivering up*, belong to this Rule.

261. *a.* Verbs signifying *advantage or disadvantage; pleasure or displeasure; trust or distrust; command or persuasion; resistance or obedience; threatening or being angry with; studying, healing*, and the Verbs *nubo* and *parco*, are generally Intransitive, governing only a dative; as,

Non potes mihi commodare; | You cannot serve me.
Placuisse tibi; | To have pleased you.

Ne crede <i>colōri</i> ;	Trust not to beauty.
Imperat <i>ventis</i> ;	He commands the winds.
Irascor <i>amicis</i> ;	I am angry with my friends.
Studēre <i>grammāticae</i> ;	To study grammar.
Medēri <i>morbo</i> ;	To heal a disease.
Venus nupsit <i>Vulcāno</i> ;	Venus was married to Vulcan.
<i>Victis</i> parcere ;	To spare the conquered.

b. But *juvo*, *laedo*, *offendo*, *delecto*, *rego*, and *guberno*, govern an accusative. The Verbs *tempero* and *moderor*, signifying “to bound, to moderate,” have a dative of the thing ; to *spare*, a dative of the person ; signifying to “regulate and arrange,” an accusative. *Dominor* has a dative or genitive, or an accusative with a preposition. *Impero* has an accusative of the thing wanted ; as, “Caesar *obsides* imperat.”

To the Verbs enumerated as governing the dative, may be added verbs of *gratification*, *consent*, *flattering* or *flattery*, *allurement*, *discontentment*, *impartiality*, *incivility*, *detraction*, *reproach*, *endurance*, *forbearance*, *congratulation*, *caution*, *apprehension*, *grudging*, *envy*, *malice*, *introducing*, and *undecieving*.

c. Many Verbs, when used with different significations, are followed by different cases ; thus, “*Caveo tibi*,” I provide, or am concerned for thy safety ; but “*Caveo te*,” or “*a te*,” I avoid thee, am on my guard against thee. “*Metuo, timeo tibi*,” I am alarmed on thy account ; but “*Metuo or timeo te*,” I fear thee. “*Consulo tibi*,” (*prospicio, provideo*), I provide for thy interests ; but “*Consulo te*,” I ask thy advice. “*Solvo tibi pecuniam*,” I pay money to thee ; but “*Solvo te*,” I free thee (as from fear).

d. Some Verbs have the same signification, even when used with different cases ; as, “*Accidit auribus*, or *accidit ad aures*. *Confidēre rei alicui*, or *in re aliquā*.”

262. a. Verbs compounded with the adverbs *benē*, *malē*, and *satis* ; and with these prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*, have generally a dative case ; if transitives, with an accusative also ; but if intransitives, without it ; as,

Dī tibi benefaciant ;	May the gods do good to thee!
Adspirat fortuna <i>labōri</i> ;	Fortune favours our enterprise.
Impendit <i>omnibus</i> periculum ;	Danger hangs over all.
Postpono <i>famae</i> pecuniam ;	I regard money less than reputation.

b. *Adspargo* and *inspergo*, *circumdo*, and *circumfundo*, *dono* and *impertio*, *exuo* and *induo*, are used either with an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person, or with an accusative of the person, and an ablative of the thing. “*Interdico*,” I forbid, governs a dative of the person, and an ablative of the thing prohibited ; as, “*Interdico tibi domo meā*,” I forbid thee my house. The thing prohibited is, however, frequently in the accusative ; as, “*Interdico tibi usum purpurae*.”

c. Some Intransitive Verbs, when compounded with prepositions, become transitive, and take only an accusative ; as, *adorior*, *aggredior*, *alluo*, *invado*, *inco*, *praecedo*, *obeo*, *oppeto*, *adeo*, and *convenio* ; *egredior* and *excedo* (to transgress) ; and particularly words compounded with *circum*, *praeter*, and *trans*.

d. Others again, as the following, have with the same sense sometimes a dative and sometimes an accusative, — *antecedere*, *antecellere*, *antecire*, *praecurrere*, *praecire*, *praegradi*, *praestare*, *praestolari*, *praeverti*, *allatrare*, *adjacere*, *illudere*, *insultare*, *obviare*. *Praeceedere* has commonly the accusative, *excellere* only the dative. *Desperō*,

when transitive, governs an accusative; when intransitive, either a dative or an ablative with *de*. *Præire*, to precede, has an accusative, but when it signifies "to rehearse words to be repeated by another," it has a dative; as, "*Præire militibus sacramentum*." *Attendo* and *deficio* have both a dative and an accusative.

c. Compound Verbs that have a transitive signification solely from being joined to prepositions, cannot be used as the nominative in the passive; thus we can say, "*præterfuisse urbem*," but not "*urbs præterfuitur*."

f. In prose, the Preposition used in compound verbs is frequently repeated with its proper case, and particularly with verbs compounded with *ad*, *con*, *de*, *in*; as,

Conferte hanc pacem cum illo bello; | Compare this peace with that war.

1. *Incumbo*, signifying "to lean or press upon," has a dative; signifying "applying to a pursuit," is followed by *ad* or *in*.

2. Many Verbs, compounded with *ab*, *de*, and *ex*, take the ablative, either with or without the repetition of the preposition; such as, *abesse*, *absistere*, *abstinere*, *abire*, *exire*, *decedere*, *excedere*, *deficere*, *depellere*, *efferre*, *evadere*.

263. *Certo*, *congregior*, and *pugno*, have, in prose, an ablative with *cum*; but, with the Poets, a dative; as,

Frigida pugnabant calidis; | Cold things contended with hot.

Misceo has both a dative and an ablative in prose. *Loquor*, in prose, takes *cum*.

264. a. *Sum*, used for *habeo*, or followed in English by *of* or *to*, has a dative; as,

Est mihi pater; | A father is to me; that is, I have a father.
Exitum pecóri est; | It is destruction to the flock.

b. *Sum*, signifying *ability* or *readiness* for any thing, and sometimes when 'the adjectives *idoneus*, *aptus*, &c. are understood, requires a dative; as, "*Sum onèri ferendo*," I am capable of bearing the burden.

c. *Defit* and *suppetit* have a dative; as, "*Lac mihi non aestate novum, non frigore defit*;" new milk is not wanting to me either in summer or in winter. "*Cui rerum suppetit usus*," who has a sufficiency.

d. To this Rule may be referred the form of *naming*; as, "*Est mihi nomen Petro, Petri, or Petrus*;" my name is Peter, or the name is to me Peter. The *dative* of the name is more common than either the nominative or genitive, but both of these may be used.

265. The compounds of *sum*, except *possum*, have a dative; as,

Mihi nec obest, nec prodest; | It neither hurts nor profits me.
Deest sibi; | He is wanting to himself.

Absum, signifying absence, governs an ablative with *a* or *ab*.

266. *Sum*, *do*, *duco*, *fio*, *habeo*, *mitto*, *profiscor*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *venio*, and *verto*, may have one dative of the *person*, and another of the *thing* which expresses the *purpose*, *effect*, *destination*, *advantage*, or *disadvantage*; as,

Exitio est mare nautis; | The sea is as a destruction to the sailors.
Id mihi vitio vertis; | You impute it as a fault to me.

267. The Impersonal Verbs *accidit*, *benēfit*, *contingit*, *convēnit*, *expēdit*, *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, and other impersonals put *acquisitively*, require a dative case ; as,

Peccāre nemīni licet ;

| It is lawful for none to sin.

Mihi haud liquet ;

| It is not clear to me.

268. *a.* The Poets frequently use the dative of Pronouns, instead either of the genitive case or of a Possessive Pronoun ; as, "*Ei* corpus," for "*ejus* corpus ;" "*Mihi* manus," for "*mea* manus."

b. The datives *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, are frequently added to Verbs in an almost redundant manner ; as,

Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo ; | I stab this man with his own sword.

Words thus used, mostly occur in confidential letters, speeches, &c.

5. The Ablative Case after the Verb.

269. *a.* Nouns denoting the *cause*, the *manner*, or the *instrument* by which an action is performed, are put in the *ablative* case. See No. 234. p. 114.

b. With Passive Verbs, the principal *agent*, if a living being or person, must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab* ; as,

Laudātur ab his ;

| He is praised by these.

Caesus est a lupo ;

| He was killed by a wolf.

c. But if the agent after a Passive Verb does not denote a living being, it must be in the ablative without *a* or *ab* ; as,

Comētae radiis solis obscurantur ;

| Comets are obscured by the rays of the sun.

1. If this agent be considered by personification as a living being, it will take *a* or *ab* ; as, "*Hic error a Philosophia pellatur*."

2. *Per* properly denotes the *medium* of some action which has its source in a remoter cause ; as, "*Per litteras a te sum admonitus*."

d. The *dative* is frequently used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, with Passive Verbs, instead of *a* or *ab* with the *ablative* ; as,

Neque cernitur ulli ;

| Nor is he seen by any.

Cui non sunt auditae Demosthēnis vigiliae ?

| By whom have not the watchings of Demosthenes been heard of ?

e. The *matter* (or *materials*) of which a thing is made, is put in the *ablative*, with *de*, *e*, or *ex* ; as,

Templum de marmore ;

| A temple built of marble.

270. *a.* The ablative is added to Nouns, Verbs, and Participles, to express a *circumstance* by which they are more exactly fixed and defined, where, in English, the words *in*, *as to*, &c. would be used ; as,

Agēsilaus claudus fuit altēro pede ; | *Agēsilaus was lame in one foot.*

b. The Poets put these limiting expressions in the accusative, in imitation of the Greeks ; as,

Nudae brachia ; | *Naked as to the arms.*

c. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, lending, hiring, and esteeming*, take an *ablative* when the price or cost is *exactly specified* by a noun (See No. 233. p. 113.), but a *genitive* when it is expressed by an adjective ; as,

Æstimo tribus denariis ; | *I value it at three pence.*
Tanti eris aliis quanti tibi fuëris ; | *You will be of as much value to others, as you have been to yourself.*

d. Mereor, connected with the Adverbs *benè, malè, pejùs, optimè, pessimè*, has an ablative case with the Preposition *de* ; as,

De me benè meritus est ; | *He deserved well of me.*

271. *a.* Verbs signifying *plenty* or *want, filling* or *emptying, loading* or *unloading*, and also verbs of *clothing*, require an ablative case ; as,

Abundat divitiis ; | *He abounds with riches.*
Caret omni culpâ ; | *He has no fault.*
Implentur vino ; | *They are filled with wine.*
Te mendaciis onerârunt ; | *They loaded you with calumnies.*
Te hoc crimine expēdi ; | *Clear yourself of this charge.*
Induit se purpurâ ; | *He arrays himself in purple.*

1. To this Rule belong the Verbs *privare, spoliare, orbare, fraudare, defraudare, nudare, exuere*, and others of a similar meaning.

2. Verbs of *clothing* have, among the Poets, sometimes two accusatives ; as, "*Induit se calceos*," he put on his shoes. The Verbs *induo* and *exuo* have sometimes an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person ; as, "*Sibi torquem induit*."

b. Egeo, impleo, compleo, and *indigeo*, sometimes govern a genitive ; as,

Implentur vetëris Bacchi ; | *They are filled with old wine.*
Quorum indiget usus ; | *Things which utility requires.*

272. *a.* Verbs of *deliberating* or *delivering from*, of *removing, keeping at a distance, preventing, banishing*, or *separating*, require an ablative case, either with or without a Preposition ; as,

Athenienses bello liberati sunt ; | *The Athenians were freed from war.*

Haec me imago domo meâ pel-	This image will drive me from
let ;	my house.
Te fasce levābo ;	I will ease you of your load.
Disjungāmus nos a corpori-	Let us separate ourselves from
bus ;	our bodies.

1. After Verbs signifying *to be remote from, to keep off, to differ from, not to coincide with* ; as, *discrepo, discordo, differo, distideo, disto, arceo, defendo*, &c. the Poets frequently use the dative instead of an ablative.

2. When a separation from *persons* is spoken of, the Preposition *ab* must always be used.

b. Desino, desisto, abstineo, have sometimes a genitive among the Poets ; as, “*Desine querelārum*,” cease from or leave off complaints.

273. Verbs or Participles signifying *origin* or *descent* ; as, *nascor, natus, ortus, prognatus, oriundus, satius, cretus, editus*, have an ablative, either with or without a Preposition ; as,

<i>Bonis</i> prognāta parentibus ;	Born of good parents.
<i>Edita de magno flumine</i> ;	Descended from a great river.

274. *a. Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor, laetor, glorior, gaudeo, nitor*, with their compounds *abutor, perfruor, defungor, perfungor*, and the Verbs *muto, communico*, and *supersedeo*, require an ablative case ; as,

Functus est mūnere ;	He discharged his office.
Pace frui ;	To enjoy peace.
Utēre sorte tuā ;	Use your fortune.
Auro potitur ;	He takes possession of gold.
Me dignor honōre ;	I think myself worthy of honour.
Mutat quadrāta rotundis ;	He changes square things for round.
Caesar praelio supersedēre statuit ;	Caesar resolved to forbear fighting.

1. Under this Rule are included the following ; *epulor, delector, vivo, victito, exulto, sto, consto, consisto*, and *laboro*.

2. With *consto, laboro, nitor*, and *glorior*, a Preposition is frequently expressed ; as, “*Cūm constemus ex animo*.”

b. Potior frequently governs a genitive ; as, “*Potiri rērum* ;” to obtain the supreme command. *Utor, fruor, fungor, potior*, and *vescor*, are sometimes found with an accusative.

275. *a.* When a Noun or Pronoun is connected with a participle, expressed or understood, and neither agrees with a Verb, nor is governed by any word in the sentence, it is put in the *ablative absolute* ; as,

Libertāte oppressā, nihil est Liberty being abolished, we
 quod sperēmus; have nothing to hope.
Te duce; You being leader.

b. The ablative absolute is used to specify *time*; as, "*Imperante Augusto*." This is frequently rendered into English by *when, since, while, although*.

Another ablative must not be placed in *opposition* with the ablative absol'ute. We may say, "*Porcia marito inuito dixit*," Porcia having found her husband said; but not "*Marito cogitante invenio*," having found her husband wrapped in thought; this should be expressed by "*Quum maritum cogitantem invenisset*."

PASSIVE, NEUTER PASSIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

276. *a.* For directions with respect to the *Agent* after Passive Verbs, see No. 269. *b, c.* p. 127.

b. Neuter Verbs, and also Neuter Passives, as *vapulō, vēneo, liceo, exulo, fio*, have the same case after them as Passive Verbs have; as,

<i>A forti viro cadere</i> ;	To fall, or be killed, by a brave man.
<i>A praeceptore vapulābis</i> ;	You will be beaten by the master.
<i>Ab hoste venire</i> ;	To be sold by an enemy.

277. *a.* Verbs which govern two accusatives in the active voice, retain *one* in the passive; and those which govern an accusative, with a genitive, dative, or ablative, retain the genitive, dative, or ablative, in the passive; as,

<i>Dedocēberis istos mores</i> ;	You shall be untaught those manners.
<i>Accusāris furti</i> ;	You are accused of theft.
<i>Habēberis ludibrio</i> ;	You will be considered as a laughing-stock.
<i>Privaberis magistratu</i> ;	You will be deprived of your office.

b. Passive Verbs of *clothing*, such as *induo, amicio, cingo, accingo*, also *exuo, discingo*, and their participles, are frequently by the Poets joined to the accusative; as, "*Induitur faciem cultumque Dianae*." With prose writers they govern the ablative; as, "*Cingitur gladio*."

278. Impersonal Verbs may be applied to any person or number, by putting after them, in their proper cases, those words which form the nominative to regular verbs; as, "*Dlectat me*," it delights me, or I delight; "*Placet tibi*," it pleases thee, or thou pleasest; "*Pugnatur a militibus*," it is fought by the soldiers, or the soldiers fight.

1. In many general expressions, indeed, the *passive* voice is used *impersonally*, where the active might be used; thus, "*Ambulatum est*," it has been walked by us, or we have walked. But with Verbs of *seeming* and *Passive Verbs of declaring, thinking &c.* the *personal* construction is preferable to the *impersonal*; thus, It seemed that Miltiades, or Miltiades seemed, not to be able to be a private man, "*Miltiades videbatur non posse esse privatus*."

2. *Passive Impersonals* take after them the case of their *personals*, with the exception of the accusative of the active voice; as, "*Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*." *Favetur mihi*."

3. Most *Neuter Verbs* may be used *impersonally* in the *passive* voice; as, "*Non invidetur illi aetati sed etiam favetur*."

4. When the English of such *Deponents* as have an active signification is expressed *passively*, such *passive* expression must be changed into an active one; thus, I have been encouraged by my father; that is, My father has encouraged me, "*Pater me exhortatus est*;" I was forgotten, or, they forgot me, "*Me oblitus sunt*."

GOVERNMENT AND USE OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

279. Participles, Gerunds, and the Supine in *um*, govern the same case as their verbs; as,

Amans virtutem ;	Loving virtue.
Carens fraude ;	Wanting deceit.
Cupidus utendi tempore ;	Desirous of employing my time.
Scitatum oracula ;	To consult the oracle.

1. *Verbal Nouns* sometimes govern the case of the verbs from which they are derived; as "*Justitia est obtemperatio legibus*."

2. Participles used as *Adjectives* (generally ending in *us*) follow the rules of adjectives.

280. *Exōsus*, *perōsus*, and frequently *pertaesus*, have an active signification, and govern the accusative; as,

Taedas exōsa jugales ; | Hating marriage.

Pertaesus, used *Impersonally*, governs the genitive; as, "*Pertaesum levitatis*."

281. Participles denote the *time* of an event, and are used in the sense of *as*, *when*, *although*; as,

Curio, ad focum *sedenti*, au- | The Samnites brought gold to Cu-
rum Samnites attulērunt ; | rius, as he sat near his fire-place.

1. The Participle is frequently used instead of the infinitive after Verbs of *hearing, seeing*, and others of a similar meaning; as, "*Audivi eum canentem*," I heard him singing.

2. In order that a Verb may be turned into a Participle, it is necessary that there should be two sentences, which are so closely connected that the one expresses either the cause or consequence, or at least, some explanation of the other; thus, (1) I rejoice (2) when thou comest: (1) When my father had gone, (2) my friends came to me. In such instances, the sentence which is first conceived, or to which are prefixed the participles of time, *when*, *whilst*, *since*, *after that*, &c. must be expressed by the ablative absolute; thus, for

Gaudeo cum venis,
Postquam pater profectus est, venērunt } we can say { Gaudeo te veniente.
ad me amici. } pater profecto, venerunt ad me amici.

When there is only one subject, and both the actions implied by the verbs are referred to this subject, then a Verb, and not a Participle, must be employed; thus, in the expression "*Postquam pater profectus est, non scripsit*," the nominative *pater* is the subject of both *profectus* and *scripsit*. Again, "*Sol oriens fugat stellas*," when the sun rises it puts to flight the stars; here, *sol* and *oriens* must be in the nominative, because the same sun that rises puts to flight the stars. Had "*sole oriente*" been

employed, the expression would have been unintelligible, because *fugat* would have had no nominative. On the contrary, we must say, "*Sole oriente stellae fugiunt*;" because here there are two different subjects, the sun and the stars.

3. The Participle must remain in the same tense as the Verb for which it is substituted, that is, the present remains a present, &c. Yet the present active participle may be employed to express the Imperfect, and the perfect participle of the passive for deponent verb, to express the pluperfect, if no ambiguity in either case will arise. On the other hand, as the Latin has no perfect active participle, nor present participle passive, these tenses cannot be expressed by the participle; thus, "*Homo, qui a Deo amatur, felix est.*" must remain unaltered; since there is no participle corresponding to *amatur*, we must employ a deponent; thus, "*Homo fruens amore Dei.*" &c. So also, "*Filius, qui patrem amavit.*" cannot be expressed by a participle, unless we employ a deponent; as, "*Filius complexus amoris patrem.*" &c. If, therefore, a participle must be employed, we must employ an equivalent deponent; thus, for "*Amari.*" we may say, "*Amore allicuius frui.*" and for "*Amare.*" we may say, "*Amore aliquem complecti.*" In general, deponents may most readily be used in the participle, since they have participles of all tenses.

4. Two or more participles in the same case cannot correctly come together without the conjunctions *et, ac, &c.* Two participles thus connected by *et*, may be considered as one, and referred to one personal verb; as, "*Hac re visâ et auditiâ abili.*"

5. The English *without*, with a verbal substantive, is expressed in Latin, not by *sine*, but by *nisi* or *non*, or *nullus* with the participle; as, "*Nisi perspeculatus locorum situs.*" without exploring the localities; "*Nullâ præstitulâ die.*" without fixing any day of payment.

282. A Substantive with a Perfect Passive Participle, or with a Future Perfect Passive, is used instead of two substantives; as,

Post natum Christum;	After the birth of Christ.
Virtute colendâ;	By the practice of virtue.

283. *a.* The Participle in *rus* is used after Verbs of motion, to denote the *purpose*; as,

Pergit consultûrus;	He goes to consult.
---------------------	---------------------

b. Instead of this Participle, the Supine in *um*, the Subjunctive with *qui* or *ut*, and the Gerund in *dum* with *ad*, may be used,—as "*Pergit consultum, or ut consulêret, or ad consulendum.*"

1. For the Case Absolute, see No. 275. — 2. For the Participle in *dus*, see No. 290.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

284. *a.* The *Gerund* has an *active* signification, corresponding, in general, with the English Participle in *ing*, and governing the same case as the Verb from which it is derived; as,

Pauci idonei sunt ad aliis imperandum;	Few men are fit to command others.
----------------------------------------	------------------------------------

A Gerund cannot take an Adjective in agreement with it.

b. The *Gerundive*, or Participle in *dus*, has a *passive* signification, denoting *necessity, fitness*, or something *intended*; — what *must, should, or is to be done*.

285. The Gerund in *di* is used as a genitive, governed by substantives and relative adjectives; as,

Tempus *legendi*;
Studiosus *audiendi*;

The time of reading.
Desirous of hearing.

This Gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, "Facultas *agrorum* condonandi," for *agros*. It is sometimes also joined with the genitive of Pronouns, with which the participle cannot agree; as, "In castra venerunt *sui* *purgandi* causa."

286. *a.* The Gerund in *do* of the dative case is governed by Adjectives which require a dative, particularly by those denoting *useful, fit, hurtful, like, and unlike*; as,

Utilis *scribendo*; | Useful for writing.

1. The Adjective is sometimes understood; as, "Cum *solvendo* civitates non essent;" that is, "*pares solvendo*."

2. The Gerund in *do* sometimes depends on a Verb; "Epidicum *quaerendo* operam dabo."

3. Gerunds have sometimes a passive sense; as, "Aqua nitrosa utilis est *bibendo*."

b. Many of these Adjectives, however, take *ad* with the Gerund in *dum*, to express *purpose or design*; as,

Aptus *ad videndum*; | Proper to see.

287. The Gerund in *do* of the ablative is used as an ablative of the *cause or manner*; also, with the Prepositions *a, ab, de, e, ex, in*; as,

Defessus sum *ambulando*; | I am weary with walking.
Memoria *excolendo* augētur; | The memory is improved by exercising it.

Poenā *a peccando* absterret; | Punishment frightens from sinning.

288. The Gerund in *dum* is used as an accusative, governed by the Preposition *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus *ad audiendum*; | Ready to hear.
Attentus *inter docendum*; | Attentive in time of teaching.

This Gerund is sometimes governed by *ante, circa, or ob*; as, "Ante *domandum*."

289. *a.* When the Gerund would take an *object* in the *accusative*, a Gerundive (Participle in *dus*) is used instead, which agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case. The *agent or doer* is in the *dative*.

Thus, instead of using the Gerund, and saying:

Nom. Nobis bene *educandum* est pueros;
Gen. Ars *civilitatem gubernandi* est difficillima;

Dat. Asinus idoneus est *onera portando*;
Acc. Puer aptus est *ad litteras tractandum*;

Abl. *Litteras tractando* ingenium acul-

tur;

We must use the Gerundive in *dus*, and say:

Pueri nobis bene *educandi* sunt.
Ars *civilitatis gubernandae* est difficillima.

Asinus idoneus est *oneribus portandis*.

Puer aptus est *ad litteras tractandas*.

Litteris tractandis ingenium aculatur.

b. But when the object in the accusative is the *neuter* of an *Adjective* or *Pronoun*, then the Gerund must not be changed into the Gerundive in *dus*; thus, "Stadium *vera cognoscendi*" (not *verorum cognoscendorum*).

c. The genitive singular masculine of the Gerundive in *dus* is used with *sui*, even when it is plural or feminine singular; as, "Purgandi *sui* causa," for the sake of clearing themselves.

d. The Gerunds of those Verbs which do not govern the accusative, are not changed into the Participle in *dus*; thus, we must say, "*Parcendum est inimicis*," and not "*Inimici sunt parcendi*," we must spare our enemies. But the Verbs *utor*, *abutor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, and *potior*, though they do not govern the accusative, yet change their Gerunds into the Participle in *dus*; as, "*Justitiæ fruendæ causâ*."

290. The Gerundive (Participle Future in *dus*, *da*, *dum*), is employed to denote *duty* or *necessity*, and requires the *object* on which the duty or necessity rests to be in the dative case; as,

<i>Mihi</i> exorandus;	To be prevailed on by me.
Diligentia <i>nobis</i> est semper adhibenda;	Diligence must always be employed by us.
Suo <i>cuique</i> iudicio utendum est;	Each must use his own judgment.

1. The dative is frequently understood: as, "*Eundum est*" (understand *nobis*).

2. The Neuter of this Participle, with *est*, retains the government of the Verb; as, "*Studendum est literis*," one must attend to literature. But when the verb has an entire passive, the participle is made to agree with its substantive; as, "*Virtus est amanda*," and not "*Amandum est virtutem*."

3. *A*, with the ablative, is sometimes found with this participle; as, "*Hæc a me in dicendo prætereunda non sunt*."

291. The Participle in *dus* is also used instead of an Infinitive, after *curo*, *do*, *trado*, *mitto*, *permitto*, *accipio*, *suscipio*, and similar verbs, to express the *purpose* or *object* for which a thing is done; as,

Caesar legatīs impērat, utī naves aedificandas curārent;	Caesar commands the lieutenants to cause ships to be built.
----------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

SUPINES.

292. The Supine in *um* is put after a Verb of *motion*, to express the *object*; as,

<i>Spectātum</i> veniunt;	They come to see.
---------------------------	-------------------

1. This Supine is sometimes put after verbs which do not strictly denote motion; as "*Doctū nuptum*."

2. Instead of the Supine in *um*, we may use the gerunds, participles in *dus* and *rus*, or *ut* with a subjunctive; as, "*Eo spectātum, ad spectandū; spectandi causā, ludorum spectandorum causā* or *gratiā, ad spectandos ludos, spectaturus, and ut spectem*."

293. The Supine in *u* is used after such Adjectives as—*hard*, *easy*, *honest*, *good*, *bad*, *disagreeable*, *useful*, *wonderful*, and the like; and also after *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*; as,

Difficile dictu est;	It is hard to say.
Si hoc fas est dictu;	If this is proper to be said.

Only a few Supines are used in this way; as, *dictu*, *auditu*, *cognitu*, *factu*, *inventu*. *Ad* and the gerund, or *sum* and the infinitive, are generally used with *facile*, *difficile*, *utile*.

TIME, SPACE, MEASURE, AND PLACE.

294. Nouns denoting a *point* of time, answering to the question *when?* are put in the ablative without a Preposition; as,

Venit *horâ tertiâ*; | He came at the third hour.

1. *By night, by day*, are expressed by *interdiu, noctu*, and sometimes, but less frequently, by *die, nocte*. *In the evening*, is expressed by *vesperi* or *vespere*. *In tempore, or tempore* alone, is used for *in good time*.

2. The time *before* and time *after* are expressed by *ante* and *post*, with an ablative; as, "*Tribus annis post decessit.*" or "*Tribus post annis.*" or by an accusative; as, "*Post tres annos.*" or "*Tres post annos.*"

3. *Quâm*, followed by a Verb, is used with *ante* and *post* in different ways; thus "*Tribus annis (or tertio anno) postquâm venerat.*" "*Post tres annos quâm (or post annum tertium quâm) venerat.*" Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, "*Tertio anno quâm venerat.*" So, "*Postero anno quâm,*" &c., the year after, &c.; "*Priore anno quâm,*" &c., the year before.

4. The *point* or *part* of time is sometimes expressed by the Prepositions *in, de, ad, per*; as, "*In tempore veni.*" *Surgunt de nocte latrones.*" A *point* or *space* of future time is put in the accusative with *in*; and the *exact* time at which a thing is to be done in the accusative with *ad*; as, "*Nostra ad diem dictum fient.*"

5. When the time *within* which an action or event was accomplished is to be accurately expressed, the Preposition *intra*, with an accusative, is employed; as, "*Intra biduum morietur.*" he will die within two days. Sometimes, however, it is expressed by the *ablative* either with or without *in*, with a *cardinal* numeral in the plural; with an *ordinal* in the singular.

295. Nouns denoting the *duration* of time, answering to the question *how long?* are put in the accusative, generally without a Preposition; as,

Flet *noctem*; | She bewails all the night.

1. The ablative is sometimes, though rarely, used with *duration* of time; as, "*Vixit annis viginti novem.*"

2. The Prepositions *per, ad, ante, in, intra*, are frequently expressed; as, "*Per annos decem.*" *Intra annos quatuordecim.*"

3. *Abhinc*, denoting *duration*, has an Accusative; as, "*Abhinc annos tres.*" denoting a *point* of time, it has an ablative; as, "*Abhinc triginta diebus.*"

4. *Old*, as before observed, is rendered by *natus* with an accusative of the time; as, "*Decessit Alexander mensem unum, annos tres et triginta natus.*" *Above* or *under* so many years old may be expressed in various ways; thus, "*Major* or *minor* (quinque) annis, annorum, annis natu, annis natus, annos natus; or *quam* (quinque) annos natus."

296. *a.* Nouns denoting *space, distance, and measure*, answering to the question *how far?* are generally put in the accusative, but sometimes in the ablative; as,

Mille passus processeram; | I had advanced a mile.
Abest ab urbe quingentis milibus passuum; | He is distant from the city five hundred miles.

1. One of the Substantives expressing *distance* is sometimes omitted; as, "*Castra aberant bidui*" (*spatium* being understood).

2. The word denoting *distance* is governed in the accusative by *ad* or *per* understood, and in the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

b. The *excess* or *deficiency* of measure or distance, answering to the question *how much more?* or *how much less?* is always put in the ablative; as,

Superat *capite*; | He is taller by the head.

297. *In* or *at* a town or city, answering to the question *where?* is put in the *genitive*, if the Noun be of the first or second declension and *singular* number; but in the *ablative* without a Preposition, if the Noun be of the third declension, or in the *plural* number; as,

Quid *Romæ* faciam?
Mortuus est *Londini*;
Habitabat *Carthagine*;
Studuit *Athēnis*;

What shall I do at Rome?
He died in London.
He dwelt at Carthage.
He studied at Athens.

1. The words *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, when in apposition to names of towns, as the place where anything occurs, may be in the ablative without *in*, though the name of the place be in the genitive; as, "Archias Antiochiae natus est, *celebri urbe*."

2. The ablative is governed by *in*, which is sometimes expressed; the genitive depends on *in urbe*.

3. The names of towns of the first and second declensions are sometimes, though rarely, found in the ablative; as, "Pons, quem ille *Abŷdo* fecerat."

4. *At*, denoting *near* a place, is expressed by *ad*; as, "Bellum quod *ad Trojam* gererat;" "Ad *Roman* ire," to go *towards* Rome.

298. *a*. To a town, answering to the question *whither?* is put in the accusative; *from* or *through* a town, answering to the question *whence?* is put in the ablative, without prepositions; as,

Carthāgīnem rediit;
Accēpi *Romā* literas;

He returned to Carthage.
I have received a letter from Rome. [dicēa.]

Iter *Laodicēā* faciebam;

I was passing through Lao-

1. The Preposition is used if the name of the city has an adjective; as, "Proficiaci *ad doclas* Athēnas." So also if *oppidum*, *urbs*, &c. precedes the proper name; as, "Ad *urbem* Ancytam; ex *urbe* Romā."

2. Motion *by* or *through* a town is generally expressed by the Preposition *per*; as, "Cum iter *per Thebas* faceret."

3. The preceding Rules are applicable only to *towns* or *cities* and *small islands*. "Such expressions as '*school at Capua*,' '*Carthage in Africa*,' &c. are not admissible, in Latin." "But the name of the town is governed according to the preceding Rules, and the other noun governed by a *Preposition*; thus, 'Running to his *mother at Naples*,' should be, running to Naples *to* (prep.) his mother, 'Currēns *ad matrem Neapōlim*.'"

b. The names of towns, and frequently of small islands, are used after Verbs of motion or of rest, *without a Preposition*; as,

Athēnas proficiscebantur;
Lesbi vixit;

They went to Athens.
He lived at Lesbos.

c. But the names of countries, provinces, islands, villages, mountains, rivers, seas, woods, and all other places, except towns and small islands, have the Preposition generally *expressed*; as,

Natus in *Italiā*, in *Latīo*, in
urbe;
Abiit in *Italiā*, in *Latium*,
in *urbem*;

He was born in Italy, in Latium, in a city.
He has gone to Italy, to Latium, to a city.

1. It is a violation of the Rule, when the names of countries, &c. are used without Prepositions, or the names of cities with *in, ab, ex*. By the Poets, however, the names of nations are frequently used without a Preposition; as, "*Hinc ibimus Afros.*"

2. *Peto*, signifying *I make for, I go to*, always governs the accusative without a Preposition; as, "*Egyptum petere* decrevit."

3. The ablative, without a Preposition, is used with several general designations of place; as, "*Terrâ marique*," by sea and land. We also say, *loco* and *locis*, when joined with Adjectives and Pronouns; as, "*Hoc loco* ; *Multis locis.*"

4. When the name of a country and a city in it are joined with a Verb of motion, the name of the country has *in* with an accusative; as, "*Legati Carthaginem in Africam trajecerunt.*"

299. *a. Domus* and *rus*, like the names of towns, are used in the accusative after Verbs of motion, and in the ablative after *in, at, from*, without Prepositions; as, "*Ite domum*" ("*domos*," if more than one), go home; "*Abiit rus*," he has gone into the country. "*Domo*" and "*rure*," from home, from the country; "*domi*" and "*ruri*," or "*rure*," at home, in the country.

1. *Ruri*, in the country, is more frequent than *rure*.

2. *Domi* is used only when joined with the words *meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae, alienae*. With Adjectives, *domo*, generally with the Preposition *in*, is used for *domi*; as, "*In domo paternâ*," and not "*domi paternae*."

3. When *domus* is followed by a genitive denoting the possessor, either *domi* or *in domo* may be used; as, "*Deprehensus est domi*," or "*in domo Caesâris*."

4. *Rura*, in the plural, is preceded by a Preposition.

b. Humi, belli, militiae, are used in the genitive both with Verbs of motion and rest; as,

Unâ militiae et domi fuimus ;	We were together in war and
	at home.
Humi jacere ;	To lie on the ground.

ADVERBS.

300. Adverbs of *time, place, and quantity*, govern a genitive; as,

Ubi gentium ?	Where in the world ?
Eò impudentiae ventum est ;	They have arrived at such a degree of impudence.
Pridie ejus dii ;	The day before that day.
Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum ;	Eloquence enough, but little wisdom.

1. Adverbs of *time* are, *Nunc, tunc, tum, interea, pridie, postridie*, &c.; of *place*—*Ubi, ubinam, unde, nusquam, eò, eodẽm, longẽ, quò, ubivis, hucine*, &c.; of *quantity*—*Parum, tantum, quantum, satis, abundẽ, affatim, partim*, &c.

2. *Minimẽ gentium* is a strong negation, — *not in the least*.

3. *Pridiẽ* and *postridiẽ* have an accusative as well as a genitive; as, "*Pridiẽ Kalendas, Nonas, Idus* ;" that is, "*Pridiẽ ante Kalendas*," &c. "*Postridiẽ Kalendas* ;" that is, "*Postridiẽ post Kalendas*."

4. The Ordinal Numerals also have a genitive or accusative of the Kalends, Nones and Ides; as, "*Quarto Nonas ; Tertio Nonarum* ;" on the third day before the nones.

301. *Aliter* and *secus* have frequently an ablative; as, "*Multo aliter*," much otherwise; "*Paulo secus*," little otherwise.

302. *Ergô*, for the sake of—*instâr*, as great as, equal to—and the substantives *causâ* and *gratiâ*, require a genitive case; as,

<i>Virtûtis</i> ergô ;	For the sake of virtue.
<i>Instâr montis</i> equum ;	A horse as large as a mountain.
<i>Honôris</i> causâ ;	For the sake of honour.

303. *a.* Derivative Adverbs, used as adjectives, govern the same case as their primitive adjectives. *b.* Adverbs derived from verbs compounded with prepositions, and also *obviâm*, to meet, and *praestô*, at hand, govern a dative; as,

<i>a.</i> Optimè omnium ;	The best of all,
<i>a.</i> Proximè castris ;	Near the camp.
<i>b.</i> Natûrae convenienter vivère ;	To live agreeably to nature.
<i>b.</i> Praestô esse amicis ;	To be ready (to serve) our friends.
<i>b.</i> Huic obviâm processit ;	He went to meet him.

304. *a.* Two negatives in the same clause are equal to an affirmative in Latin, as in English; as,

<i>Non sum nescius ;</i>	I am not ignorant, or I know.
<i>Non nemo</i> (that is, <i>quidam</i>) ;	Some one.

b. In many instances, two negatives convey the assertion more faintly than an affirmative mode of expression; as,

<i>Non parère noluit ;</i>	He did not refuse to obey.
----------------------------	----------------------------

Nullus and *neque* are sometimes found implying negation; as, "*Nulla neque amnem libavit quadrupes*." In old writers also, two negatives are sometimes used to render the negation stronger; as, "*Jura, te non nociturum homini hâc de re nemini*" (for *nulli homini*).

PREPOSITIONS.

305. These Prepositions govern the accusative; *ad*, *adversus*, *ante*, *apud*, &c.; as,

<i>Ante pedes ;</i>	Before the feet.
---------------------	------------------

306. These Prepositions govern the ablative: *a*, *ab*, *absque*, *coram*, &c.; as,

<i>Coram omnibus ;</i>	In the presence of all.
------------------------	-------------------------

307. *Versus* and *tenus* are placed after the noun; as, "*Londinum versus*," towards London; "*Oceânô tenus*," as far as the ocean.

Tenus governs the genitive case of the *plural* number ; as, "*Crurum tenus*," up to the legs.

308. *a. In, sub, subter, super*, signifying motion *to* a place, govern an accusative ; as,

<i>In urbem ire ;</i>	To go into the city.
<i>Sub moenia tendit ;</i>	He goes under the walls.

b. Motion or rest *in* a place is denoted by *in* and *sub* with an ablative ; *super* has either the accusative or ablative in this sense ; *subter* generally the accusative ; as,

Sedeo, or discuro <i>in scholâ ;</i>	I sit, or run up and down in the school.
<i>Sub terrâ habitâre ;</i>	To live under the earth.
<i>Sedens super arma ;</i>	Sitting above the arms.
<i>Subter fastigia duxit ;</i>	He led them under the roof.

309. *In*, signifying *into, to, tending to, towards, against, until, according, for, over, upon, through, and by* (expressive of time), governs an accusative ; signifying *in, on, at, among, in the case of*, an ablative.

In is used with an ablative after the verbs *pono, loco, colloco, consido* ; with an accusative after *advenio* and *advento*, though they have *in* or *at* in English.

310. *Sub*, referring to *time*, governs an accusative ; as, "*Sub noctem*," at night-fall.

Super, signifying *above, beyond, over and above*, governs an accusative ; signifying *upon, for the sake of, concerning*, an ablative.

Prepositions are frequently understood ; as, "*Meum casum doluerunt* ;" that is, "*Propter meum casum*," &c.

311. *a.* Prepositions combined with Verbs frequently govern the same case as when they are separately used ; as,

<i>Alloquor te ;</i>	I speak to you.
<i>Coelo demittitur ;</i>	He is sent down from heaven.
<i>Servitio exire ;</i>	To depart from slavery.

b. This Rule is not applicable to compounds governing a dative, but only to such as can admit the preposition, without injuring the sense, to be separated from the verb, and placed before the case by itself ; as, "*Loquor ad te* ;" "*De coelo mittitur* ;" "*Ex servitio ire*."

c. Verbs compounded with *a, ab, de, e, ex*, and such compounds of *ad, con, in*, as do not govern a dative, frequently have the preposition repeated with its proper case ; as,

Abstinuērunt a vino ;

| They abstained from wine.

Ad te accēdo ;

| I come to thee.

1. Some Verbs, compounded with *e* or *ex*, are followed by an accusative or ablative ; as, "*Exire limen ;*" "*Egredi portubus.*"

2. These Verbs never repeat the preposition after them : *affaris, allatro, alluo, accolto, circumvenio, circumceo, circumsto, circumseco, circumvolo, obo, praetereo, abduco, effero, everto*. The compounds of *praeter* also generally omit the preposition.

3. The Noun to which the preposition in composition refers is sometimes implied ; as, "*Submittite tauros*" (that is, *sub iugo*), put your steers under the yoke.

4. Prepositions in composition serve to augment, diminish, or in some manner to modify the meaning of the simple word, as in the following instances :

Ad signifies *approximation* ; as, "*accipio*," I take to myself : or *increase* ; as, "*adamo*," to love much.

Ob, in composition, sometimes means *before* ; as, "*ruo*," to rush ; "*obruo*," to rush before, or overwhelm : sometimes it *strengthens* the signification ; as, "*dormio*," to sleep ; "*obdormio*," to sleep soundly.

Per *increases* ; as, "*gratus*," agreeable ; "*pergratus*," very agreeable : or expresses *transition* ; as, "*do*," to give ; "*perdo*," to give thoroughly, to give without hopes of recall, and so to *lose* : or *privation* ; as, "*perfidus*," perfidious.

Post implies *behind* ; as, "*pono*," to place ; "*postpono*," to place behind : also of *inferiority* ; as, "*habeo*," to have esteem ; "*posthabeo*," to esteem less.

A, ab, abs, in composition, signify *privation* or *separation* ; as, "*duco*," to lead ; "*abduco*," to lead away ; "*moveo*," to move ; "*amoveo*," to remove.

Cum signifies *society, participation, accompaniment*, and is frequently changed into *com, con, co, col*.

De serves to *augment* the simple word ; as, "*finio*," to bound ; "*definio*," to bound completely : or to *diminish* ; as, "*facio*," to do ; "*deficio*," to do less than one ought : or to express *privation* ; as, "*deferreo*," to cool ; "*demens*," mad.

Ex signifies *out*, and hence may be derived its significations of *privation*, or *negation*, *elevation*, &c. ; thus, "*armo*," to arm ; "*exarmare*," to deprive of arms ; "*sanguis*," blood ; "*essanguis*," bloodless ; "*levo*," to lighten ; "*elevo*," to lighten thoroughly, to elevate.

Prae signifies *precedence, prevention* ; as, "*dicere*," to tell ; "*praedicere*," to foretell ; "*claudere*," to shut ; "*pracludere*," to shut out. In Adjectives, it *augments* ; as, "*praematürus*," too early, i. e. premature.

Pro signifies *advancing* ; as, "*moveo*," I move ; "*promoveo*," I move forward : or *substitution* ; as, "*nomen*," a noun ; "*pronomen*," a word instead of a noun, a pronoun : or *presence* or *publicity* ; as, "*voco*," to call ; "*provoco*," to call before the public, to challenge. It is sometimes *privative* ; as, "*prafanus*," profane.

In has numerous meanings. 1. It *augments* ; as, "*induro*," I harden much. 2. It signifies *control* ; as, "*habeo*," to have ; "*subduco*," to have within command. 3. *Approximation* ; as, "*duco*," to lead ; "*induco*," to lead into. 4. With Adjectives it is generally *privative* ; as, "*ingratus*," ungrateful.

Sub generally *lessens* ; as, "*timeo*," to fear ; "*subtimeo*," to fear a little : or *deprives* ; as, "*subduci*," to be withdrawn.

Other Prepositions, in composition, generally retain the signification of the simple word when separately used.

CONJUNCTIONS.

312. *a*. Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect, in the same *mood* and *tense*, two or more *Verbs* which are similarly situated with respect to time and circumstance ; as,

Nec scribit nec legit ; | He neither writes nor reads.

They also connect, in the same *case*, two or more *Nouns* and *Pronouns* depending on the same verb or preposition ; as, "*Socrätes docuit Xenophontem et Platōnem.*"

b. But sometimes the Nouns themselves require different cases; as, "*Vixi Romae et Athēnis.*"

1. Not only the Copulative Conjunctions *et, ac, atque, que, etiam, &c.* and the Disjunctive, *aut, vel, ve, seu, sive, nec, &c.* but also *quām, nisi, praeterquam, nempe, licet, quamvis, nedum*, and the Adverbs of likeness; as, *ut, cū, tanquam, quasi, &c.* belong to this Rule.

2. *Nec* and *neque* stand indifferently before either vowels or consonants.

3. Some Conjunctions are followed by a corresponding word; thus, *tamen* answers to *etsi* or *quamvis*; *quām* to *tam*; *ut* to *ita*, or *tam*, or *adeo*; *quām* to *ante* and *prius*. Sometimes the corresponding Conjunctions are omitted.

4. For the influence which different Conjunctions have on certain Verbs, see the *Use of Moods and Tenses*.

INTERJECTIONS.

313. *a.* *O, heu,* and *proh,* are followed by an accusative or a vocative; as,

<i>O fallācem hominū spem!</i>	<i>O deceitful hope of men!</i>
<i>Heu me infelicem!</i>	<i>Ah! wretched me!</i>
<i>Proh sancte Jupiter!</i>	<i>O sacred Jupiter!</i>

1. These Interjections are sometimes joined to the nominative; as, "*O vir fortis!*" *Heu* has sometimes a dative; as, "*Heu misero mihi!*"

2. The Interjections are sometimes understood; as, "*Hominem probum!*"

3. *Ah* and *veh* are followed by an accusative and a vocative; *hem*, by a dative, accusative, or vocative.

b. The vocative is used with nearly all Interjections.

314. *Hei* and *vae* govern a dative; as,

<i>Hei mihi!</i>	<i>Woe is me!</i>
<i>Vae misero mihi!</i>	<i>Wretched man that I am!</i>

315. *En* and *ecce* generally require a nominative case, but sometimes an accusative; as,

<i>En Priāmus!</i>	<i>See Priam!</i>
<i>Ecce hominem!</i>	<i>Behold the man!</i>

USE OF THE MOODS.

316. Sentences are 1st, either *Principal* or Independent, or 2ndly, *Subordinate* or Dependent. The *principal* sentence is that to which another may belong as a dependent part; the *subordinate* sentence, on the contrary, depends on another both in sense and construction.

Thus, in the sentence, "When the spring comes, the trees bloom," the last clause, "the trees bloom," is the *principal* sentence; and the first, "when the spring comes," is the subordinate sentence.

Indicative Mood.

317. The Indicative Mood is used in every proposition when we speak of a thing *absolutely* and with *certainty*; as, *Scribo*, I write; *docebat*, he was teaching.

1. Hence, though the verb may be preceded by the particles *etsi*, *tametsi*, *quonquam*, *si*, *nisi*, &c. and interrogatives, yet when it is used directly as denoting some *fact*, it must be in the Indicative; as, "*Quamvis credo*," though I believe; "*Quandoredisti?*" When didst thou return?—But all these particles, under other circumstances hereafter to be noticed, are connected with the verb in the Subjunctive Mood.

2. Prepositions also with *sive*—*sive*, are commonly in the Indicative; as, "*Sive tacebis sive loquēris, mihi perinde est*;" whether thou shalt be silent or shalt speak, is the same to me.

318. *a.* Present, past, and future *duty*, *ability*, *will*, or *liberty*, are, in Latin, denoted by the present, past, and future *Indicative* of that verb which expresses these circumstances, and the verb following is nearly always in the Infinitive *Present*, and not, as in English, in the Infinitive Perfect; as,

Scribere debes;

You *should* write; or, it is *your duty* to write.

Scribere debuisti;

You *ought to have* written; that is, it *was your duty* to write.

Scribere debebis;

It *will be your duty* to write.

1. To this Rule belong such words as *oportere*, *necesse esse*, *debere*, *convenire*, *posse*, *par*, *aequum*, *consentaneum*, *justum esse*; *melius*, *utilius*, *optabilius esse*; in which cases the *propriety*, *advantage*, *ability*, &c. are considered, in Latin, as something actual, and rendered accordingly in the Indicative, though the circumstances which would have realised it never took place; thus, "*Hoc facere debes*," thou oughtest to *have done* this. "*Longe utilius fuit angustios aditus occupare*," it *would have been* much better to seize the pass.

2. *Pres.* *Mihi ire licet*, I may go;

Perf. *Mihi ire licuit*, I might have gone.

Tibi ire licet, thou mayst go.

Tibi ire licuit, thou mightst have gone.

Illi ire licet, he may go, &c.

Illi ire licuit, he might have gone.

3. *Pres.* *Facere possum*, I can do it.

Facere potui, I could have done it.

4. *Pres.* *Me facere oportet*, I ought to do it; or, *Ego facere debeo*.

Te facere oportet, thou oughtest to do it; or, *Tu facere debes*.

Perf. *Me facere oportuit*, I ought to have done it; or, *Ego facere debui*.

Te facere oportuit, thou oughtest to have done it; or, *Tu facere debuisti*.

5. Or, the Subjunctive governed by *ut* omitted may be used; as, (*Ego*) *faciam oportet*, I ought to do it; (*Tu*) *facias oportet*, thou oughtest to do it.

When *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, *should*, &c. are principal verbs, they must be translated by the proper tenses of *licet*, *possum*, *oportet*, *debeo*, &c.

6. In Latin also, an Indicative is frequently used when in English a Potential would be employed; thus, "*Longum est, infinitum est narrare*," is said instead of *esse* or *fore*; it *would be long* or *tedious* to narrate.

7. When the obligation, ability, &c. are represented as *contingent*, the Subjunctive must be used.

b. With the Participles in *rus* and *dus*, the Indicative of *sum* in past time is more generally used than the Subjunctive; as, "*Haec via tibi ingredienda erat*," this path *should have been* taken by thee.

Imperative Mood.

319. The Imperative Mood is used to express a *command*, *exhortation*, *entreaty*, or *wish*.

320. The Imperative has two forms; as, *lege*, *legito*; the shorter form (*lege*) expresses either a *command*, *exhortation*, or *wish*; the longer form (*legito*) is used only for *command*, and chiefly in the wording of *laws*, *contracts*, and *wills*.

The Hortative form, not having a first and a third Person Singular or Plural, borrows the Subjunctive Present ; as, "*Legat*," let him read ; "*Legamus*," let us read, &c.

321. Instead of the Imperative, the Present or Perfect Subjunctive may be used to express a command more mildly ; as,

Facias hoc ; fēcēris hoc ; | Do this.

322. With the Imperative, and with the Subjunctive put imperatively, *not* must be expressed by *ne* ; and *nor*, by *neve* ; as,

Ne legito neve scribĭto ; | Neither read nor write.

1. The Present and Perfect Subjunctive with *ne*, may be used to express a prohibition more mildly ; as, "*Hoc ne facias*."

2. After *cave*, *fac*, and some other Imperatives, *ut* as the affirmative, and *ne* as negative, are frequently omitted before the Subjunctive ; as, "*Cave dicas* " (cave *ne* dicas), beware of speaking.

Potential and Subjunctive Moods.

323. The *Potential Mood* is used when a thing is spoken of as *possible*, *uncertain*, or *contingent*, and is expressed in English by the signs *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*. This mood is not governed by any contingent particle, but the sense itself requires this form ; as,

Sit innocens ;

*Homines missi sunt, qui eum
certiorem facērent ;*

He may be innocent.

Men were sent who *should*
inform him ; or, *to inform*
him.

1. The Present Potential includes the expression of *may*, *can*, *will*, and *shall*, and the Imperfect of *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*. Thus, *Amem* signifies not only, " I may or can love ;" but likewise, in dependent and interrogative clauses, " I shall or will love ;" as, "*Nonne eam ?*" Shall I not go ? "*An potius ita me comparem ?*" Shall I rather so make up my mind ?

2. When the sentence or, clause is *absolute* and *independent*, or in general, when it is not followed or preceded by any tense expressing a circumstance on which the clause in question depends, then the words *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, must be rendered by the verbs *possum*, *volo*, *licet*, and *debeo*, governing the following verb in the Infinitive. Thus,

Ire volumus ;

Ire nolunt ;

Mihi venire licet ;

Legere possum ;

Legere debes ; — Tibi legendum est ; — Te

legere oportet ;

Fieri potuit or potuisset ;

We will go, or we are willing to go.

They will not go, they are unwilling to go.

I may come, it is allowable for me to come.

I can read, I am able to read.

Thou shouldst read, that is, thou oughtest

to read.

It might have been done.

3. On the other hand, the verbs *volo*, *possum*, *licet*, *oportet*, and *debeo*, are suppressed, and the words *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, &c., are considered merely as *signs* of the Potential Mood, under the two following circumstances :—

1st. When the sense is conditional or dependent, as,

Tenerem, si vellem ;

Fecisset, si tentasset ;

I might hold it, if I pleased.

He would have done it, if he had tried.

2ndly, When a conditional sentence is interrogative ; as,

Nonne eam ?

Quid facerem ?

Men' moveat cimex Pantilius ?

Shall I go, or should not I go ?

What could I do ?

Shall or should the insect Pantilius dis-
compose me ?

b. The following before the Imperfect and Pluperfect govern the Subjunctive ; before the other tenses either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the positive or contingent sense of the sentence : —

Etsi, although.

Ni, nisi, unless.

Si, Siquidem, if.

Sin, but if.

Tametsi, although.

1. With *nisi, nisi forte, nisi vero*, the Indicative is commonly used, if they are meant to introduce some absurd and improbable or inadmissible proposition ; as, "*Nemo saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit.*"

2. The Imperfect or Pluperfect should be used when the thing spoken of is represented not as real, but only as supposed.

3. In a Conditional Sentence, the clause containing the *condition* is sometimes called the *protasis* ; and that which contains the *consequence*, the *apodosis*. In whatever tense of the Subjunctive the *protasis* may be, the *apodosis* must be the same. The past tenses of the Indicative, however, are sometimes used in the *apodosis* to give more liveliness to the representation ; as, "*Perieram nisi tu accurrisses.*" Here the *protasis* is Subjunctive, and the *apodosis* in the Indicative.

326. a. In Affirmative Sentences, *that*, followed by *may, might*, and expressing a *purpose, motive, or design*, must be translated by *ut* with a Subjunctive ; as,

Esse oportet *ut* vivas ;

You must eat, *that* you may live.

1. *That* is here equivalent to *in order that, in order to, for the purpose of*.

2. The word *that* is frequently understood in English, when of two Infinitives the one expresses the *purpose* of the other ; as, "*I am come to see you.*" that is, *in order to see you.* "*I advise you to do it ;*" that is, *I advise you in order that you may do it.*

b. In Negative Sentences, *that not* (which is equivalent to *lest* and *from*) expressing the idea of *preventing, averting*, is translated by *ne* with a Subjunctive ; as,

Cura *ne* denuo in morbum incidas ;

Take care *that* you do not fall (or *lest* you fall) into any disease.

Ut non is used, on the other hand, for *that not*, when a simple *result* or *consequence*, and not an *intention*, is expressed ; as, "*Tum forte aegrotaham, ut ad nuptias tuas venire non possem ;*" I was then so unwell, *that* I could not go to your marriage. Hence the following rule : —

That not, denoting a *purpose*, is expressed by *ne*.

That not, — a *consequence*, — by *ut non*.

c. When *that*, denoting a *purpose*, is followed by a *negative*, it is expressed by *ne* and an *affirmative* pronoun ; but when a *consequence* is denoted, it must be expressed by *ut* and a *negative* ; thus,

That nobody, purpose exp. by *ne quis* ; but consequence exp. by *ut nemo*.

That nothing, — *ne quid* ; — *ut nihil*.

That no, — *ne ullus* ; — *ut nullus*.

That never, — *ne unquam* ; — *ut nunquam*.

327. *That*, denoting a *consequence* (and not a purpose), and following the words *such*, *so*, &c. must be expressed by *ut* with a Subjunctive ; as,

Epaminondas fuit etiam disertus, <i>ut</i> nemo Thebānus ei par esset ;	Epaminondas was <i>so</i> eloquent <i>that</i> (consequence) no Theban was equal to him.
-------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

328. After Verbs of *fearing* and *solicitude* (such as *metūo*, *timeo*, *vereor*), *that* is expressed by *ne*, and *that not* by *ut* ; as,

Vereor *ne* veniat ;

I fear *that* he will come ; that is, I do not wish him to come.

Vereor *ut* veniat ;

I fear *that* he will *not* come ; that is, I wish him to come.

1. *Ne* is therefore used after these words, when the following verb expresses a result *contrary* to our wish, but *ut* when it is agreeable to it ; as,

"Timeo *ne* facias," I fear that you will do it ; but I do not want you to do it.

"Timeo *ut* facias," I am afraid you *will not* do it ; but I want you to do it.

2. *Ne non*, with Verbs of *fearing*, is equivalent to *ut*, the negatives cancelling each other ; as, "Timeo *ne non* impetrem," I fear I shall not obtain it ; the same as *ut impetrem*. The negative may be incorporated with the verb ; as, "Unum vereor, *ne* senatus Pompeium *solit* dimittere," that is, *vereor ut velit*.

3. *Neve* or *neu* is compounded of *ne* and *ve*, and means *or that not*, and *that not* ; it must not therefore be confounded with *neque* ; *neque* answers to *non*, *neve* to *ne*.

329. The following table will show the peculiar application of the words *that*, *that not*, according to the different senses both in affirmative and negative sentences : —

In what sense used.	<i>That</i> , exp. by	<i>That not</i> , exp. by
1. Purpose, design,	<i>ut</i> ,	<i>ne</i> , <i>ut ne</i> ; and <i>that not</i> , <i>neve</i> .
2. Wish, care, effort,	<i>ut</i> ,	<i>ne</i> , <i>ut ne</i> ; and <i>that not</i> , <i>neve</i> .
3. Request, command,	<i>ut</i> ,	<i>ne</i> ; and <i>that not</i> , <i>neve</i> .
4. Result, effect,	<i>ut</i> ,	<i>ut non</i> . (When the governing sentence is negative by <i>quān</i> .)
5. Conclusion,	<i>ut</i> ,	<i>ut non</i> .
6. Object of Verbs referring to the operation of the mind or the senses, as, believe, think, observe, see, &c., and those of narration and information, as to say, answer, write, report, &c.	accusative with infinitive,	Accusative with infinitive with <i>non</i> when the sentence is negative.
7. Cause, reason, circumstance, explanation.	quod, or accusative with infin.	quod non, or accusative with infinitive.
8. Fear, solicitude,	<i>ne</i> ,	<i>ut</i> , <i>ne non</i> .

Quo, Quominus, Quin.

330. *a. Quo*, *that*, is used (for *ut eo*, *that by this*) to denote a *consequence*, and which is frequently connected with a Comparative ; as,

Caesar milites cohortatus est, quo animo fortiore essent ;	Caesar exhorted his soldiers <i>that</i> (by this) they might be more courageous.
------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

b. Quominus is used after Verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, refusing*, and is translated by *that, that not*; as,

Quid sapienti potest <i>obstare</i> , <i>quominus</i> beatus sit;	What can prevent a wise man <i>that</i> he should be happy; or <i>from</i> being happy.
----------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

The word *ne*, and if a negative precedes, *quin*, may be used after these words.

c. Quin, signifying *that not*, is used after a *negative principal clause*; as,

<i>Facere non possum, quin ad</i> <i>te mittam literas</i> ;	I cannot forbear writing to you; that is, I cannot do, <i>that</i> I should <i>not</i> write to you.
-----------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

d. Quin, signifying *that (but that)*, is used after Verbs of *doubting, denying, &c.* in negative sentences; as,

Non dubito <i>quin</i> verum dix- <i>eris</i> ;	I do not doubt <i>that</i> you speak the truth.
----------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Quin is used after a principal *negative clause*, instead of *qui non, quae non, &c.*; as, "*Nemo est quin optet.*"

Cum or *Quum*.

331. *a. Cum* or *quum*, signifying *since, although, whilst, during the time that, after*, requires the Subjunctive Mood.

b. Cum or *quum*, signifying *when*, has a Subjunctive in the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* Tenses, if the events described depend on each other, so that in English the Participle may be used; as,

Alexander, <i>quum interemis-</i> <i>set</i> Clitum, vix manus a se abstinuit;	Alexander, having killed Cli- tus, scarcely kept his hands from himself.
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

But when the time at which the events happened is intended to be distinctly marked the Indicative must be employed; as, "*Verres quum rosam viderat, tunc incipere ver arbitrabatur.*"

Perhaps no Rule can be given that will apply to all the passages in which *quum* is used, as both moods are occasionally applied by the same author to express the same idea.

c. Cum or *quum* has an Indicative Mood, when it signifies *because (quod)*; *as often as, whenever*, (quoties, quandoquidem); *when, at which time*, (quando).

Also, to express the point of time *at which* an action or state commenced, and which is conceived to be continued to the present period; as, "*Jam anni propè quadraginta sunt, quum hoc probatur;*" It is now nearly forty years *when* this *was* proved.

Again, when it signifies *as soon as*, and denotes an action or event in *close succession* to another; as, "*Cum ad nos allatum est de temeritate eorum, graviter commotus sum;*" *as soon as* we were informed, &c.

Of the Form of Direct and Indirect Discourse.

332. *Oratio recta* (*direct discourse*) is that kind of discourse in which the words of a person are repeated *precisely* as they were pronounced by him; as, The messenger announced, "*Peace is concluded*;" *Nuncius allatus est, "Pax est composita."*

333. *Oratio obliqua* (*indirect discourse*) is that kind of discourse in which the words of a person are made *dependent* upon some Verb of *perceiving* or *communicating*; as, The messenger announced "*that peace was concluded*."

Inquam is generally used in *direct*, and *aito* in *indirect*, discourse.

334. *Principal sentences* in *indirect discourse*, are expressed:—

a. By the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive*, when they express a simple statement; as, *Nuntius allatus est "pacem esse compositam."*

b. By the *Subjunctive*, when they express a *command* or *wish*; as, *Dux dixit "omnia esse perditā, milites suae salutis consulerent."*

The *direct form* of this sentence would be, "*Omnia sunt perditā; consulite, milites, vestrae salutis.*"

335. *Subordinate sentences* in *indirect discourse* are expressed by the *Subjunctive*; as, "*Caesar dixit, se, postquam hostes fusi essent, castra munitūrum esse.*"

*Government of Qui, quae, quod.**

336. *a.* When a writer or speaker uses the relative *qui, quae, quod*, or the Causal Conjunctions *quòd, quia, quoniam, quandòquidem, quum, quando*, to report the words or sentiments of another, and not his own, the Verb must be in the *Subjunctive Mood*; as,

Socrātes dicere solēbat omnes in eo, quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes; (Cic.)

Socrates was accustomed to say, that all men were sufficiently eloquent on that subject which they understood.

Here Cicero is quoting the words of another, that is, of Socrates, and not expressing any sentiment of his own, and therefore the verb *scirent* is in the *Subjunctive*.

Again, "*Socrates accusatus est, quidā corrumpēret iuventūtem;*" Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth. — Had the verb *corrumpēret* been in the *Indicative* instead of the *Subjunctive*, the writer would have asserted that he *did actually* corrupt the youth, whereas he was only *accused* of doing so.

This is an instance of *Obliqua Oratio*.

b. When the *Relative* or *Causal Clause* is either the ob-

* For the rules on the government of *Qui, quae, quod*, the Author is principally indebted to *Crombie's Gymnasium*.

servation of the author, or the precise words of the person of whom he is speaking, the relative or causal Conjunction is joined to the *Indicative* Mood, unless the sense be contingent or the Subjunctive be required by any of the subsequent rules.

1. When the proposition is in the Indicative, it is called the *Recta Oratio*.

The following sentence illustrates both rules: "*Praeterea traditum esse memoratumque, in ultimâ quâdam terrâ, quae Albania dicitur, gigni homines, qui in pueritiâ canescant.*" In the former relative clause (being the observation of the writer), *quae* is joined to the Indicative, in the latter, the relative clause is the subject of *traditum*, and therefore takes the Subjunctive Mood.

2. In the same manner, *Ubi*, not taken interrogatively, but relatively, and used for *in quo loco*; also, *Quo* for *ad quem locum*, and *Unde* for *e quo loco*, taken relatively, and not expressing an observation or opinion of the author's, govern the Subjunctive Mood; thus, "*Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, perspiciebant.*"

3. When an *indirect* question is expressed, the Subjunctive is used; as, "*Qualis sit ipse nescit.*" "*Incertum est quo te loco mors expectet.*"

The *direct* questions are, "*Qualis est?*" "*Quo loco mors te expectat?*"

337. *Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when the relative clause expresses the *motive, reason, or cause* of the action or event; as,

Malè fecit Hannibal, *qui* Capuae hiemârît ;

Hannibal did wrong *in wintering, or because he wintered* at Capua.

1. If we say, "*Malè fecit, qui hiemâvit,*" we impute error to the person who wintered but do not express the error as consisting in his wintering; but when we say, "*Malè fecit, qui hiemârît,*" we signify that he erred, *because he wintered, or in wintering.* In such expressions, the relative seems equivalent to *Quoniam ego*, or *quod ego*; *Quoniam tu*, or *quod tu*; *Quoniam ille*, or *quod ille*.

2. When *ut*, *utpôtè*, *quippe*, are expressed with the relative, they sufficiently mark the influence of the relative clause, and thus they are sometimes joined to the Indicative, but more frequently to the Subjunctive Mood.

338. *Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when it is equivalent to *quamquam is*, or *etsi is*, *si is*, *modò is*, or *dummodo is*; as,

Cicero *qui* per omnes superiores dies milites in castra continuisset, misit ;

Cicero, *though he had kept* his troops in the camp through all the preceding days, sent.

Quod is used with a Subjunctive to express a restriction; as, "*Quod sciam,*" as far as I know.

339. When the relative follows an interrogative, negative, or indefinite word, and expresses the same thing and subject as the antecedent clause, it is followed by the Subjunctive Mood; as,

Quid est, *quod* metuas ?

What reason have you for fearing? or, You have no cause for fear.

1. This Rule is applicable only when the interrogation is equivalent to an affirmation or negation. When the sentence implies a question put for the sake of information, the

relative takes the Indicative Mood. "*Quid est quod audio?*" signifies, What is that which I hear? "*Quid est quod audiam?*" means, What is there for me to hear? or, What reason is there for my hearing?

2. The following are the most common forms of expression comprehended under this Rule: "*Quis est?*" *Quantus est?* *Ecquis est?* *An quisquam est?* &c. *Nemo est, Nullus est, Nihil est, Non quisquam est, Nego esse quenquam, Vis ullus est, &c.*

340. The relative is generally joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when a periphrasis is employed with the Verbs *sum, reperio, invenio, existo, exorior*, instead of simply the nominative with the principal verb; as,

Sunt, qui dicant; there are persons who say; instead of *Nonnulli dicunt*; some say.

1. This Rule is applicable only when the Relative Clause forms the Predicate of the sentence, as will be seen in the following examples:—

When Cicero says, "*Erant in magnâ potentiâ qui consulebantur.*" he means, Those who were consulted were in great power. Here the relative clause forms the subject, and the other the predicate. Had he said, "*Erant in magnâ potentiâ qui consulerentur.*" he would have expressed, "There were men in great power who were consulted." Here *men in great power* is the subject, and *were consulted* the predicate. The verb is therefore in the Subjunctive.

2. The same periphrastic form of expression is also employed with the following phrases: *tempus fuit, tempus veniet, adest, si quis est, praesto sunt,* &c.

341. When the relative follows the intensive words *sic, ita, tam, talis, is, (such, so,)* and is used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut ille, ut nos, ut vos, ut illi*, through all their cases, it requires the Subjunctive Mood; as, "*Non sum is qui dicam,*" I am not such a man as to say; or, I am not the man who says.

This Rule does not apply to the word *is* when it is not causal, but merely demonstrative; for it would then mean, I am not that man who says, "*Non sum is qui dico.*"

1. The relative agrees in person with the principal subject, and not with the antecedent, whose character is expressed in the relative clause; thus, "*Non is sum qui omnia sciam.*" Here, *qui* and *sciam* agree with *ego* understood, and not with *is*.

2. *Quis sum*, used for *num talis sum ut*, takes a Relative with the Subjunctive; as, "*Quis sum, cujus aures laedi nefas sit?*" Who am I, that it should be a crime that my ears should be wounded?

342. *Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood after *solus* and *unus*, when they are employed to restrict to a single person the qualities implied in the relative clause; as, "*Est solus ex familiâ qui discat,*" he is the only one of the family who learns. Were we to say *discit*, it might be taken for, He who learns, is the only one of the family.

343. A Relative after *aptus, dignus, indignus, and idoneus*, requires the Subjunctive; as,

<p><i>Voluptas non est digna ad quam sapiens respiciat;</i></p>	<p> Pleasure is not deserving that a wise man should regard her.</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

344. When *qui* is used for the interrogative indefinite *quis*, and not as a mere relative, it is followed by the Subjunctive; as,

Dic mihi *quem videas*; | Tell me whom you see.

345. Comparatives with *quàm qui* in all its cases, require the Subjunctive; as,

Major sum *quàm cui possit* | I am too great for fortune to
fortuna nocere; | be able to injure me.

346. When a Subjunctive is used, the verb in a clause dependent on that subjunctive, must be in the same mood; as,

Rex imperavit, ut quae bello | The king commanded, that
opus *essent*, *pararentur*; | those things should be pre-
pared which were necessary
for the war.

Pararentur is in the Subjunctive, because it follows *ut*, and *essent* is in the Subjunctive because *pararentur* is.

347. When a proposition is in the Infinitive Mood, a clause belonging to it, as an *essential* part, must be in the Subjunctive after the relative; as, "*Perspicuum est esse aliquod numen quo hic mundus regatur*," it is clear that there is some divinity by whom this world is governed.

The Infinitive Mood.

348. *a.* The Infinitive Mood expresses an action either in progress or as completed, without any specification of number, person, or time. The verb on which the Infinitive depends, determines the *time* in which the action falls.

b. When two Verbs come together, the latter must be in the Infinitive Mood, when it denotes the subject or object of the former; as,

Cupio *scire*; | I wish to know.

1. The Latin Infinitive, in prose, is never employed to express a *purpose*. The English Infinitive, therefore, when denoting a *purpose*, must be translated by *ut* with the Subjunctive.

2. The Infinitive is used chiefly after *volo, nolo, cupio, amo, conor, tento, audeo, studeo, cogito, possum, nequeo, obliviscor, debet, coepi, incipio, constituo, soleo, consuesco, &c.*

When the latter verb does not express the certain and immediate effect, but the *cause, purpose, end, or something remote*, the *Subjunctive* Mood is generally used.

3. The Infinitive frequently follows adjectives, and sometimes substantives; as, "*Dignus amari*;" "*Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla*."

4. Directions for the Tenses of the Infinitive will be given under the *Use of the Tenses*.

349. The Infinitive is used as a neuter noun in all the

cases of the singular number, and may have adjectives and pronouns agreeing with it; as,

Fraudāre turpe est;

Praeter plorāre;

Dignus amāri;

To cheat is shameful.

Except lamentation.

Worthy of love.

The Infinitive is considered the Nominative when it is the *subject*, and the Accusative when it is the *object* of an action.

350. *a.* When the word *that* between two verbs is omitted in Latin, the noun or pronoun following is put in the Accusative, and the verb in the Infinitive Mood; as,

Audio patrem esse doctum; | I hear that your father is learned.

1. The word *that* is frequently omitted in English; thus, "I think the master will come," for "I think *that* the master will come."

2. The Infinitive, according to this Rule, must be used either with the Accusative of the *subject* or of the *object*. The Accusative of the *object* is generally a whole proposition; as, "Scio *Ciceronem fuisse eloquentem*," I know *that* Cicero was eloquent.

3. The Accusative with the Infinitive follows Verbs (*sentienti et declarandi*) of feeling, knowing, wishing, hearing, believing, thinking, &c.; and such expressions as, it is certain, manifest, true, &c.

4. When the Verb has no supine and no participle future active an Infinitive Future is formed by *fore* or *futurum esse*, and *futurum fuisse*, followed by *ut* with a Subjunctive; as, "Spero *fore ut contingat id nobis*," I hope this may fall to our lot.

Such Verbs as *existimo*, *puto*, *spero*, *suspicio*, are frequently followed by *fore* or *futurum esse*, even when the Verb is not defective; as, "Nunquam putavi *fore ut* ad te supplex venirem."

5. When two Accusatives with an Infinitive would render it doubtful which was the case of the Infinitive, actives should be changed into passives, or *quod* or *ut* should, if possible, be used; thus in the sentence, "*Patrem te amare dicunt*," it is doubtful whether you love the father, or the father you; we should therefore say, "*Patrem a te amari*, or *a patre te amari*."

b. After Verbs denoting *pain* or *joy*, *surprise* or *wonder*, the word *that* may be expressed by *quod* with the Indicative or Subjunctive, instead of the Accusative with the Infinitive; as, "*Doleo te stomachāri*, or *quod stomachāris*, or *quod stomachēris*;" I grieve that thou art offended.

1. With *doleo* and *gaudeo* the Accusative and Infinitive are more common; but *gratias agere*, and *gratulari* have generally *quod*.

2. *That*, signifying *in as much as*, *as far as concerns*, must be rendered by *quod*, when a pronoun precedes to which it refers; as, "*Illud est admiratione dignum, quod* Regulus captivos retinendos censuit."

351. *a.* The Infinitive is frequently used in narration instead of the Indicative; as,

Postquam in aedes irrupērunt, | Afterwards they rushed into
diversi regem quaerere; | the palace, and in different
directions (began) to seek
the king.

This is called *Infinitivus Historicus*. An ellipsis of *coepit* or *coepērunt* has been supposed, but the sense will not always admit this; as in this sentence, "*Ingenium ejus haud absurdum; posse versus facere, jocum movere*."

b. In interrogations or exclamations expressing *indignation*, the Accusative with the Infinitive is used alone, *ne* being commonly added ; as,

Mene incepto desistère vic- | Shall I, as if conquered, desist
tam ? | from my undertaking ?

The Verbs *dicis, putas, dicunt, putant*, are understood in such cases.

352. *a.* Verbs of *endeavouring, aiming, and accomplishing*; as, *facio, studeo (id, hoc, illud), ago, meditor, assequor, pervinco, &c.* ; of *begging, demanding, admonishing, and commanding*, except *jubeo*, require the Subjunctive with *ut* instead of the Infinitive ; as,

Omne animal id agit, ut se | Every animal takes pains to
conservet ; | preserve itself.

Moneo and *admoneo*, signifying to *apprise, remind, inform*, take an Infinitive ; signifying to *admonish or exhort to an action*, have *ut* or *ne* with the Subjunctive ; as, "*Moneo ut quiescant.*" *Persuadeo*, to *convince*, has an Infinitive, to *succeed in exhorting*, the Subjunctive. *Nuncio, scribo*, and *dico*, implying an injunction or intention that a thing should be done, have a Subjunctive.

b. *Ut* must also be used with a Subjunctive after *accidit, caput est, contingit, evenit, extremum est, fieri non potest, fit, futurum est, incidit, occurrit, rurum est, relinquitur, reliquum est, restat, sequitur, superest, usu venit* ; as,

Reliquum est ut egomet mihi | It remains that I provide for
consulam ; | myself.

It must be here observed, that *ut* always denotes a *purpose, consequence, or result*; *quod* is either *explanatory*, or denotes a *cause*.

353. *a.* After Verbs of *being willing, being unwilling, and permitting* (which commonly take the Accusative with the Infinitive), and also after Verbs of *advising, asking, reminding*, the Subjunctive alone, without *ut*, is sometimes used, particularly after *fac, velim, nolim, malim, oportet, necesse est* ; as,

Fac spem bonam habeas ; | Take care that thou have good
| hope.
Tu velim nos absentes diligas ; | I wish thou wouldst love us
| absent.

Necesse est is, in Cicero, more commonly followed by the Infinitive than by the Subjunctive.

354. *a.* The use of the *Accusative* with the *Infinitive* may be summed up in the following cases ; —

1. After Verbs of *believing, thinking, feeling, and perceiving* ; of *saying and relating*.

2. After Verbs of *willing, desiring, letting, bidding* and

forbidding; such as *volo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo, sino, patior, jubeo, and veto*.

3. After the expressions, *apparet, constat*, and the like; *opus est, licet, justum est, aequum est, &c.*

b. The *Nominative* with the *Infinitive* stands with the *passives*—*dicor, trador, putor, credor, existimor* (they believe that I), *videor* (it seems that I), *jubeor, vetor*; as, "*Bonus esse dicor*," I am said to be good; or, they say that I am good.

THE USE OF THE TENSES.

The Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

355. a. Every action may be considered either as *past, present, or future*, and also as in an *imperfect* or a *perfect* state.

b. The Indicative Mood has three Tenses both for the Imperfect and Perfect States; the former implying the *continuation*, and the latter the *completion* of an action; as,

IMPERFECT STATE.	PERFECT STATE.
Pres. <i>Doceo</i> , I teach.	(Pres.) Perf. <i>Docui</i> , I taught or have taught.
Imp. <i>Docēbam</i> , I was teaching.	Past Perf. <i>Docueram</i> , I had taught.
Fut. Imp. <i>Docēbo</i> , I shall teach.	Fut. Perf. <i>Docuero</i> , I shall have taught.

356. The *Present Tense* speaks of an action or event which takes place in present time; as, "*Doceo*," I teach, am teaching, or do teach.

1. The Latin Present is used to express general and immutable *truths*, and also *customs* still continuing.

2. It is very frequently used in *narrations of past events*, to render the representation more animated.

3. Sometimes it has the force of the Perfect, when joined with an Adverb or other expression of past time that includes the past and present; as, "*Jam pridem cupio Alexandriam visere*," I have long had a desire to visit Alexandria.

357. The *Imperfect Tense* represents an action or event which was going on and not completed at some past time; as, "*Docebam*," I was teaching.

1. This tense is generally used to express actions frequently repeated; also *manners, customs, and institutions* formerly existing; as, "*Ansæres Romæ publicè ~~alebantur~~ in Capitolio*," Geese were kept at the public expense at Rome in the Capitol.

2. In writing letters, the Romans used the Imperfect Tense, when speaking of a thing which was present at the time of writing, but which was subject to an alteration, and might be already past when their letter reached its destination; as, "*Novi nihil erat apud nos*," there is no news with us.

But if the discourse was about something unchangeable, or at least about things which would not probably be changed within the time that the letter would come to hand, the Present was used; as, "*Deus est justus.*"

3. The *Perfect* is sometimes used of a continued action, when its continuance is not the circumstance which is meant to be brought particularly to view; but the *Imperfect* is never employed, except the action is repeated or continued.

358. The *Perfect Tense* represents an action or event either as just finished, or as finished some time ago; as, "*Docui,*" I have taught, or I taught.

In the latter sense, it is used to relate events simply as happening in past time, without reference to their having been completed or not completed at any specified time. It is in this sense sometimes called an Aorist, and is expressed in English by the *Past Tense*; as, "*Docui,*" I taught, or did teach.

The *Perfect* is sometimes used, when in English a Pluperfect would be employed; as, "*Caesar postquam in Treviros venit, Rhenum transire constituit.*"

359. The *Pluperfect* (Past Perfect) expresses an action or event which was past before some other past action or event specified in the sentence, and to which it refers; as, "*Docueram,*" I had taught.

360. The *Future Imperfect* represents an action or event which is yet to come; as, "*Docēbo,*" I shall or will teach.

When a future action is spoken of, and another connected with it has not yet taken place, the latter is also put in the Future; or in the Future Perfect, if it must be completed before the other can begin; as, "*Faciām si potēro,*" I will do it if I can; "*Ut sementem feceris ita metes,*" as thou hast sown, so wilt thou reap.

The same Rule applies to the Imperative and to the Subjunctive used imperatively; as, "*Facito hoc ubi voles,*" do this when you please.

361. The *Future Perfect* denotes that a future action or event will be completed at, or before another future action or event; as, "*Docuēro,*" I shall have taught.

The *Future Perfect* is sometimes used for the Future, to express haste; as, "*Mox videro.*"

The Tenses of the Potential and Subjunctive Moods.

362. The *Potential* and *Subjunctive* Moods have the *Present* and *Past* for both states, but no *Future Tense*.

1. As there is no Future of the Subjunctive, its place is supplied by the other Tenses of the Subjunctive; as, "*Ille de re promisit se scripturum, quum primum nuntium accepisset,*" he promised that he would write concerning that matter as soon as he should have received intelligence.

2. Sometimes the other Subjunctives cannot supply its place; in this case, therefore, the *Periphrastic Future* must be employed; thus, for "I do not doubt that he will return," we should say, "*Non dubito quin rediturus sit.*" Were we to say, "*Nos dubito quin redeat,*" the expression would imply, "I do not doubt that he is returning." "*Quin redierit*" would mean "that he has returned."

3. The Participle in *dus* must not be used for the Future, but *futurum sit*, or *esset* with *ut*; or in the Infinitive *fore*, which is of both Tenses, must be employed; as, "*Spero fore ut vincatur,*" I hope that he will be conquered.

363. The *Present* Subjunctive has sometimes a present, but generally a future signification.

364. The *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* Tenses Subjunctive are variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of the sentence.

365. The *Perfect* Subjunctive is used only of a completed action, and of the Present time; as, "Puer de tecto decēdit, ut crus frēgērit;" the boy has fallen from the roof, so that he has broken his leg.

366. *a.* The *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive describe a supposed or probable action or event, without necessarily implying that it does not actually exist, or may not exist; but the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* exclude the idea of its actual existence; as, "*Si velit*," if he wishes; that is, he may or may not wish; "*Si vellet*," if he wished or did wish; implying that, "He does not or did not wish."

1. Sometimes, however, the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are used even of what is meant to be represented as not actually existing, to express in a more lively way, that if it did exist, certain consequences would follow; as, "*Tu si hic sis aliter sentias*."

2. The Particle of contingency is sometimes understood in the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive; as, "*Dixerit Epicūrus*," grant that Epicurus could have said.

b. The *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are also used, in a future sense, to *soften an assertion or statement*; as, "*Nemo istud tibi concedat (concesserit)*," no one will grant you that.

c. The *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are used with questions which imply a *doubt* respecting the probability or propriety of an action; as, "*Quis posthac numen Junōnis adoret?*" Who will henceforth adore the divinity of Juno?

The *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are sometimes used instead of an Imperative. See Imper. (321. 322.)

367. The *Periphrastic* Conjugation denotes that a person has a *mind to do*, or is *upon the point of doing* something; as, "*Scripturus sum*," I am about to write, or meditate writing.

The time of the action is here determined, not by the Participle but by the Substantive Verb attached to it; as, "*Scripturus eram, scripturus ero*," &c.

The Tenses of the Infinitive Mood.

368. The *Present* Infinitive Active denotes an action as not complete, but *in progress*, and shows that the action or state is contemporaneous with that of the leading verb, whether the tense of the leading verb be present or preterite; as,

1. "*Dicit me scribere*," he says that I write. Here the leading verb *dicit* and the governed verb *scribere* both express the same time; the infinitive present is therefore employed.

"*Dixit me scribere*," he said that I wrote, that is, he said that I was writing at the time he said so. Here also, *scribere* and *dixit* express contemporaneous time, and therefore the present infinitive is employed.

Again, "*Dixit fratrem quotidie legere*," he said that his brother read every day. Here the *saying* and the *reading* are contemporaneous.

2. *Memini* generally takes an Infinitive Imperfect, although an action already completed is spoken of; as, "*Memini Catonem mecum disserere*," I remember Cato's talking with me.

369. The Infinitive *Perfect Active* expresses action *completed*.

a. If the leading verb be *present*, and the following verb denote an action *prior* to that, the following verb, to mark that priority, must be in the Infinitive *Perfect*; as,

"*Dixit me scripsisse*," he says that I *wrote*. Here the actions are not contemporaneous, the verb *scripsisse* implying an action *antecedent* to *dixit*; it is, therefore, in the Infinitive *Perfect*.

b. If the leading verb express a *past* action, and the following verb denote an action *antecedent* to that, then the following verb must be in the *Pluperfect* of the Infinitive, and be translated by *had*; as,

1. "*Dixit me scripsisse*," he said that I *had* written. Here the *saying* is past with respect to present time, and the *writing* being prior, is, therefore, expressed by the *Pluperfect* of the Infinitive. So again,

"*Dixit nos audivisse*," he says that we heard.

"*Dixit nos audivisse*," he said that we *had* heard.

2. The Infinitive *Perfect* is used as the Infinitive Present, after *contentus sum*, *satis est*, *satis habeo*; as, "*Satis sit dixisse*."

370. In the *Passive Voice* also, there are two Infinitives, one called the Infinitive *Present*, which denotes a state of suffering *still continuing*; the other, the Infinitive *Perfect*, and denotes the same state *completed*.

371. There is also, both in the Active and Passive Voice, an Infinitive of *future time*. The active future is formed by means of *esse* and the participle of the future; as, "*Laudaturum esse*." The passive future is the supine with *iri*; as, "*Laudatum iri*."

1. The Participle of the Future Active properly denotes the *intention* or *desire* to perform an action, whence it was an easy transition to the sense of "to be about to perform it."

2. After *hope*, *promise*, *undertake*, &c. the Future Infinitive is used with the *accusative* of the pronoun; and after *pretend*, *feign*, the *accusative* of the pronoun and Infinitive Present; as, "*Sperat adolescens diu se victurum (esse)*;" "*Simulat se furere*."

3. The Future Participle in the Passive Voice cannot be used with *esse* to denote simple futurity; for the proper meaning of the participle in *dus* is, "what ought to be done;" *scribendum esse* is, therefore, equivalent to *necesse esse ut scribatur*, and not to *fore ut scribatur*.

4. A Circumlocution is frequently employed instead of the Infinitive of future time, by means of *futurum esse* or *fore*, for a continuing state; and *futurum fuisse* for a futurity, contingent upon some condition not yet fulfilled. This mode is necessary, when the verb has no supine and no participle future active.

5. The expression of *present*, *past*, and *future* time in the Infinitive will be clearly seen from the following table:—

{		Dicit me scribere; he says that I write, am writing, or do write.	
{		Dicit me scriptasse; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.	
{		Dicit me scripturum esse; he says that I shall write.	
{		Dixit me scribere; he said that I was writing, or wrote.	
{		Dixit me scriptasse; he said that I had written.	
{		Dixit me scripturum esse; he said that I would write.	
{		Dixit me scripturum fuisse; he said that I would have written.	
{		Dicit literas scribi; he says that letters are written.	
{		— scriptas esse; — are, or were written.	
{		— scriptum iri; — will be written.	
{		Dixit literas scribi; he said that letters were written.	
{		— scriptas esse; — have been written.	
{		— scriptas fuisse — had been written.	
{		— scriptum iri — would be written.	
{		Dicit se intelligere quid agat hostis; — understands — are doing.	
{		— intellecturum quid acturus sit hostis; — shall understand — will do.	
{		Dicebat se intelligere quid ageret hostis; — he understood — were doing.	
{		— intellecturum quid acturus esset hostis; — should understand — would do.	

Succession of the Tenses in Subjunctive subordinate Sentences.

372. After the words *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quominus*, *quin*, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, *quis*, and other Particles that govern the Subjunctive, it must be observed that,

1. When in the *Independent* clause, a *principal tense*, namely, a Present, Perfect, or Future verb is employed, then a Present, Perfect, or Future Periphrastic Present must be employed in the *subordinate* clause according to the sense.

2. When in the *Independent* clause, an *historical tense* is employed, namely, an Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect tense, then in the *Subordinate* clause, an Imperfect, Perfect, or Future Periphrastic Imperfect must be employed according to the sense; thus,

1. Principal Tense.

Scio quid agas, egeris, acturus sis.
Cognovi quid agas, egeris, acturus sis.
Audiam quid agas, egeris, acturus sis.

2. Historical Tense.

Sciebam quid ageres, egisses, acturus esses.
Cognovi quid ageres, egisses, acturus esses.
Cognovēram quid ageres, egisses, acturus esses.

Remarks.—1. *a.* The *Present* is followed by the *Present* when it relates to a present circumstance; as, "*Rogo te ut venias*," I ask thee to come: "*Pugnat quasi pro vitā contendat*," he fights as if he contended for life.

b. Yet the *Present* is followed by the *Perfect*, when the discourse is of a *past* subject, and by the *Future* when it is about a *future* subject; as, "*Timeo ne libros meos amiserim*," I fear that I have lost my books. "*Dic mihi, quando rediturus sis*," tell me when you will return.

c. Sometimes by the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, when the sense requires; as, "*Dic mihi quid faceres*;" "*Dic mihi quid fecisses*."

2. *a.* The *Future* is followed by the *Present*; as, "*Rogabo patrem, ut librum mihi emat*;" I will ask my father to buy me a book.

b. The *Future* is followed by the *Perfect*, when the discourse is of a *past* event; as, "*Cras necesse erit, ut labor finitus sit*;" to-morrow it will be necessary that the labour have been finished.

3. *a.* The *Imperfect* is followed by the *Imperfect*; as, "*Rogabat me, ut venirem*," he asked me to come.

b. By the *Pluperfect* when the sense requires it; as, "*Vellem, nunquam te vidissem*;" I could wish that I had never seen thee.

4. The *Perfect* is followed by the *Imperfect*, when it is used simply to express past time; as, "Puer de tecto *decidit*, ut crux *frangeret*;" the boy fell from the roof, so that he broke his leg. "*Pugnavit*, quasi pro vitâ *contenderet*;" he fought, as if he had contended for life.

5. a. The *Pluperfect* is followed by the *Imperfect*; as, "*Timueram* ne in morbum *inciderem*," I had feared that I should fall sick.

b. Yet the *Pluperfect* is followed by the *Pluperfect*, when the sense requires it; as "*Audiveram* qualis *fuiisset*," I had heard what sort of a man he had been.

6. Verbs similarly situated with respect to time and circumstance, must be in the same mood and tense, connected by copulative and disjunctive conjunctions. Sometimes the conjunctions are understood.

7. To express *different* modifications of time, corresponding tenses must be used; as, The *Present* with the *Perfect*; as, "*Amavisti* me et adhuc *amas*."

The *Imperfect* with the *Pluperfect*; as, "*Speraveram* semper et tum *sperabam*."

The *Present* with the *Future*; as, "*Amo* te et per omnem vitam *amabo*."

8. The Infinitive Present is used both of the *past* and the *present*, according to the verb on which it depends; as, "*Credebam* te *legere*; *Credo* te *legere*."

9. The *Perfect* Infinitive will be followed by the *Perfect*; as, "*Arbitramur* nos ea *præstitisse* quæ ratio *præscripserit*," we think that we have performed those things which reason required.

The Infinitive of the perfect-aorist will be followed by a tense of past time; as, "*Gaudeo* me *curavisse* ante senectutem ut bene *vicerem*," I am glad that I took care before old-age to live well.

The Present Participle also is followed by a verb of past or present time, according to the tense of the verb on which it depends.

THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN A LATIN SENTENCE.

In the *Arrangement* or *Order* in which words are placed in Latin, the following rules are observed:—

373. The most important word in the sentence must be placed before those connected words which are less important.

In English, the *Subject* is placed first, next the *Verb* with its *Adverb*, and then the *Object* with the words connected with it. The reverse of this frequently takes place in Latin, particularly in subjects addressed to the *feelings* or the *imagination*. The most important words are, in such instances, placed so as to make the strongest impression; those which express the *principal* object of the discourse, together with its circumstances, being placed the *first* in the sentence, and those which represent the *actor* of agent, frequently the *last*; as in the following sentences:—

The Nominative, when emphatic, precedes the verb; when not emphatic, it follows; as, "*Ortûs nostri partem patria vindicat*;" "Non *intelligunt homines* quàm magnum vectigal sit parsimonia." Oblique cases, when emphatic, precede the governing word; as, "*Necessitatibus inventa antiquiora sunt quàm voluptatibus*." When not emphatic, they follow; as, "An tam eram rudis? tam ignarus rerum, tam expertus consilii?"

374. The word governed is placed before the word which governs it; as, "*Carthaginiensium dux; Laudis avidus; Hostem fudit*."

Much, however, depends whether the governed or governing word is the more important.

1. The *proper* name must precede the name of the rank or profession, &c. or a word put in apposition; "*Cicero orator; Agis rex; Cyprus insula*." Except the emphasis falls upon the common noun; as, "*Pontifex Scaevola*," to distinguish him from the *Augur*.

2. The Vocative either introduces the sentence, or is placed amongst the first words; as, "*Credo, vos, iudices*."

3. *a.* When the *Adjective* is emphatic, it precedes the Substantive; but when the *Substantive* is emphatic, the *Adjective* follows. In other cases, the position of the *Adjective* is various, sometimes before and sometimes after the Substantive.

b. The *Adjectives* *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, summus, infimus, imus, supremus, reliquus, caeterus*, are generally placed before the Substantive.

c. When the Substantive governs another in the genitive, the *Adjective* generally precedes both; as, "*Duo* Platōnis praecepta."

d. When the Substantive is governed by a preposition, the *Adjective* is frequently put before the Substantive; as, "*Magna* ex parte."

e. If two *Adjectives* refer to the same noun, the Pronoun is often inserted between them; as, "*Libro tuo* et admirabili ingenio delector."

375. In Latin narrative, in didactic composition, or in ordinary discourse, in which no emphasis is intended, after *Conjunctions* is placed the *Subject*, then the *Governed Cases*, with all other unemphatic additions, and lastly, the *Verb*.

NOTE 1. When a descriptive clause is subjoined to the nominative that cannot conveniently stand between the nominative and the verb, or when the nominative is closely connected with the succeeding clause by which it is either limited or explained, it must follow the verb; as, "*Erant* omnino itinēra duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent."

2. Circumstances, that is, the *cause, manner, instrument, time, or place*, must be expressed before the predicate or thing affirmed; as, "*Eum ferro* occidi."

3. An aggregate of particulars, to which any addition is to be expressed, or from which any exception is to be made, generally precedes the addition or the exception; as, "*Ego, praeter caeteras tuas virtutes*, humanitatem tuam admirror."

Also, what is common to several objects, either precedes or follows them, but must not be placed with one exclusively; as, "*In scriptoribus* legendis et imitandis," or "*In legendis imitandisque scriptoribus*," and not "*In legendis scriptoribus* et imitandis."

4. The verb is seldom placed at the end of the proposition, when either this is too long for the hearer to be kept in expectation of it, or when too many verbs would come together at the end.

5. Sometimes the most important word is placed at the end of the sentence, in order that the reader's attention may dwell upon it.

376. Words connected in sense should be as close as possible to each other; and the words of one clause should never be mixed with those of another.

When, for instance, Horace says, "*Romanos terrarum dominos evehit ad deos*," it is impossible to ascertain whether "*Terrarum dominos*" refer to the Romans or to the gods.

377. Some words have a fixed and determinate situation in the sentence.

1. The Pronouns *hic, is, ille, iste*, generally precede their Substantives, and if used substantively, are placed before the participle; as, "*Hoc tempore; Eo regnante*."

2. *a.* The Relative generally follows the Antecedent, and should be placed as near to it as possible.

b. The Relative is generally the first word in its own clause. When it connects a sentence with a preceding sentence, and is equivalent to *et ille, et hic, et is*, or to the pronouns without the conjunction, it must be the first word; as, "*Laudo eum qui Deum colit*." "*Factum hoc est. Quod quis negat?*"

3. *a.* *Adverbs* are generally placed immediately before the words which they qualify; as, "*Nihil tam asperum*."

b. *Nom*, qualifying a single word, is placed immediately before it; as, "*Nom* te reprehendo;" but when qualifying a whole proposition, and not a single word, it must stand before the Verb; and before the *finite Verb*, if an Infinitive depends upon it.

4. *Prepositions* are either placed immediately before their case, or separated from it only by a Genitive Case, belonging to the word which they govern. See Note 3. *b, c.* No. 374.

Per, in forms of adjuration, is separated by one or more words from its case; as, "Per ego te fili, quacunque jura liberos jungunt parentibus, precor."

5. *a. Conjunctions* generally introduce the clause to which they belong; as, "*At si dares hanc vim.*"

b. But *que* and *ve* are added to the latter of the two words which they serve to connect; as, "*Albus atreve.*" *Ne* is placed after the first word; as, "*Loquarne?*"

Autem, enim, verò, quoque, quidem, are generally placed after the first word in the clause, and sometimes after the second; as, "*Ille autem, Ego enim.*"

Nam, namque, at, verum, sed, etenim, equidem, ergo, igitur, itaque, tamen, frequently stand the first, sometimes the second.

Ne quidem must always be separated; as, "*Ne legere quidem didicit.*" *Non nisi* are commonly separated.

6. *a.* Words of a similar kind, and those expressing a *contrast*, should be as close together as possible; as, "*Manus manum lavat:*" "*Appetis pecuniam, virtutem abjicis:*" "*Excludor ego, ille recipitur.*"

b. The words which are opposed to each other, should, as much as possible, be of the same part of speech; thus, a Noun should answer to a Noun, &c.

378. DIRECTIONS FOR TRANSLATING.

1st. Closely adhere to the actual order, and whatever words may be omitted, let them be taken as soon as possible.

2nd. Whatever words are taken together, let them stand in the actual order.

3rd. Take together, or in immediate succession, words which are in regimen or concord.

4th. Take together, or in immediate succession, the whole of a cluster of words.

5th. Let the sentences stand in the actual order, and take the dependent sentence in its proper place.

6th. With the preceding limitations, take as few words together as possible.

7th. Be as literal as possible.

NOTE.—The above Rules should never be deviated from, except when to observe them would destroy perspicuity.

ENGLISH PARTICLES.

379. *A* or *an*, used as the Indefinite article, is not expressed in Latin;—signifying *one* is expressed by *unus*;—*some*, by *quidam*, or *quispiam, aliquis*.

380. *All of you*, is expressed as if written *you all*;—*most of us, most of you*; as if "we most," "you most;" thus, "*perique*," most of us; "*omnes fortunis expertes sumus*," all of us are bereft of our fortune. *All of them, all of whom*, are rendered by *illi omnes, qui omnes*.

381. *And* is expressed by *et, ac, atque, que, necnon*;—followed by a negative, is rendered by *nec*;—sometimes is implied in the participle; as, "He took and killed him," *captum interfect*. "To me and you," in Latin "to me with you."

382. *As*, denoting comparison, is rendered by *ut, uti, sicut*;—signifying *because*, is rendered by *quoniam, quòd, quia, &c.*;—signifying *since*, by *quippe qui* with a subjunctive;—*so great as, such as, so many as*, are rendered by *quantus, qualis, quot*;—*so as, by tam—quam*. *As* is also sometimes rendered by a participle; thus, "*As he was sitting*," *illi sedenti*. *As it were, quasi. As far as possible, quoad ejus fieri potest; As far as I can, quoad ejus facere possum.*

383. *At*, signifying *near*, is rendered by *ad* or *apud*;—before names of towns, is a sign of the genitive or ablative—after verbs of anger, is a sign of the dative;—denoting the cause, price, and time, is used with the ablative; as, in tall tempore;—*at supper, at night, inter coenam* or in *coenà, nocte* or *noctu*.

384. *Being*, implying a *cause*, is rendered principally by *quum, cum, quippe qui, ut qui, ut pote, ut pote cum, ut*.

385. *Both*, when followed by *and*, is expressed by *et* or *etiam*;—used distributively, is rendered by *uterque*.

386. *But* is usually rendered by *sed, at, autem*;—after a negative, it is rendered by *nisi, praeter, praeterquam*;—after a negative, and signifying *that not*, it is rendered by *quin*.—*But if, sin, sin autem; but if not, sin minus. Nothing but, or nothing else than*, is expressed by *nihil aliud quàm*.

387. *Before*, when preceding a verb, is rendered by *antequam, priusquam*; when followed by a noun singly, or a noun with an adjective or participle, it is rendered by *ante*. The same observation will apply to *post* and *postquam*. *Before one's eyes, ob oculos*.

388. *Better, mellor; more satisfactory, satius.*

389. *By*, when signifying *near*, is rendered by *ad, apud, juxta, prope, propter*;—signifying “through” or “by way of,” is rendered by *per*; “by letter,” *per litteras*; signifying the cause, agent, &c. it must be rendered according to the Rules given in Syntax.

390. *Can* and *could*, see the observations under the Potential Mood.

391. *I cannot but, facere non possum quin. It cannot be but that, fieri non potest quin.*

392. *Do, did*, when implying an action, are rendered by *facio*; sometimes they are merely the emphatic signs of the present and imperfect tenses;—*do your endeavour that or to*, is expressed by *da operam* or *fac*, followed by a subjunctive. *To do all but*, is expressed by *tantum non*, and sometimes by *ferè, propemodum*. *To do nothing but*, is expressed by *nihil aliud*; as, “He did nothing but read,” *nihil aliud quam legit*.

393. *Each other, one another*, see No. 222.

394. *For*, signifying “instead of,” is rendered by *pro*;—signifying the cause, is rendered by *ob, propter*, or is implied in the ablative. *For* denoting the price, is implied in the ablative; as, *auro*;—before a participle in *ing*, and denoting because that, is rendered by *quod* or *quæ*, with a subjunctive;—at the beginning of a clause, is rendered by *enim, nam, &c.*;—*for*, after fear, is a sign of the dative.

395. *From* is generally expressed by *a, ab, de, e, ex*;—after verbs of taking away, is implied by a dative;—after verbs of liberating; as, *solvero, libero*, is a sign of the ablative;—denoting from a town, is also a sign of the ablative;—after *prevenis, detersa, &c.* quominus;—after *recover, ex*;—*from* the heart, *ex animo*.

396. *Had* is sometimes merely a sign of the pluperfect tense, and sometimes the past tense of the principal verb to have. Thus, if we say, “*Lucretia had concealed a poniard under her clothes*,” it is rendered, “*Lucretia cultrum absconderat*.” But if we say, “*Lucretia had a poniard concealed*,” it must be rendered, “*Cultrum absditum habebat*.” “*Would rather*,” contracted into “*I’d rather*,” by *malle*.

397. *In*, for “*Into*,” governs the accusative; for “*In*,” it is joined to the ablative. To this rule there are a few exceptions; thus, “*Dare or collocare in matrimonium*,” to give in marriage; “*In futurum*,” in future; “*Apud me*,” in my house, &c. *In* (an author), *apud* (Homerum).

398. *Instead of* is expressed, 1. Before a noun by *pro* with an ablative, or *loco* or *vice* with a genitive;—2. Denoting a change of

place, *instead of* is rendered by *in locum*;—

3. Denoting something that ought to be done, it is expressed by *cum* with the subjunctive of *debeo*; as, “*Ludit cum studere deberet*,” instead of studying, he plays;—

4. Denoting something that might be done, *instead of* is rendered by *cum* with the subjunctive of *possum*; as, “*Studet cum ludere posset*,” he studies instead of playing;—

5. When the preceding verb is in past time, *debeo* and *possum* must be in the pluperfect; as, “*Ludēbat cum studere debuisset*,” he played instead of studying;—

6. If it denotes a thing that ought not to be done, *instead of* is turned into “*and not*” or “*rather than*”; as, “*You ought to study instead of playing*,” *studere deberes, non ludere*; or, *Studere deberes potius quàm ludere*.

399. *May* and *might*, see the Potential Mood.

400. *Must* is rendered by *necesse est*, or by the verbal in *deus*; as, “*I must read*,” “*I have to read*,” *Necesse est mihi legere, or Mihi legendum est*.

401. *No*, preceding an adjective, is sometimes rendered by *non*;—implying none, is rendered by *nullus*. *No one, nemo*; *no time, nihil temporis*.

402. *Not* is usually rendered by *non, haud, minus, minime, nihil*;—in interrogations, *annon, nonne*;—not at all, *non omnino*;—after verbs of fearing, *not* is rendered by *ut*. For other observations, see Imperative Mood (No. 322.).

403. *Of*, see under the Genitive (223. 2.).

404. *On* or *Upon*, denoting rest, is rendered by *in* or *super*;—motion against, by *in*;—after verbs signifying to depend, *on* is rendered by *a, ab, de, e, ex*;—after verbs signifying to bestow, spend, employ, waste, &c. by *in*;—before a word denoting time, condition, terms, food, &c. is implied by an ablative case;—*on*, before a participle, is sometimes expressed by the ablative absolute; as, “*Hoc audito*,” this being heard.

405.
On the point of is rendered by *in eo ut*.
It is in agitation - - - id agitur ut
In the case of - - - in with an ablative.

406. *Ought*, as a principal verb, is rendered by *debeo*; see under the Indicative Mood (318.).

407. *Shall* and *should*. *Shall* is generally a sign of futurity in the indicative; *should*, when auxiliary, is a sign of the potential. See the Potential Mood (323.). *Should*, after *that*, is not always a sign of the future of the infinitive, but frequently of the present; and *should have* is often a sign of the perfect of the infinitive; as, “*It is wonderful that you should covet riches*,” *Te divitias appetere mirum est*; “*It is shameful that he should have done so*,” *Eum ita fecisse, turpe est*.

408. *So far from* is rendered sometimes by *adco non, ita non*; sometimes by *tantum abest ut*, followed by *ut* or by *non modo non—sed etiam, non solum non—verum etiam*; as, "You are so far from loving me, that you rather hate me," *Tantum abest ut me ames, ut me potius odëris*.

409. *Than* is rendered by *quàm*, or implied in the ablative case;—after *aliter* and *secus*, *than* is rendered by *ac* or *atque*.

410. *That*, considered as a demonstrative, is rendered by *ille, is, iste*; when a relative it is rendered by *qui*; when a conjunction, by *ut* or *quod*;—*that* often denotes the construction of the accusative and infinitive (326, &c.).

411. *The* can be rendered into Latin only when some particular emphasis or contempt is intended; as, "Alexander the Great," *Alexander ille Magnus*; "Nero the Tyrant," *Nero iste Tyrannus*. *The* is sometimes prefixed to words denoting the measure of excess; as, "The wiser the better," *Quo sapientior, eo melior*.

412. *To* is the usual sign of the infinitive;—after verbs of motion it is rendered by the supine in *um*;—*to* is also the common sign of the dative. See Dative (259 b.).

413. *Too* is sometimes rendered by *nimis, nimis, plus, aequo*, &c. signifying *also*, by *etiam atque*;—is often implied in a comparative adjective; as, "Too long," *longior*; "The burden is too great for your strength," *onus viribus tuis est majus*.

414. *Very* is frequently expressed by *valde, admodum*;—is sometimes implied in a superlative; as, "Very long," *longissimus*;—or in an adjective compounded with *per*; as, "Very great," *permagnus*.

415. Which (of many) is expressed by *quis*.
Whether or which (of two) - *uter*.
One (of many) - *unus*.
One (of two) - *alter*.
None (of many) - *nullus*.
Neither (of two) - *neuter*.
Any (of many) - *quislibet* or *quovis*.
Either (of two) - *quisque* or *utervis*.
Every one (of many) - *quisque*.
Each (of two) - *uterque*.
Whichever (of many) - *quisque* or *quicunque*.
Whichever (of two) - *uterque*.

416. *Will* and *Would*. *Will*, when it simply denotes futurity, is generally rendered by the future indicative; *Would*, in like manner, by the potential imperfect. When these verbs denote determination or inclination they are generally rendered by *volo*. See the Potential Mood (323, 2, 3.).

417. *With*, denoting instrument, cause, or manner, is merely a sign of the ablative; it is only expressed by *cum* when *concomitancy* is meant; as, "He invited him with his friends," *Eum cum amicis invitavit*. *With*, expressing the manner in which an action is performed, is generally turned into an adverb; as, "To speak with dignity," *Dicere ornate*;—the substantive may be preserved if accompanied with an adjective; as, "Magno ornato dicere." *With*, after verbs expressing anger, comparison, or meeting, is generally a sign of the dative.

418. *Without*, before a noun after a negation, may be expressed—1. By *nisi, nisi cum*; as, "They fight not without pay," *non pugnant nisi stipendiati*;—or 2. It may be expressed by a verb, participle, or adverb; as, "Grass grows without bidding," *Injussa virescunt gramina*; when the latter clause is emphatical, the verb is preferable to the participle. 3. *Without*, before a verb, may be expressed by the relative *qui, quae, quod, by quin*, or by an ablative absolute; as, "He does nothing without consulting you," *nihil agit quin te consulat, or te inconsulto*. 4. *Without*, used as an adjective, is expressed by *expers*. 5. *Without* is sometimes equivalent to *nor, so as not*; as, "Many praise poems without understanding them;" that is, *nor* understand them (*neque intelligunt*). "You cannot be ruined without ruining others;" that is, *so as not* to ruin others (*ut non with subjunctive*.)

419. Many English Particles, unless they are emphatic, are frequently not expressed in Latin; thus, *when, as, if, although*, &c., frequently denote a noun in apposition; *when, since, although*, &c. are often the signs of the ablative absolute.

GRAMMATICAL FIGURES, OR FIGURES OF SPEECH.

420. THE FIGURES OF SPEECH are *deviations* either from the usual *form* or spelling of words, from their Syntactical *construction*, or from their proper and literal *meaning*.

They are divided into 1st, the figures of *Orthography*; 2nd, of *Syntax*; and 3rd, of *Rhetoric*.

1. *Figures of Orthography.*

421. The figures of *Orthography* are *deviations* from the usual *form*. or *spelling* of words, and consist of *Elision*, *Prosthesis*, *Epenthesis*, *Paragôgê*, *Metathesis*, *Antithesis*, and *Archaism*.

422. *a. Elision* signifies cutting off a *letter* or *syllable* either at the beginning, middle, or end of a word. *Elision* thus consists of three kinds, usually denominated *Aphæresis*, *Syncôpê*, and *Apocôpê*.

b. Aphaerêsis takes away a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, 'st for *est*, *ponëre* for *deponëre*. *c. Syncôpe* rejects a letter or syllable from the middle of a word; as, *periclum* for *periculum*, *dixti* for *dixisti*, *deum* for *deorum*. *d. Apocôpe* cuts off a letter or syllable from the end; as, *tun'* for *tune*, *satin'* for *satisne*.

423. 1. *Prosthesis* adds a letter or syllable to the beginning of a word; as, *gnatus* for *natus*, *Mamercus* for *Marcus*. 2. *Epenthesis* inserts a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *relliquiae* for *reliquiae*, *induperator* for *imperator*. 3. *Paragôgê* adds to the end; as, *mittier* for *mitti*. All these are merely older forms of spelling.

424. *Metathesis* transposes a letter or syllable; as, *accerso* for *arcesso*.

425. *Antithesis* puts one letter for another; as, *faciundum* for *faciendum*.

426. *Archaism*, in Orthography or Etymology, is the use of antiquated words or modes of spelling; as, *olli* for *illi*, *pictai* for *pictae*, *siem* for *sim*. It is chiefly used by Poets.

2. *Figures of Syntax.*

427. The Figures of Syntax consist of four kinds; *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, *Enallage*, and *Hyperbâton*.

428. *ELLIPSIS* is the omission of one or more words necessary to complete the regular or full construction; as, *Ita*

aiunt, supply *homines*. *Paucis te volo*; that is, "*In paucis verbis ad te alloqui ego volo*."

Grammarians have generally included the following under this head; *Asyndeton*, *Zeugma*, *Syllepsis*, and *Prolepsis*.

1. *Asyndeton* is the omission of conjunctions; as, "*Doctrinam virtutem amo*;" *et* being understood.

2. *Zeugma* is when an adjective or a verb, referring to different substantives, agrees with the nearest; as, "*Et genus et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior algâ est*;" "*Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus es*."

3. *Syllepsis* is when an adjective or a verb joined to different substantives, agrees in gender with the masculine rather than with the feminine, &c., or in person with the first rather than with the second, &c.; as, "*Pater et mater mortui sunt*;" "*Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*."

4. *Prolepsis* is when the parts are mentioned after the whole, though differing from it in number or person, without repeating the verb or adjective; as, "*Exercitus hostium duo, alter ab urbe, alter a Galliâ, obstant*," for "*Exercitus hostium duo obstant, alter ab urbe obstat, alter a Galliâ obstat*."

429. **PLEONASM** is the use of superfluous words; as, *Oculis vidi*, for *vidi*; *Sic ore locutus est*, for *sic locutus est*.

Pleonasm is a fault to be avoided, except in expressions of earnestness of affirmation on an interesting subject, in solemn language, or in poetical description. The word *sibi* in the following sentence is pleonastic: "*Factus Scipio est consul bis, primum ante tempus, iterum sibi suo tempore*."

But in many of the instances of it alleged from good authors, the words supposed to be redundant will be found to add something to the meaning or to the force of the sentence.

To the Pleonasm belong the following:—

1. *Paraleon* is the addition of an unnecessary particle to a word; as, "*Egomet adesum, videsis*."

2. *Polyasyndeton* is the repetition of conjunctions; as, "*Unâ Eurâque Notâque ruunt crebergue procellis Africus*."

3. *Hendiadys* expresses one thing as if it were two; as, "*Paleris libamus et auro*," instead of "*Paleris aureis, libamus*."

4. *Periphrasis* uses many words to express one thing; as, "*Tenëri soctus ovium*," that is, *agni*.

430. **ENALLAGE** is the change or substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one gender, number, case, mood, tense, or person for another; as, "*Quae loca Numidia appellâtur*;" for *appellantur*.

It must be observed, that Latin writers did not make use of this figure at pleasure. Some reason could generally, if not always, be assigned for substituting one case, mood, &c. for another.

To *Enallage* belong the following:—

a. *Antimëria* is the use of one part of speech for another; as, "*Populum latè regem*;" for *regnantem*.

b. *Synësis* is when the adjective or the verb agrees with its subject, not in Grammar, but only in sense; as, "*Pars in crucem acti sunt, pars bestis objecti*."

c. *Hypallage* is a mutual change of cases; as, "*Dare classibus austros*," for *classes austris*.

d. *Hellenism* is an imitation of Greek construction; as, "*Abstinëto irarum*;" for *ab iris*. "*Sensit medios delapsus Achivos*;" that is, *se delapsus fuisse*.

e. *Archaism*, in Syntax, is when an old mode of construction is used, as when *utor*, *abutor*, and *fruor* govern an Ac-

cusative; as, "*Absente nobis*;" for *absentibus nobis*, or *me absente*.

431. *HYPERBÆTON* is the violation of the common arrangement of words in a sentence.

It is divided into *Anastrophe*, *Hysteron proteron*, *Synchysis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthesis*.

1. *Anastrophe* is the inversion of words, or placing that word after others which ought to be before them; as, "*His accensa super*," for *super his accensa*; "*Italiam contra*," for *contra Italiam*.

2. *Hysteron proteron* puts that first in a sentence which is last in the sense; as "*Moriāmur, et in media arma ruamus*."

3. *Synchysis* is a confused arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quas in fluctibus aras*;" for "*Quae saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*."

4. *Tmesis* separates a compound word by the insertion of another word; as, "*Per mihi gratum feceris*," for "*Mihi pergratum feceris*."

432. *Parenthesis* is the interruption of a sentence by the insertion of some word or words; as "*Titÿre, dum redëo (brevis est via), pasce capellas*."

433. A *Barbarism* is the use of a word which is foreign to the language; as, *stavi* for *steti*.

434. A *Solecism* is a construction contrary to the Rules of Syntax; as, "*Acuta gladius*," for *acutus gladius*; "*Faveo te*," for *faveo tibi*.

435. An *Idiotism* is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an Anglicism in Latin, thus, "*I am to write*," *Ego sum scribere*, for *Ego sum scripturus*; "*It is I*," *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*.

3. Figures in Rhetoric.

436. The *Figures of Rhetoric* are *deviations* from the proper and literal meaning of a word or phrase.

437. A word is said to be used *literally* when it is employed to describe anything according to the ordinary mode of expression. A word is used *figuratively*, when, though it retains its usual signification, it is applied in a manner different from its common application.

438. The following are the principal Figures of Rhetoric; Comparison or Simile, Metaphor, Allegory, Antithesis, Allusion, Hyperbole, Irony, Paralepsis, Metonymy, Synecdoche or Comprehension, Personification or Prosopopoeia, Apostrophe, Interrogation, Exclamation, Vision, Climax, or Enumeration.

439. A *Simile* or *Formal Comparison* is the *resemblance* between two objects, expressed, in English, by the words *like*

or *as* ; thus, we can say of a horse, "He is as *swift* as the *wind* ;" and of a man, "He is as *firm* as a *rock*."

440. A *Metaphor* expresses a resemblance between two objects without the *sign* of comparison *like* or *as* ; thus, "Thy word is a lamp to my feet, and a light to my path."

441. An *Allegory* is a continuation of Metaphors, and represents one subject by another which is analogous to it. The subject thus represented is not formally mentioned, but will be easily discovered by reflection.

442. An *Antithesis* is the *contrast* or *opposition* between two objects, that they may be made to appear in a stronger light ; as, "*Temperance* leads to *happiness*, *Intemperance* to *misery* ;" "On this side stands *modesty*, on that *impudence*."

443. An *Allusion* is a figure by which some word or phrase in a sentence recalls to our mind either some well-known fact in history, or fable in mythology, or the sentiments of some distinguished writer.

444. An *Hyperbôle* is a figure that represents things as greater or less, better or worse, than they are in reality ; thus, David, speaking of Saul and Jonathan, says, "They were *swifter than eagles*, they were *stronger than lions*." The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

445. *Irony* is a figure by which we express ourselves in a manner contrary to our thoughts, not with a view to deceive, but to add force to our observations. Thus, when we style a thief, "*A mighty honest fellow indeed*," we speak ironically.

446. *Paralepsis* or *Omission* is a figure by which we pretend to omit what we are really desirous of enforcing ; as, "Your idleness, *not to mention your impertinence and dishonesty*, disqualifies you for the situation."

447. A *Métonymy* is a figure by which we put the cause for the effect, or the effect for the cause, the container for the thing contained, the sign for the thing signified.

448. A *Synecdochê* or *Comprehension* is when the *whole* is put for a *part*, or a *part* for the *whole*, a *definite* for an *indefinite* number, &c. ; as, "*Man* returns to the dust," meaning only his *body* ; "He earns his *bread*," meaning *all the necessities of life*."

449. *Personification* or *Prosopopeia* is that figure by which

we attribute life and action to inanimate objects; as, "The *thirsty* ground;" "The *angry* ocean;" "The mountains *saw* Thee, O Lord, and they *trembled*."

450. An *Apostrophe* is a *turning off* from the subject of discourse, to address some other person or thing; as, "It advances, and with menacing aspect slides into the heart of the city. *O my country! ah Ilium! the habitation of the gods!*"

451. An *Interrogation* is used literally to ask a question; but figuratively, it is employed, when the passions are greatly moved, to affirm or deny more strongly. Thus, "The Lord is not a man that he should lie, neither the Son of man that he should repent. *Hath he said it? and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it? and shall he not make it good?*"

452. *Exclamation* is used to express agitated feeling, admiration, wonder, surprise, anger, joy, &c.; thus, "Oh the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out!"

453. *Vision* or *Imagery* is a figure used only in animated and dignified compositions, when, instead of relating something that is past or future, we employ the present tense, and describe it as actually passing before our eyes.

454. *Climax* rises by regular steps from one circumstance to another, till the thoughts cannot be carried to a greater elevation; thus, "There is no enjoyment of property without government; no government, without a magistrate; no magistrate without obedience; and no obedience when every one acts as he pleases."

1. *Climax* is the same as *Amplification* or *Gradation*.

2. In addition to the preceding figures of speech, there are others, such, as *Litotes*, which affirms more strongly by denying the contrary; as, "*He is no fool*," for *he is a man of sense*; the *Parallelism*, or the similar construction of the members of a sentence; *Euphemism*, when any thing sad or offensive is expressed in milder terms; as, "*Vita functus*," for *mortuus*; the *Catachresis*, or abuse of words, when the words are too far wrenched from their proper meaning; as, "*A beautiful voice*," "*A sweet sound*," and a few others of minor importance and of rare occurrence.

3. For a more detailed account of the *Figures of Speech*, the student is referred to the Author's *English Grammar*.

IV. PROSODY.

455. *Prosody* teaches the *Quantity* or proper pronunciation of syllables, and the laws of *verse*.

QUANTITY.

456. The *Quantity* of a syllable signifies the *time* occupied in pronouncing it.

457. *a.* Syllables are either long or short. A *long* syllable occupies twice the time in pronouncing it that a *short* one does. Long syllables are marked thus (-); as, mēnsāē; short syllables thus (v); as, pătēr.

b. Every syllable must be either long or short; those, which are sometimes the one and sometimes the other are called *common*.

458. *a.* A syllable is said to be long or short, 1st, by *nature* or *custom*, or 2nd, by *authority*.

b. When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular *rule*, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, by the usage of the Poets; thus, *lē* in *lēgo* is short, because it is always made so by the Poets.

459. The ancient Poets sometimes made syllables long or short, contrary to the Rules of Prosody; that liberty is called *Poetical License*.

The last syllable but one in a word is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last but two, the *Antepenultima*.

QUANTITY OF THE FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

460. One vowel before another in the same word is short; as, *děŭs*; or before *h* and a vowel; as, *trăho*, *mîhi*; because *h*, in verse, is considered merely as a breathing.

461. *Exceptions.* *a.* The *e* in the Genitive and Dative of the Fifth Declension is long when preceded by *i*; as, *diēi*, *speciēi*; otherwise it is short.

b. *I* is long in those tenses of *ſio* which are not followed by *r*; as, *ſiebam*; but short in those which are followed by *r*; as, *ſierem*.

c. Genitives ending in *ius* have the *i* long in prose, but common in verse; but *alius* is always long, and *aliĕrius* always short.

d. Proper names in *eius* and *aĭus* have the antepenult, and in the Vocative, the penult, long; as, *Pompĕiūs, Cāiūs, Pompĕi, Cāi*.

e. *A*, the penult in the old form of the Genitive of the First Declension, is long; as, *aquāi*: and also the first syllable in *āēr, diūs, ēheu*, is long.

f. The first syllable in *Io, ohe*, and *Diāna*, is common.

462. a. A *Diphthong* is long; as, *āurum, musāē*.

b. But *prūē*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as *prūēire*.

463. *Contracted* syllables are long; thus, *mĭ* for *mihi*, *cōgo* for *cōāgo*, *alius*, for *alius*, *sīs* for *si vis*.

464. a. A vowel is long by *position*, 1st, before two consonants, either in the same word, as *bĕllum*, or in two words, as *sĕmpĕr Deus*; 2nd, before the double consonants *X, Z*, and *J*; as, *āxis*.

In the compounds of *jugum*, the preceding vowel is short before *j*; as, *bĭjugus, quadrĭjugus*.

b. If the *second* consonant is either *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes *common* in verse; as, *pātris* or *pātris*, from *pāter*; *tenĕbrae* or *tenĕbrae*. In prose, however, it is always *short*; as, *pātris, tenĕbrae*. If the vowel is naturally long, it continues so; as, *ātra* from *āter*.

c. When *l* or *r* comes *before* the other consonants, or when it belongs to a different syllable, the vowel is long; as, *āte, āb-luo, ōb-ruo, quamōb-rem*.

d. When the last syllable of a word ends with a short vowel, and the next word begins with two consonants, the preceding short vowel is sometimes, though rarely, made long; as, "Date *telā*, scandite muros."

DERIVATIVE WORDS.

465. *Derivative* and *compound* words retain the quantity of their simples; as, *lēgebam* from *lēgo*, *lēgeram* from *lēgi*, *āmicus* from *āmo*, *invideo* from *vĭdeo*, *perjūrus* from *jūris*.

The quantity of the simple word is not altered by the change of the vowel or diphthong in the compound; as, *concido* from *cādo*, *concido* from *caedo*.

466. *Exceptions.* a. Perfects and Supines of *two* syllables have the first syllable long, though the present is short; as, *vīdi, visum*, from *vīdeo*. But these Perfects, *bībī, dēdi, fīdi* (from *fīndo*), *stēti, stīti, scīdi, tūli* (and when a vowel follows, as *rūi*), have the first syllable *short*; and also these Supines, *cītum* (from *cīeo*), *dātum, ītum, litum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum*, and *stātum*, from *sisto*.

The Perfects and Supines of other verbs of two syllables retain, in the first syllable, the quantity of the Present; as, *vōco, vōcavi, vōcatum*; except *pūsui, pōsitum*, from *pōno*; *gēnuī, gēnitum* from *gigno*; *sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum*, from *solvo* and *volvo*.

Supines of more than two syllables in *ātum, ētum*, and *ūtum*, have the penult long. So also Supines in *ītum*, from Perfects in *īvi* (except *eo* and its compounds); but all other Supines in *ītum* have the penult short; as, *monuī, monitum*. Participles in *rus* have the penult long; as, *amatūrus*.

b. Perfects formed by reduplication have the first two syllables short; as, *tūtūdī* from *tundo*, *cēcīni* from *cano*; except *cecīdi* from *caedo*, and *pepēdi*, and those in which the middle syllable is made long by position; as, *mōmōrdī* from *mordeo*.

1. The following words have a *long* vowel from a *short* one in the root:—

<i>ambitum</i> from <i>ambio, amb, eo.</i>	<i>lāterna</i> from <i>lāteo.</i>	<i>sēmen</i> from <i>sēro.</i>
<i>cōmo</i> — <i>cōma.</i>	<i>lex, lēgis</i> — <i>lēgo.</i>	<i>sēdes</i> — <i>sēdeo.</i>
<i>dēni</i> — <i>dēcem.</i>	<i>lītera</i> — <i>līno, lītum.</i>	<i>sēcus</i> — <i>sēcus.</i>
<i>hūmānus</i> — <i>hōmo.</i>	<i>mācēro</i> — <i>mācer.</i>	<i>stipendium</i> — <i>stips, stīpis.</i>
<i>hūmor</i> — <i>hūmus.</i>	<i>mōbilis</i> — <i>mōveo.</i>	<i>stipicio</i> — <i>auspicor.</i>
<i>hūbernus</i> — <i>hūems.</i>	<i>mōles</i> — <i>mōla.</i>	<i>tēgula</i> — <i>tēgo.</i>
<i>nōnus</i> — <i>nōvem.</i>	<i>pēnuria</i> — <i>pēnus.</i>	<i>vōmer</i> — <i>vōmo.</i>
<i>imbēcillus</i> — <i>bāculus.</i>	<i>persōna</i> — <i>persōno.</i>	<i>vox, vōcis</i> — <i>vōco.</i>
<i>jūgērūm</i> — <i>jūgum.</i>	<i>rex, rēgis</i> } <i>rēgo.</i>	<i>dā</i> (Imper.) is long, but the other tenses are short.
<i>jūnior</i> — <i>jūvenis</i>	<i>rēgula.</i>	

2. The following words have a *short* vowel from a *long* one in the root:—

<i>agnītus</i> } from <i>nōtus.</i>	<i>veridīcus</i> } from <i>dīco.</i>	<i>pācīscor</i> from <i>pax, pācis.</i>
<i>cognītus</i> } — <i>cōma.</i>	<i>dīcax</i> — <i>dīco.</i>	<i>innūba</i> } — <i>nūbo.</i>
<i>nōla</i> } — <i>āreo.</i>	<i>dīcertus</i> — <i>dīssero.</i>	<i>prōnūba</i> } — <i>pūgnus.</i>
<i>āreña</i> } — <i>āreo.</i>	<i>dux, dūcis</i> — <i>dūco.</i>	<i>pūgil</i> — <i>pūgnus.</i>
<i>ārista</i> } — <i>āreo.</i>	<i>fārina</i> — <i>fār.</i>	<i>quāsilus</i> — <i>quālus.</i>
<i>āruno</i> } — <i>āreo.</i>	<i>fīdes</i> } — <i>fīdo.</i>	<i>sāgax</i> — <i>sāgio.</i>
<i>āruspez</i> — <i>āra.</i>	<i>perfidus</i> } — <i>fīdo.</i>	<i>semisōpitus</i> — <i>sōpitus.</i>
<i>būbulus</i> — <i>būbus.</i>	<i>figūra</i> — <i>fīngo.</i>	<i>sigillum</i> — <i>signum.</i>
<i>dējēro</i> } — <i>jāro.</i>	<i>frāgilis</i> — <i>frango.</i>	<i>sōpor</i> — <i>sōpio.</i>
<i>pējēro</i> } — <i>jāro.</i>	<i>lūcerua</i> — <i>lūceo.</i>	<i>stātio</i> } — <i>stātum.</i>
<i>stūio</i> — <i>dītis.</i>	<i>māmilla</i> — <i>māmma.</i>	<i>stātus</i> } — <i>stātum.</i>
<i>causidīcus</i> } — <i>dīco.</i>	<i>mōlctus</i> — <i>mōles.</i>	<i>stābilis</i> } — <i>stātum.</i>
<i>fatidīcus</i> } — <i>dīco.</i>	<i>nātare</i> — <i>no, nātum.</i>	<i>stābulum</i> } — <i>vādo.</i>
<i>makdīcus</i> } — <i>dīco.</i>	<i>ōdium</i> — <i>ōdi.</i>	<i>vādum</i> — <i>vādo.</i>

c. Prepositions of one syllable are *long* in composition when they end with a vowel, and *short* when they end with a consonant; as, *dēduco, āboleo*.

1. But Prepositions terminating in a vowel are *short*, when prefixed to words beginning with a vowel; as, *dēosculor*: and those which end in a consonant are *long*, when placed before another consonant; as, *ādmitto*.

2. *Pro*, in Greek words, is short; as, *prōpheta*. In Latin words it is generally long; as, *prōdo*: but sometimes short; as, *prōcella, prōfugio*. *Se* and *di* (for *dis*) are long in compound words, except in *dirimo* and *disertus*. *Re*, in compound words, is generally short; as, *rēmīto*, except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, and in several compound words in which the following consonant is supposed to have been formerly doubled; as in *rēlligio, rēlliquiae*. *I* and *o*, at the end of the first component part of a word, are generally short; as, *omnipotens, hōdie*. *O* is short in *ōmitto, ōperior*.

QUANTITY OF THE LAST SYLLABLE.

A Vowel at the end of a Word.

467. *A, I, O, U*, final, are long ; as, *amā, regnī, rogō, vultū*.

468. *Exceptions. a.* All cases in *a*, except the ablative, are short ; also *ejā, itā, postea, putā, quā*, put adverbially. Greek vocatives in *a* from nominatives in *as*, as, *Æneā*, are long ; but the vocative of nominatives in *tes*, is short ; as, *Orestā*.

Sometimes the words *contra* and *ultra*, and numerals in *ginta*, have the final vowel short ; as, *trigintā* ; but generally the final vowel is long in these words.

Exceptions. b. Nisi, quasi, neuters in *i*, as *gummī*, and Greek datives and vocatives in *i* or *si*, are short ; as, *Daphnidī, Daphnī, heroisī*.

Mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi, are common.

Sicutī, necubī, and *sicubī*, are short ; *utī* has *i* long, but *utique* and *utimur* have *i* short ; *cutī*, when used as a dissyllable, is short.

Exceptions. c. Ambō, duō, imō, modō (and its compounds), *sciō, citō, egō, illicō, profectō, and cedō* (tell me), are short. Nominatives in *o*, as *leo*, are common ; also *adeō, denuō, ergō*, (used for *igitur*), *idcirco, ideō, porrō, postrēmō, retrō, serō, verō*, and *quandō*.

The Gerund in *do* is sometimes, though rarely, found short.

469. *E* final is short.

470. *Exceptions. a.* The Ablative of the Fifth Declension, and its compounds, as *rē, diē, quarē, pridīe*, are long ; the vocative and ablative of Greek nouns of the First Declension in *e*, as *Anchisē* ; plural Greek nouns wanting the singular, as *Tempē* ; and the second person singular of the imperative of the Second Conjugation, as *monē*, are also long ; but *cavē, valē, vidē, and respondē*, are sometimes found short.

b. Monosyllables are long ; as *mē, tē* ; except the enclitics *quē, nē, vē*, and *ptē, cē, tē*, joined to words ; as *suaptē, hujuscē, tutē*. Adverbs derived from adjectives of three terminations, are long ; as, *doctē*, except *benē, malē, infernē*, and *supernē*, which are short. *Ferē, fermē, and ohē*, are long.

471. *Y*, which occurs only in Greek words, is short.

A Consonant at the end of a Word.

472. *a.* Monosyllabic nouns ending with a consonant are long ; as, *nīl, sāl, sōl, fār, fūr, jūs, vēr* ; but *cōr, fēl, mēl, vir, ōs* (*ossis*), *vās* (*vādis*), are short.

b. Monosyllables ending in a consonant, and not being nouns, are *short*; as, *ūt, ān, in, ād, quid, is, quis*; but *ēn, nōn, quīn, sin, cūr, and pār*, with its compounds, are long. See also the rules respecting *c* and *is*.

473. *a.* In words of *more* than one syllable, *B, D, L, N, R, T*, final, are *short*.

It must be remembered that in these cases the next word must begin with a vowel.

b. But nouns in *ēr* making *ēris* in the Genitive, as *cratēr, cratēris*; also *aēr, aethēr*, and Hebrew words, as, *Daniēl*, are long. Also Greek nouns in *ān, ēn, in*, increasing long in the Genitive, as, *Tiūān, hymēn, delphīn*, are long. The verb *it*, in the Perfect (by syncope for *ivit* or *iit*), is long.

M, at the end of a word, is cut off before a vowel: the earlier writers often preserved it, and made the syllable short. It is still short in compound words, as *circūmagō*.

474. *a.* *C* final is long.

b. But *nēc* and *donēc* are short; the Pronoun *hic, hoc*, in the nominative and accusative, is common, but generally short; *hic* (here) is long, *fac* is generally short.

475. *AS, ES, OS*, final, are long.

476. *Exceptions. a.* But *Anās, anātis, and vās, vādīs*; the Greek nominatives which make *ādis* or *ādos* in the genitive, as *Iliās, Pallās*; and Greek accusatives plural of the Third Declension in *as*, as *heroās*, are short.

b. Nouns in *es*, of the Third Declension, increasing short, as, *mīlēs, militis* (except *cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs, and pēs*, with its compounds, which follow the general rule), are short; also *es* from *sum*, with its compounds, the preposition *penēs*, and the nominatives plural of Greek words which increase in the genitive, have *ēs* short; as, *Arcadēs*.

Es from *edo* is long.

c. *Os* is short in *compōs, impōs, ōs* (ossis), *exōs*, and in Greek words and cases in *ōs*; as, *Delōs, Tethyōs*.

477. *IS, US*, final, are short.

478. *Exceptions. a.* Plural cases in *īs*, as *musīs*, are long; also nouns in *is* increasing long, as *glīs, Salamīs, Simoīs*;—*is* is long in the second person singular of verbs, when the second person plural is *itis*; as, *audīs*, with *forīs, gratīs, vīs*. *Ris*, in the future perfect, is common.

b. *Us* is long in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the Fourth Declension, as *gradūs*; and in nouns of the Third Declension which have

u in declining; as, *virtūs, virtūtis*. *Us* for *ou*, in Greek words, is long; as, *Panthūs*.

479. *Ys*, at the end of a word, is short, as *Capŷs*, except in words which have *yn* in the accusative singular, as *Trachŷs*.

480. Greek words used in Latin follow their original quantity; thus, all syllables which have, in Greek, an *ε* (epsilon) or an *ο* (omicron), are short; while those which have an *η* (ēta), an *ω* (omēga), or a diphthong, are long.

481. The last syllable of every line is common.

SCANNING.

482. *Scanning* is the division of a verse into its several feet, in order to ascertain whether their quantity and place are agreeable to the rules of metre.

483. A Verse is a certain number of syllables so disposed as to form one line of poetry.

A Verse, when it contains the exact number of syllables, is called *Acatalectic*; when it wants one syllable at the end to complete the measure, it is called *Catalectic*; and when it wants two syllables, it is called *Brachycatalectic*; when it has a redundant syllable or foot, it is called *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermeter*; when it wants one syllable at the beginning, it is called *Accephalus*.

484. *a.* A foot is a portion of a verse consisting of two or more syllables.

b. The principal feet are the following:—

1. A *Spondee*, consisting of two long syllables; as, *ōmnēs*.
2. An *Iambus*, a short and a long syllable; as, *āmāns*.
3. A *Trochee*, a long and a short syllable; as, *sērvūs*.
4. A *Pyrrhic*, two short syllables; as, *dēŷs*.
5. A *Dactyl*, one long and two short syllables; as, *frigīdā*.
6. An *Anapaest*, two short and one long syllable; as, *piētās*.
7. A *Tribrach*, three short syllables; as, *dōmīnūs*.
8. A *Choriambus*, a long, two short, and a long syllable; as, *pōntificēs*.

485. *Caesūra* is the division of a foot between different words, so that the last syllable of a word becomes the first syllable of a foot; as the syllable *tæ* in the following line:—

Pinguis et ingra|*tæ* prēmē|retur caseus urbi.

1. The *Caesūra* is generally a long syllable; but, when it falls on a syllable naturally short, it sometimes renders it long; as *or* in

Omnia | vincit am|ōr, et | nos ce|damus a|mori.

2. If there is only one *caesura*, it is commonly in the third foot; as,

Magnus ab | inte|gro sae|clorum | nascitur | ordo.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

486. Figures in Scanning are the various changes made on words to adapt them to the verse. They are *Elision*,* *Synaeresis*, *Diaeresis*, *Systöle*, and *Diastöle*.

487. By *Elision*, a vowel or diphthong, or an *m* with a vowel before it, is cut off at the end of a word, if the following word begins with a vowel or an *h*; as,

Cöntlicū|ērē.ōm|nēs in|tēnti|que ōrā tē|nēbānt.

Monstrum hōr|rendum in|fōrme in|gēns cūi | lūmēn ād|ēptūm.

Scanned as if written *monstr' her|rend' in|form' in|gens cui, | &c.*

1. Sometimes the *Elision* takes place at the end of a verse, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Sternitur | infe|lix ali|eno | vulnere, |coelum|que
Adspicit —.

2. A verse is rendered inharmonious when there are several *Elisions*; as,
Primum nam inquiram, quid sit furere hoc; si erit in te.

3. *Ah*, *O*, *hei*, *heu*, *pro*, *si*, *vae*, *vah*, and also most other monosyllables, are seldom elided; as,

O et | de Latī|ā, O | et de | gente Sa|binā.|

Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, and are then generally made short: as,

Victor ap|ud rapi|dum Simō|ēnta sub | Illō | alto.

Sometimes also the *m* is not elided; as,

Et tan|tum vene|rata vi|rām, hūnc | sedula | curet.

488. *Synaeresis* or *Crisis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *Di* for *Dii*; *alveo*, *deinde*, pronounced as if written *alvo*, *dinde*. So also in

Nec tantum Rhodope miratur et Ismarus Orphea.

1. *Synaeresis* is frequently employed in the following words: *antehac*, *anteit*, *alveo*, *eodem*, *eodem*, *cui*, *huic*, *deest*, *acerat*, *deerit*, *dehinc*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *dii*, *diis*, *ii*, &c.

2. *I* and *u* are sometimes changed into *j* and *v*, and joined in pronunciation with the following vowel; as, *abjete* for *abiete*, *tenuis* for *tenuis*.

489. *Diaeresis* is the division of one syllable into two; either by resolving a diphthong into its component parts, or changing *v* into *u*; as, *aulāi* for *aulae*, *solvūt* for *solvit*.

490. *Systöle* shortens a long syllable to suit the exigency of the verse; as,

Obstupu|i stētē|runtque comae; et vox faucibus haesit.

491. *Diastöle* lengthens a short syllable; as,

Atque hic | Prāmī|des: Nihil O tibi amice relictum.

* *Elision* is frequently divided into *Synäloepha* and *Echliipsis*

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

492. *a.* An *Hexameter* or *Heroic* verse consists of six feet, of which the four first may be either Dactyls or Spondees, but the fifth *must* be a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee ; as,

Tītŭrē | tū pātū|lāe rēcū|bāns sūb | tēgmīnē | fāgī.
Infān|dūm rē|gīnā jū|bēs rēnō|vārē dō|lōrēm.

b. A Spondee sometimes, but rarely, occurs in the fifth place, and then a Dactyl is generally found in the fourth ; as,

Cārā dē|ūm sōbō|lēs māg|nūm Jōvīs | īncrē|mētūm.

Verses thus constructed are called *Spondaic*.

1. An Hexameter should not end in a word of more than three syllables ; the following line is therefore faulty :

Augescunt aliae gentes, aliae *minuuntur*.

It is also better to avoid terminating an Hexameter in two dissyllables ; as,

Semper ut inducar, blandos offera *mihi vultus*,

except a monosyllable precedes them ; as,

Parcite, oves, nimium procedere ; *non bene ripae*.

Nor should it be terminated by a monosyllable ; as, *proelia rubricā picta aut carbōne, velut si* ; except another monosyllable precedes ; as, *Principibus placuisse viris, non ultima laus est*. The Poets, however, sometimes intentionally terminate the line with a monosyllable.

2. In every verse there must be a caesura ; the following is therefore deficient in this respect :

Romae | maenia | terruit | impiger | Hannibal | armis.

3. A verse in which Dactyls greatly predominate, suggests the idea of rapid motion ; while verses chiefly composed of Spondees give the idea of slowness and labour.

493. *a.* A *Pentameter* consists of five feet, and is divided into two parts ; the former consisting of two feet, either Dactyls or Spondees, and a long syllable ; the latter always containing two Dactyls and a long syllable ; as,

Intēr|dūm lācrŭ|māe || pōndērā | vōcīs hāb|ēnt.

b. Each part is called a *Penthemimer*, as it contains at least five syllables. The long syllable of the first penthemimer should always end a word, and should not be cut off by elision.

1. A *Pentameter* subjoined to an Hexameter forms what is termed the *Elegiac* verse ; as,

Hic locus exiguus, qui sustinet atria Vestae,
Tunc erat intonsi regia magna Numae.

2. A *Pentameter* should not end with a word of three syllables ; the following is therefore incorrect :

Quolibet ut saltem rure frui liceat.

It should not end in a monosyllable ; as,

Aut facere, haec a te dictaque factaque sunt,

unless a monosyllable goes before.

The last two words should not, if possible, end in a short *a* ; as,

Sis felix, et sint candida fata tua.

Also the Pronoun *is*, Adjectives, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, are excluded from the end of a Pentameter. Nouns and Verbs generally form the proper ending of a Pentameter.

3. In both Hexameters and Pentameters, rhyming was, by the Romans, avoided; though we occasionally find verses in which rhyme occurs; as,

Vir precor uxori, frater succurre sorori.

494. *Asclepiadēan* verse consists of four feet, a Spondee, two Choriambuses, and an Iambus or Pyrrhic; as,

Mācē|nās ātāvis.| ēdītē rē|gībūs.|

495. *Glyconian* verse consists of three feet, a Spondee and two Dactyls; as,

Rēddās | Incōlū|mēm prēcōr.

496. *Sapphic* and *Adonian*. *Sapphic* verse consists of five feet, a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees; as,

Intē|gēr vī|tāē scēlē|rīsquē | pūrūs.

Adonian verse consists of a Dactyl and a Spondee; as,

Tērrūt | ūrbēm.

The Sapphic and Adonian are always connected in stanzas, consisting of three lines of the former and one of the latter.

497. *Pherecratian* verse consists of three feet, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and a Spondee; as,

Nigrīs | āequōrā | vēnfīs.

498. *Phaleucian* verse consists of five feet, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees; as,

Sūmmūm | nēc mētū|ās dī|ēm nēc|ōptēs.

499. *a.* The *Alcaic* stanza consists of four lines, of which the two first are *Major Dactylic Alcaic*; the third, *Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter*; and the fourth, *Minor Dactylic Alcaic*.

b. The *Major Dactylic Alcaic* consists of a Spondee (or an Iambus), an Iambus, a Caesura, and two Dactyls; as,

*Vidēs, | ūt āl|tā || stēt nivē | cāndīdūm
Sōrāc|tē, nēc | jān || sūstīnē|ānt ōnūs.*

c. The *Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter* has a Spondee in the first and third places, an Iambus in the second and fourth, and a Caesura at the end of the line; as,

Silvāē | lābō|rāntēs, | gēlū|quē.

d. The *Minor Dactylic Alcaic* consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees; as,

Flūmīnā | cōnstītē|rīnt ā|cūtō.

500. *Iambic* verse is of two kinds, one containing four feet, and the other six. *Iambics* of four feet are called *Iambic*

Dimēter; of six, *Iambic Trimēter*; and were so called because among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in Iambic verse. At first this kind of verse admitted Iambics only; thus,

Dimeter—*Inār|sīt āēs|tūō|sītūs*:

Trimeter—*Sūs | ēt ip|sā Rō|mā vī|ribūs |rūt*.

Afterwards, in the first, third, and fifth places, besides an Iambus, they admitted a Spondee, an Anapaest, and a Tribrach. A Tribrach is also found in the second and fourth places. The last is always an Iambus.

Comic writers often use a verse of eight feet, called *Tetrameter* or *Octōnārius*. They admit different feet indiscriminately in every place except the last. Such also are the metres of Phaedrus.

501. *Scanzotics* are the same as Iambics, except that they have a Spondee in the last, and an Iambus in the fifth place.

502. *Trochaics* are generally *Catalectic Tetrameters*; that is, eight feet wanting a syllable. They regularly admit only a Trochee and a Tribrach in the first, third, fifth, and seventh places. In the even places they receive also a Spondee, a Dactyl, and an Anapaest.

The comic writers use the same mixture in Trochaics as in Iambics; but they never admit an Iambus in the former, or a Trochee in the latter.

503. The *Anacreontic* consists of three Iambuses and a long syllable. The first foot may be either a Spondee, an Anapaest, or a Tribrach; as,

Pällör | |fūgāt | rūbō|rem.

This metre may be called *Iambic Dimeter Catalectic*.

504. The *Archilochian Heptameter* consists of seven feet, of which the first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, and the last three Trochees; as,

Sōlvitūr | ācris hl|ēms grā|tā vīcē | vēris|ēt Fā|vōnī.

505. *Iambic Trimeter Catalectic* consists of five feet and a Caesura, and admits of the same varieties as Iambic Trimeter, having, however, an Iambus in the fifth place, from the deficiency of a syllable in the sixth; as,

Trāhūt|quē sic|cās mā|chlnāē | cārī|nas.

506. *Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic* consists of three Trochees with a Caesura; as,

Nōn ē|būr nē|que aurē|ūm.

507. The *Choriambic Dimeter* is sometimes combined with the *Greater Sapphic*. The *Choriambic Dimeter* consists of one Choriambic, an Iambus, and a Caesura; and the *Greater Sapphic* of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and a Caesura, with another Dactyl and two Trochees; as,

Lūdīx dīc | pēr ōm|nēs

Tē dē|ōs ō|rō Sībā|rīm | cūr prōpē|rās ā|māndō.

508. The *Choriambic Pentameter* consists of a Spondee, three Choriambics, and an Iambic; as,

Tū nē | quāssērīs, | scirē nēfās, | quēm mīhī, quēm |tībī.

509. *Dactylic Tetrameter Acatalectic* consists of the last four feet of an Hexameter; as,

AutEphē|sūm bīmā|rīsvē Cō|rīnthī.

This verse is combined in alternate lines with the Hexameter, in Horace, book first, odes 7. and 28.

510. The *Ionica minore* employed in Horace, b. 3. od. 12., contains eight feet, having a Pyrrhic and a Spondee alternately; as,

Misē|rārūm est | nēquē ā|mōrī | dārē | ludūm | nēquē | dūlci.

511. The *Minor Archilochian* contains two Dactyls and a Caesura; as,

Arbōrī|būsquē cō|māē.

512. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

Days.	March. May. July. October.	January. August. December.	April. June. September. November.	February. — — —
1	CALENDÆ	CALENDÆ	CALENDÆ	CALENDÆ
2	6tus nonas	4tus nonas	4tus nonas	4
3	5tus nonas	3tus nonas	3tus nonas	3
4	4tus nonas	pridie nonas	pridie nonas	prid. non.
5	3tus nonas	NONÆ	NONÆ	NONÆ
6	pridie nonas	8vus idus	8vus idus	8
7	NONÆ	7timus idus	7timus idus	7
8	8vus idus	6tus idus	6tus idus	6
9	7timus idus	5tus idus	5tus idus	5
10	6tus idus	4tus idus	4tus idus	4
11	5tus idus	3tus idus	3tus idus	3
12	4tus idus	pridie idus	pridie idus	prid. id.
13	3tus idus	IDUS	IDUS	IDUS
14	pridie idus	19nus calendas	18vus calendas	16
15	IDUS	18vus calendas	17timus calendas	15
16	17timus calendas	17timus calendas	16tus calendas	14
17	16tus calendas	16tus calendas	15tus calendas	13
18	15tus calendas	15tus calendas	14tus calendas	12
19	14tus calendas	14tus calendas	13tus calendas	11
20	13tus calendas	13tus calendas	12mus calendas	10
21	12mus calendas	12mus calendas	11mus calendas	9
22	11mus calendas	11mus calendas	10mus calendas	8
23	10mus calendas	10mus calendas	9nus calendas	7
24	9nus calendas	9nus calendas	8vus calendas	6
25	8vus calendas	8vus calendas	7timus calendas	5
26	7timus calendas	7timus calendas	6tus calendas	4
27	6tus calendas	6tus calendas	5tus calendas	3
28	5tus calendas	5tus calendas	4tus calendas	prid. cal.
29	4tus calendas	4tus calendas	3tus calendas	Martii.
30	3tus calendas	3tus calendas	pridie calendas	
31	pridie calendas	pridie calendas		

The first column of the CALENDAR represents the order of the days according to our mode of computation; and opposite to each day is the date by the Roman reckoning.

513. The Romans, as will be seen from the table divided their months into three parts, called *Kalends* or *Calends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The *Calends* are the 1st day of every month; the *Nones* the 5th day; and the *Ides* (being eight days after), are on the 13th. But in March, May, July, and October, the *Nones* fell on the 7th, and the *Ides* on the 15th.

514. In dating a letter, &c. on the precise day either of the *Calends*, *Ides*, or *Nones*, the Romans said *Calendis Januariis*, or *Januarii*; *Idibus Martiis*, *Nonis Maiis*, according to the particular day. The day before was *pridie Calendas*, *Idus*, *Nonas*, or *Calendarum*; the day but one before, *tertio* (*die ante*) *Calendas* or *Calendarum*, *Nonas* or *Nonarum*, *Idus* or *Iduum*, and so through the rest of the numbers. The Romans, including the day on which they dated, called the second day before the *Calends* *tertio*, and so on.

515. They always counted forwards to the *Calends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, never backwards from them. After the first day of

the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the Nones; after the Nones, so many days before the Ides; after the Ides, so many before the Calends of the next month. The 2nd of January would, therefore, be *quarto Nonas*, the 3rd *tertio*, the 4th *pridiè*, the 5th *Nonis*. The 6th would be *octavo Idus*, and so on to the 13th, on which the Ides fell. The 14th would be *undevigesimo Calendas Februarias*, and so on to the end of the month.

516. In giving a date of so many days before the Calends, Nones, or Ides, the Romans not only said *tertio*, *pridiè*, *posttridiè*, *Calendas* or *Calendarum*, but *ante diem tertium Calendas*, *Nonas*, *Idus*, which in Cicero and Livy is by much the more common; usually written a. d. iii. Cal.

1. To turn Roman into English time, the following Rule will, in the absence of the preceding table, be useful. Subtract the Roman numeral from ours, adding 1 in Nones and Ides, and 2 in Calends, and the difference is our date; as, 13^o Cal. Feb. is thus known; 13 taken from 31 (the number of days in January), leaves 18, add 2=20, that is, the 20th day of January. Again, 4^o Id. Jan. thus; 4 from 13 (the day on which the Ides of the month fall) leaves 9, add 1=10, that is, the 10th of January.

Note, the 2 is added in the account of Calends, because the 1st day of the following month and the current day are included.

2. In the Roman leap-year (happening every 4th year), both the 24th and 25th of February were called *sextis Calendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bis-sextilis*.

PARSING TABLE.

A Substantive.

— is a Substantive, Why? — of the — declension, from Nom. —, gender, Why? — number, Why? — person, Why? — case, Why? Repeat the Rule. (Decline it. *) Repeat the Rule for the Gender and Genitive Plural.

An Adjective.

— is an Adjective of — terminations, of the — degree, from —, — gender, — number, — case, to agree with its substantive —. Repeat the Rule. (Mention the degrees of comparison. Quote the Rule for the comparison of Adjectives. Decline the Adjective and Noun together.)

A Relative.

— is a Relative Pronoun, from —, of —, gender, number, and person, to agree with its Antecedent —. Repeat the Rule. — in — case, Why? —.

A Verb.

— is an Active, Passive, or Neuter Verb — of the — conjugation, from —, the principal parts, — — mood, Why? — tense — number — person, to agree with its nominative case —. Repeat the Rule. (Conjugate the verb, or mention some of its tenses.)

* The words included in *parentheses* may be omitted as the pupil advances.

WORKS

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

1. ELEMENTARY.

			<i>Editions.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
1. The Child's First English Grammar.	18mo.	-	"	1	0
2. The Child's First Geography.	18mo.	- -	"	0	9

This will form a useful series for Preparatory Schools.

2. THE JUNIOR SERIES.

3. Abridgment of English Grammar.	18mo.	-	5th	-	1 6
4. Practical English Composition.	18mo.	Part 1st.	"	-	1 6
5. Progressive Geography.	18mo.	- - -	2nd	-	2 0

3. MIDDLE SERIES.

6. English Grammar, Style, &c.	12mo.	- -	4th	-	3 6
7. English Exercises.	12mo.	- - -	3rd	-	2 0
8. English Composition, Part 2nd, <i>in preparation.</i>					
9. Arithmetical Companion.	18mo.	- - -	2nd	-	1 6

4. LATIN.

10. Latin Grammar.	12mo.	- - -	3rd	-	3 0
11. First Latin Exercises, <i>in active preparation.</i>		-	2nd		

5. FOR TEACHERS ONLY.

12. Key to English Exercises.	12mo.	- - -	"	-	3 6
13. Key to Arithmetical Companion.	18mo.	- -	"	-	1 6

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS,

&c.

I.

A TREATISE ON ENGLISH GRAMMAR, STYLE, RHETORIC, and POETRY. New Edition, considerably improved.
12mo. 3s. 6d.

"This author appears, to us, a powerful rival of Mr. Lindley Murray."—*Gentleman's Magazine*.

"Mr. Hiley's Grammar is a good one, and contains abundant proofs of critical acumen."—*The Sun*.

"We cheerfully acknowledge the great merits of this Grammar, and its superiority to Murray's."—*Athenæum*.

"This appears to be a very clear and well-written work, and evinces considerable knowledge, on the part of the author, of the Philosophy of Grammar and Rhetoric."—*Evangelical Magazine*.

"We may remark, in concluding the present notice of Mr. Hiley's treatises, that they are well-deserving the attention of teachers, both for the many important features introduced, and for the practical arrangement of the subjects."—*Scholastic Journal*.

"We spoke favourably of a former edition of Mr. Hiley's volume. It is one of the best summaries that we have seen on the subject to which it refers. The elements of sound and judicious criticism are included in Mr. Hiley's plan."—*Methodists' Magazine*.

"Appended to the great mass of common matter, we find many judicious observations that are well deserving the reader's attention; and throughout the whole we perceive much acuteness of investigation, and much maturity of reflection in bringing it into actual service."—*Imperial Magazine*.

"This is a good English Grammar, concise and yet lucid. The author, with much excellent and additional matter, has followed, in a great measure, the plan of Mr. Murray. The didactic parts of the work contain some cogent remarks, and will be read with profit."—*Metropolitan Magazine*.

"We are glad to see this volume in a second edition; for, even without its new additions and improvements, it is a very efficient and valuable English Grammar; nor perplexing by extraneous matters, and, where the higher branches require intelligence for their exposition, showing great judgment."—*Literary Gazette*.

"We cannot but consider this Grammar much superior to Murray's in arrangement, clearness of elucidation, style, and general adaptation for the understanding of youth. We learned English Grammar from Murray, but never liked his style and language, and much prefer the work before us, which we strongly recommend to parents, schoolmasters, and others interested in the instruction of youth."—*Church Magazine*.

"Upon glancing at the title page of the present book, we were disposed to look upon it as an impertinent intrusion upon our patience, pestered as we have been, from time to time, with Grammars of the English language, each vying with the other in amazing inutility, or mischievous incompetency. Upon farther examination, however, we found that Mr. Hiley was qualified for the task he had undertaken. We are particularly pleased with our author's admirable illustration of Rule 12th,—*'The Subjunctive Mood,'*—which he has handled in a masterly manner."—*Monthly Magazine*.

"We entirely agree with this author, that 'Mr. Murray's Grammar is, in many respects, excellent, yet is far from being incapable of improvement, either as it respects the matter or the manner of elucidation.' Acting on this persuasion, Mr. Hiley has produced a Grammar considerably smaller in extent than that of his distinguished predecessor, but containing all that is needful to be known in order to an acquaintance with the English language, as to its grammatical structure. A great deal of what is superfluous in Mr. Murray is here left out; some of his mistakes are corrected, his deficiencies supplied, and many of his definitions made more simple and intelligible. We are especially pleased with the chapter on the right use of prepositions."—*Wesleyan Methodist Magazine*.

"It was on no slight grounds that the success of Mr. Hiley, as a grammarian, was first predicted in this paper. A careful examination of his book satisfied the reviewer that it was not the crude performance of a self-opinionated innovator, but the well considered work of a gentleman of talents and attainments—of a critic at once tasteful and judicious; and he had sufficient confidence in the discrimination of the public, to feel assured that the labours of such a man would not remain unpatronised. The event has verified the prediction. Mr. Hiley's Grammar has already reached a second edition, which, as the title-page truly informs us, is considerably enlarged and improved. The

improvement is such, that a higher degree of it, either in other treatises on grammar or in future editions of the present, can scarcely be expected. We know of no peculiarity in the English language, whether of idiom or construction, which is here unnoticed; of no dubious point which is not made obvious; and of no difficulty which is not cleared up."—*Leeds Mercury*.

"In a well-written preface, Mr. Hiley explains his notions of grammar, and renders justice to Lindley Murray, who has been so much assailed by novices. He, however, is not blind to Murray's real defects; he points them out, and avoids them. 'Induced by these considerations (previously stated), and by a desire to render the study of grammar much more useful than hitherto,' he observes, 'the author undertook the task of composing the following work. It has been his plan, throughout the whole, to think for himself, and to take for granted the assertion of no grammarian, how great soever his authority may be. No rule has been inserted which was not sanctioned by the most reputable usage; and in points on which preceding grammarians were at variance, he has endeavoured to deduce such conclusions as legitimate reasoning alone appeared to admit.' This is the road to excellence and utility, and Mr. Hiley has certainly travelled it with success. The latter section of the volume is very interesting. Mr. Hiley's opening and concluding addresses to students, contain observations of the highest value. We say, let this work be read by all teachers of youth."—*Leeds Intelligencer*.

"This is a work of very great value, and adapted for general circulation and utility. Mr. Hiley has presented to the public a Grammar, which we cannot but affirm to occupy a first and foremost station among similar works in the English language. The volume consists of four parts—Grammar, Style, Poetry, and Advice to the Student on the Improvement of the Understanding. Although we have no room for a formal review of this excellent work, we must be permitted earnestly to recommend it to those who have assumed the responsibilities of tuition, and to the private students of the English language. Young men, more particularly, who have enjoyed but limited educational advantages in early youth, and who are desirous of capacitating themselves for respectability and usefulness, by acquiring the art of writing and speaking with accuracy and force, will find this the very best work which they can procure. The parts on Grammar, Style, and Advice to the Student, are excellent, and will amply repay attentive perusal. The last part we have named is peculiarly instructive, and contains a fund of inestimable moral and literary recommendations."—*Leeds Times*.

"By the publication of this volume, Mr. Hiley has rendered an essential service to the cause of education among our youth; and what is, perhaps, of equal importance at this period of a general thirst after knowledge, he has provided a silent preceptor of the ablest kind for that numerous class who are occupied in the praiseworthy work of individual mental improvement. It fully treats of every important point connected with the study of the English language; the rules under each head are clear and perspicuous, and the examples numerous and fully illustrative. The style of its printing and its arrangement, are admirably adapted to facilitate the student, and to mitigate the labours of the teacher; whilst the large portion of the work devoted to the subject of the improvement of the understanding, forms a most appropriate conclusion to the whole; carrying out the matter of previous study to its full utility, that of storing the mind with those useful ideas of which language, in its most engaging form, is but the shadow and the type."—*York Courier*.

II.

AN ABRIDGMENT OF HILEY'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR; together with APPROPRIATE QUESTIONS and EXERCISES. New Edition, much enlarged. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

"This Abridgment is rapidly superseding many of the numberless English Grammars, and pretended Guides to Composition, that have of late years been puffed off by audacious compilers and incompetent teachers. Mr. Hiley's work is, really an English Grammar, and though small in size, is so comprehensive, full, and lucid, as to communicate to the student a much more complete knowledge of our language than could be anticipated from its exterior. The present effort is an improvement beyond Murray; nor can there be any question, we apprehend, of its general adoption hereafter in every well-conducted seminary or school-room. We have not had an opportunity of consulting Mr. Hiley's larger work, from which this is abstracted, but if its superiority in value be proportioned to its superiority in bulk, it must be a very complete Grammar indeed; for we have found the Abridgment distinguished, in various parts by originality, and not a little of the philosophy of Grammar. The two brief Preparatory Courses of Composition which are subjoined, will be found simple and effective means, if judiciously followed out, of teaching the young the whole art of composition, which consists first, in the habit of *thinking* closely and *observing* nicely; and secondly, in the habit of clothing these processes with natural and ready expressions."—*Monthly Review*.

III.

QUESTIONS and EXERCISES, adapted to Hiley's English Grammar, progressively arranged. Third Edition, considerably improved. 12mo. 2s.

"These Exercises are on a better principle, decidedly, than Murray's, and go much farther into the minutiae of our language."—*Evangelical Magazine*.

"Great skill and judgment have been displayed in this compilation; the Exercises not only admirably illustrate the several Rules, but also convey much valuable information. Mr. Hiley has subjoined a brief system of teaching the Art of Composition, which possesses great merit."—*Athenæum*.

"This is a very judicious series, fully calculated to answer its object, in practically assisting the student to ascertain the advantage he has derived from the preceding publication. We most cordially recommend both (the Grammar and Exercises) to our readers, as works in the study of which they will find their own interest; and which, we are sure, will form a lasting testimony to the talents and ability of their author."—*York Courant*.

"Two or three months ago, we inserted a notice of Mr. Hiley's Grammar of the English Language, and we are glad to see that the favourable opinion we expressed of it has been repeated and corroborated by some of the most influential of the London periodicals. Of the present work we can say, with truth, that its arrangement appears to be excellent; that it contains a body of information which the student will look for in vain in any other work of its kind; and, to say all in one word, that it is in every respect worthy of the Grammar to which it is adapted."—*Leeds Mercury*.

IV.

PRACTICAL ENGLISH COMPOSITION.—Part I. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

"We have been particularly pleased with this small and unpretending volume. It treats the difficult subject of English Composition for beginners in a manner at once practical, agreeable, and satisfactory. We have before expressed our regret at the inefficiency of the generality of elementary works devoted to this highly important subject, and have now great pleasure in introducing to the notice of our readers a valuable exception to our remarks. . . . The exercises on Punctuation will be found peculiarly valuable by all who have experienced the difficulty of initiating large classes into its mysteries. . . . We have no hesitation in recommending this little volume to the notice of all who feel the importance of the subject."—*Educational Times*.

Extract from a letter addressed by the Head Master of Greenwich Hospital Schools to Messrs. Longman:—

"The book seems to me to be the production of an able and experienced Teacher, who well understands the mental capacity of youth. After a careful reading of the work, I have arrived at the conclusion that the subject matter is excellent, well-arranged, and eminently practical."—Feb. 23. 1848.

V.

PROGRESSIVE GEOGRAPHY. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 0d.

"The several courses are divided into convenient lessons, and interspersed with copious exercises and directions for repeated examinations of the pupils, one of the best features in these exercises is the perpetual reference to the map. Considering the limited size and cost, the amount of information brought together is astonishing; and if the book, after all, be but a manual, this is all that a school Geography should be. . . . The remarks appended to each chapter on language, climate, soil, manufactures, &c. are interesting and judicious; and we have great satisfaction in recommending this treatise, as being by far the best work of the kind that has come under our notice."—*Educational Times*.

